NTT DoCoMo

Manual for Basic

FOMA® F900iC '04.7

FeliCa



MODE

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing FOMA F900iC mobile terminal.

Both before and during use of your FOMA F900iC mobile terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this and "Application" manual to ensure you are able to correctly and efficiently use your FOMA F900iC mobile terminal.
Treated with care, your FOMA F900iC mobile terminal will be your able partner.

Before Using Your FOMA Mobile Terminal

- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio wave signals are weak, or when outside the service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there is a strong signal and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is a possibility that third parties may attempt to listen in on your calls. The W-CDMA system automatically supports a confidential communication function for all calls so even if someone should somehow be able to tap a call, the signals are modified so that the eavesdropping party will hear only noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave signals, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K. Baltimore Technologies Japan Co., Ltd.
- NetFront® v3.0 for FOMA is installed in this product to provide Internet functionality.
  NetFront® v3.0* is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  *: Copyright (C) 1996-2004, ACCESS CO., LTD.
- ＦｅｌｉＣａ is a contactless ＩＣ card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

Be sure to thoroughly read this manual before using your FOMA mobile terminal and UIM (FOMA card). For information on the battery pack and adapter, refer to the appropriate instruction manual.
For more information, you may also contact us at the following numbers.

◯ DoCoMo Information Center

For inquiries (in English)	For inquiries (in Japanese only)	
0120-005-250 (toll-free)	No prefix 151 (toll-free)	0120-800-000 (toll-free)
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	Can be called from general subscriber phones

- To avoid wrong-number call, make sure the number before calling.
- Note that some stores do not handle FOMA products.

In the manual for FOMA F900iC "Basic", FOMA F900iC mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".

Copyrights and trademarks

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter or edit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted materials on sites (programs) or Internet Web pages without the permission of the copyright holder is prohibited by copyright law and should not be done. Avoid use or alteration of individuals' pictures or names without consent as it may be a violation of their portrait rights. When posting recorded pictures or sounds on Internet Web pages, take care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Take care when recording pictures or sound from presentations, performances and exhibitions, as recording may be prohibited even for personal use.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i αppli", "i-melody", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "Driving mode", "i-motion mail", "Multiaccess", "i αppliDX", "i-shot", "i-area", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "i αppli search", "M-stage V-live" "musea", "DECOmail", "Chaku-motion (Movie ringtone)", "Chara-den", "QUICKCAST" and "FOMA", "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries. (The formal name for Windows is the Microsoft® Windows® operating system.)
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a trademark of NEC Corporation.
- Catch phone (Call Waiting Service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront® and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
  This software contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology of Macromedia, Inc.
  Copyright© 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
  Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of the SD Association.
- miniSD™ memory card is described as miniSD memory card.
- Adobe and Acrobat Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other contries.
- ＦｅｌｉＣａ is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Other company names and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
  - Recording videos and i-motions that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA

  For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 3 of 372

Organization of the operation manual

The FOMA F900iC Operation Manual set consists of two manuals: "Basic" and "Application".
An overview of each manual is explained below. Read each manual as needed. Use with care when storing the manuals to avoid losing or misplacing them.

FOMA F900iC Operation Manual Basic (this manual)

- **Describes basic information about FOMA terminal, including the name and function of each part, etc.**
- **Describes the basic operations of FOMA terminal, including how to make and receive calls, and how to enter characters.**
- **Describes functions used when making calls and while talking, and various setting and operation methods designed to make FOMA terminal convenient.**
- **Describes network services provided by DoCoMo such as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.**
- **Describes what to do when you think FOMA terminal is in failure, how to obtain After-Sales Service and the like.**

FOMA F900iC Operation Manual Application

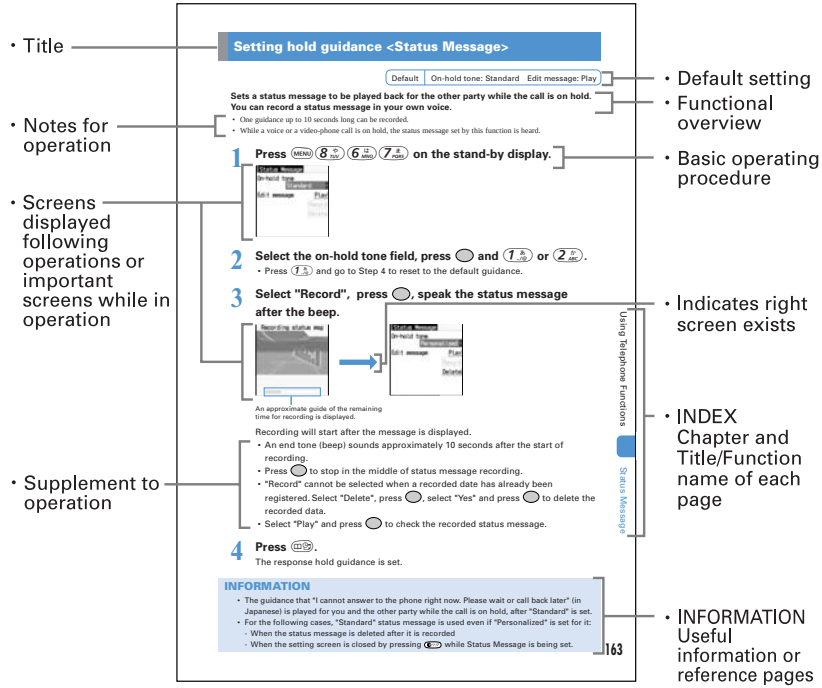
- **Describes how to connect to i-mode sites and how to use i αppli, Chara-den and i-motion software.**
- **Describes how to use the ＩＣ card and start the Ｆｅｌｉ Ｃａ compatible i αppli.**
- **Describes how to use the i-mode Mail and Short Message Service (SMS) to exchange mail.**
- **Describes how to use the camera or the still images, videos/i-motion and melodies stored in FOMA terminal.**
- **Describes how to use the infrared communication function and the miniSD memory card.**
- **Describes how to install the FOMA PC configuration software.**
- **Describes how to use the packet and 64K data communication functions of FOMA terminal.**

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 4 of 372

How to use this manual <Quick Reference Manual→P364>

The structure of this manual and the manner of description are explained here.

- The operation procedure is mainly explained in Shortcut operations (→P40). For shortcut operations for the each menu item, see menu list (→P326).
- In this manual, to select an item by pressing  (multi-cursor key) is referred to as "select".
- When there are two or more possible operation procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into entry field) →P303.
- The images or illustration provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual displays.



How to refer this manual

- Refer to the Contents
  Select to look at operation items or function names of the Contents (P4 to 7).
- Refer to the Index
  Select to look at operation items or function names of the Index (P357 to 361).
- Refer to the features → P8 to 11
- Quick Reference Manual → P364

* "Application" manual contains a glossary concerning data communication.
→ "Application" manual P320

In this manual, to perform operation for user authentication to use certain functions (to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) and press ● or to authenticate fingerprint) is collectively referred to as "to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate fingerprint". When authentication operation is required, perform either terminal security code entry (→P188) or fingerprint authentication (→P194).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 5 of 372

CONTENTS

Before Using Your FOMA Mobile Terminal ..... inside front cover
Copyrights and trademarks 1
Organization of the operation manual 2
How to use this manual 3
CONTENTS 4
Various functions of FOMA F900iC 8
Making full use of F900iC 10
Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) 12
Handling and care 24
Checking purchased product 26

Introduction

Names of Parts

Names and functions of parts 28
Reading display 32
Reading sub-display 35

Menu

Selecting functions from menu 37
Selecting functions from submenu 41
Displaying information quickly <Focus mode> 42

Before Using FOMA Terminal

Inserting UIM (FOMA card) 43
Function of UIM operation restrictions 45
Charging battery 46
Turning power ON/OFF 51
Checking remaining battery level 52
Switching to English <Select Language> 54
Setting date and time <Set date and time> 55
Checking your own phone number <User Information> 56

Basic Operations

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls 58
Setting whether to send your phone number when making calls <Caller ID> 61
Putting calls on hold <On-hold> 63
Calling back previously called numbers <Redial> 64
International calls <WORLD CALL> 65
Receiving calls 67
Using received call <Received calls> 70
Adjusting volume of the caller's voice <Volume> 72
Adjusting ring volume <Ring volume> 73
Talking without using a hand in a car <In-car handsfree> 74

Setting the response to calls that cannot be answered

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer right away <Response hold> 75
Using Driving mode <Driving mode> 76
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer call <Answer machine> 78
Setting the response time when guidance starts <Greeting Response Time> 80
Setting message response guidance <Set Greeting> 81
Playing/Deleting record messages 82

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 6 of 372

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Video-phone 84
Making video-phone calls 85
Receiving video-phone calls 88
Customizing display and other settings during video-phone call 90
Setting up Video-phone settings <Video-phone settings> 97
Changing image displayed of video-phone <Image Settings:V-Phone> 98
Using video-phone by connecting with external device <Device Settings> 100

Using Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal 101
Registering entries into FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 103
Registering entries into UIM phonebook 115
Registering phone numbers from redial list or received call list 118
Using FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook to make calls 120
Using UIM phonebook to make calls 127
Setting group names and actions <Group settings> 130
Making full use of phonebook 132
Editing phonebook entries 136
Setting functions for phonebook entries 138
Deleting phonebook entries 141
Making phonebook entries secret <Secrecy> 142
Using simple dial to make calls <Quick dial> 144
Creating mail quickly <Quick mail> 145
Copying phonebook 146
Checking number of registered phonebook entries 148

Setting Alert Profile

Making FOMA terminal Silent <Silent Mode> 149
Customizing Silent Mode <Custom Silent Mode> 151
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms <Vibrator> 152

Using Advanced Functions

Using Telephone Functions

Setting ringer action not to start immediately <Ring Alert Delay> 154
Rejecting/Accepting incoming calls by specifying phone numbers <Reject/Accept Call> 155
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in phonebook <Reject non-Reg. caller> 157
Determining how to handle incoming calls that do not notify phone number <Anonymous Caller> 158
Recording numbers preceding phone number <Prefix> 159
Making calls by specifying sub address <Sub Address> 160
Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality <Noise reduction> 160
Setting alarm for reconnection <Reconnect alarm> 161
Alarm announcing that call is about to be interrupted <Quality alarm> 161
Setting on-hold tone <On-hold Tone> 162
Setting hold guidance <Status Message> 163
Enabling use of dial keys to answer call <Any Key Answer> 164
Ending call by folding FOMA terminal <Close Settings> 164
Setting screen to be displayed when an incoming call is received during call or packet communication <Priority Comm Mode> 165
Checking call duration/total calls duration 166

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 7 of 372

CONTENTS

Changing Sound Settings

Changing FOMA terminal ring tone <Select ring tone> 168
Selecting keypad sound <Keypad sound> 171
Setting tone for start/end of charging <Charge Alert Setting> 171

Changing Displays and Key Settings

Changing stand-by display <Stand-by display> 172
Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls/mails <Call Image> 180
Changing display colors <Color Scheme> 181
Changing battery level icon <Battery Icon> 182
Setting display and key light <Display light> 183
Setting sub-display <Sub-Display> 184
Setting image to be displayed on sub-display <Sub-display format> 184
Changing font setting <Font Settings> 186
Setting clock display <Clock Display Format> 187

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Security code 188
Changing terminal security code <Change security code> 189
Setting PIN code 190
Unblocking PIN 193
Using fingerprint authentication function 194
Lock function 199
Preventing unauthorized use <All lock> 200
Displaying data protected by secret attribute setting <Secret mode> 201
Preventing display of phonebook or Scheduler <PIM lock> 202
Preventing use of dial keys <Keypad dial lock> 203
Preventing unauthorized use of phonebook or mail/i αppli <Privacy Mode Settings> 204
Using Self mode <Self mode> 205
Preventing inadvertent use of Side keys <Side key guard> 206
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal <Remote lock> 206
Hiding redial/received calls <Call Logs Settings> 208

Using Timer Function

Turning ON phone automatically at specified time <Auto power ON> 209
Turning OFF phone automatically at specified time <Auto power OFF> 210
Automatically turning power ON at alarm set time <Alarm Auto Power ON> 211
Ring alarm at the set time <Alarm clock> 211

Using Schedule Management

Displaying calendar 216
Setting day off <Set day off> 218
Saving schedules 219
Quickly registering schedule <Quick schedule> 226
Using member lists 227
Deleting schedules 229
Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute setting> 230
Copying schedules 231
Checking recorded schedule data 232
Creating mail from schedule 234

Using Other Functions

Recording your own name and mail address <User Information> 235
Using original menus <Custom Menu> 238
Setting incoming light color and pattern <Incoming Alert Light> 245
Recording other party's or your voice <Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo> 247
Playing/Deleting voice memos <Play/Delete Voice memo> 248
Using the calculator <Calculator> 250
Creating notes <Notepad> 251
Saving schedule from Notes <Date To function> 253

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 8 of 372

Checking settings <Confirm Settings> 254
Resetting functions <Reset> 255
Determining service provider <NW Search Method> 256
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch 257
Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Headset Switch> 258
Answering a call automatically with the earphone connected <Auto Answer> 259
Services available for FOMA terminal 260

Multiaccess and Multitask

Multiaccess 261
Multitask 265

Using Network Service

DoCoMo Network Service

Network services available using FOMA terminal 272
Using Voice Mail Service <Voice mail> 273
Using Call Waiting Service <Call Waiting> 278
Using Call Forwarding Service <Call Forwarding> 281
Using Nuisance Call Barring Service <Nuisance Call Barring> 285
Notifying your phone number to other party's <Caller ID Notification> 287
Using Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Request Service> 289
Using Dual Network Service <Dual Network> 291
Switching language for guidance <English Guidance> 292
Using Service Dialing Number <Service Dialing Number> 293
Selecting how incoming calls are handled while on phone <Arrival Call Act> 294
Activating/Deactivating Arrival Act <Set Arrival Act> 295
Setting remote control <Remote Control> 296
Using to register new services <Added service (Register USSD)> 297

Entering Characters

Entering Characters

Entering characters 302
Entering characters using 5-touch input method <5-touch input method> 305
Entering characters using slot input method <Slot input method> 322
Determining the input method <Input Method Settings> 324

Appendix

Appendix

Menu list 326
Code input list 334
List of entries and conversion of special symbols 338
List of pictogram entries and conversion 340
Combination of functions during Multiaccess 341
Combination of functions during Multitask 343
Options and related devices 345
Troubleshooting 346
Warranty and After-Sales Service 348
Software update 350
Specifications 356
INDEX 357
Quick Reference Manual 364

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 9 of 372

Various functions of FOMA F900iC

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation wireless communications (IMT-2000).

Visual communications

"Video-phone" supporting Chara-den

Phone conversations can be made between FOMA terminals while looking at the other party's face supporting video-phone. Use of the speakerphone function allows talking with FOMA terminal put down.
You can also choose to use a preset character or downloaded character instead of your image (Chara-den).

→ "Application" manual P96

Twin cameras

An out-camera and in-camera, which is useful for video-phone calls, are provided. Cameras can be switched with a single operation according to the scenes.

→ "Application" manual P233

DECOmail

Still images can be inserted and characters can be colored and/or resized for creating expressive messages.

→ "Application" manual P132

Shooting with camera and sending mails while talking

The camera function can be used to shoot a still image while a voice call is taking place. The shot image can be immediately sent to the party at the end of the line (One-Shot Message).

→ "Application" manual P239

Simple animation "Create animation function"

Saved images can be combined for single step display. Images with motion can be created. Still images shot by the continuous shooting function can be used for single step display (5 frames/approx. 2 seconds).

→ "Application" manual P248

FeliCa function

FeliCa function

Just hold up your terminal in the POS cash register etc., for example, and you can make payment for shopping without taking out your wallet. Your terminal can be used more conveniently in your daily life.

→ "Application" manual P92



Remote lock

In the event that your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, you can activate the All Lock and IC card lock to prevent unauthorized use.

→ P207

IC card lock

Activating this function will disable both the FeliCa function and FeliCa-compatible i αppli.

→ "Application" manual P95

Link with PC and communication functions

Full-scale PIM (Personal Information Manager) function typically used in PC

Data can be synchronized with PIM software (Microsoft® Outlook®) on PC.

→ "Application" manual P358

Support for "miniSD memory card"

"miniSD memory card", a common standard of external memory, is supported. Data stored in FOMA terminal can be moved or copied into "miniSD memory card", which dramatically increases the size of portable data.

→ "Application" manual P305

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 10 of 372

Full-fledged camera functions

Auto focus
Auto focus function is mounted, by which you can automatically bring the camera into focus by just pressing on the side key. As it is matched up with the automatic-focus lock, you can enjoy framing up the image on your own terms. → "Application" manual P219

Mega pixel camera
CCD camera of 1,280,000 effective pixels (Number of recording pixels: 1,230,000) is provided. The size of a image for shooting can be freely selected from a small size to a large size suited for printing.
→ "Application" manual P212

Various modes available for shooting
In addition to 16x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and sequential shooting. The one-touch light can be used for shooting in a dark place. → "Application" manual P232

Convenient functions

2.4-inch high-definition TFT LCD
The QVGA LCD of 240 x 320 dots clearly displays fine images and characters.

Fingerprint authentication function
Fingerprint authentication is available as well as the terminal security code to protect important personal information. → P194

Flash support
Those expressive Flash support sites can be used. Flash graphics can also be set as the stand-by display. → P173

1.1-inch sub-display
72 x 96 dots, 4,096 colors organic EL display shows the time, various information and stand-by display. → P184

Multitask function
Multitask function is provided to allow more than one application to run at the same time.
Pressing TASK key lists the active applications, which allows simple switching to the application desired. Switching to the phonebook or schedule can be performed while a video-phone call is taking place.
→ P265

Bar code reader function
By reading barcode (JAN code or QR code), you can register the personal data into the Phonebook, connect easily to i-mode site and so on. → "Application" manual P240

Infrared communication function
Data including phonebook data and bookmarks can be exchanged with devices provided with infrared communication function. The terminal can also be used as a TV remote control.
→ "Application" manual P298

i-mode function

i-mode (Paid service)
Online services available with i-mode terminals. Connections to sites and Internet are available.
→ "Application" manual P20

i-mode Mail
FOMA terminal can save up to 1000 received mails and up to 200 sent mails.
→ "Application" manual P129

i-motion
You can obtain video/sound from sites or Internet to enjoy them. i-motion obtained can be played in the same way as incoming melody or be set to Calling Image (Movie ring tone → P168). → "Application" manual P109

i αppli/i αppliDX
You can conveniently use the FOMA terminal by fetching software such as some games from the Web sites. You can also enjoy the i αppli DX in addition to a large size of i αppli on the FOMA terminal. → "Application" manual P62

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (paid service)*1 → P273
- Call Forwarding Service*1 → P281
- Call Waiting Service (Catch Phone) (paid service)*1 → P278
- Short Message Service (SMS)*2
  → "Application" manual P176
- Dual Network Service (paid service)*1 → P291

*1 : Separate application is required.
*2 : Separate application is not required.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 11 of 372

Making full use of F900iC

The features and functions of F900iC are explained here.

Video-phone call with Chara-Den

A fictitious character expresses your feeling for you during a video-phone call.

→ P86, "Application" manual P23, P96



Images of you and the other person



©BVIG

Fictitious character representing you



©BVIG

Switch images



©BVIG

Character expresses your emotion using body language

One-shot message during a call

You can shoot the scenery in front of you during a voice call and mail it immediately.

→ "Application" manual P239



Call in progress



Start camera and shoot



Create i-mode Mail



Send i-mode Mail

i αppli start up with a shortcut operation

You can start up i αppli by pressing a dial key registered specifically for it and holding down for over a second if the i αppli has been registered for the "i αppli shortcut" operation beforehand.

→ "Application" manual P77



Press the dial key on which software is registered



When i αppli key is held down for over a second



©BVIG

Software starts up

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 12 of 372

Richly expressive DECOmail

Mail text can be designed by simple operations in a way similar to mail function of PCs. In addition to coloring and resizing of characters, inserting of images and lines, various character ornamentations and position specification are available.

→ "Application" manual P132



Change font color, size



Insert image



Change background color, ticker

Plentiful stand-by display

You can display arbitrarily still images, videos, i-motion, i αppli as well as unread messages, calendars or schedule to the stand-by display of the QVGA size (240 x 320 dots)(Custom stand-by display). Those detailed screens can be displayed by selecting the displayed function (Focus mode).

→ P42, P172



Setting still Images



Setting video/ i-motion



Setting a list of Unread messages



Setting calendar and schedule

Overlay function with various frames

The frame overlay function is provided. Various frames can be added to still images and videos, as well as when using video-phone.

→ "Application" manual P236



Frame (Add personal figure)



Frame (video)



Frame (still image)

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 13 of 372

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the following precautions to ensure safe use and handling.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.

■ The following signs differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines:

⚠ DANGER	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
⚠ WARNING	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
⚠ CAUTION	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

■ The following symbols show specific directions.

Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.

Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
Pull the power plug out	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below;

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (Common) 13
Handling FOMA terminal 14
Handling battery pack 17
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/In-car holder) 19
Handling UIM 21
Handling miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter 22
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment 23

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 14 of 372

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (Common)

⚠ DANGER

Do Use equipment specified by the DoCoMo Group companies with your FOMA terminal.

Use of equipment not specified by DoCoMo can cause the battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst or catch fire.

Battery pack F05 Desktop holder F05 AC adapter F03
DC adapter F01 In-car holder F05
Contact our sales office for information on other compatible products.

⚠ WARNING

Don't Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

Don't Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal or the adapter in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, the FOMA terminal or the adapter to heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.

Do Turn OFF the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge the battery, either, as the gas may catch fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place such as a gas station, be sure to turn OFF the FOMA terminal before using it.
(When IC card lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the FOMA terminal.)

⚠ CAUTION

Don't Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.

Malfunction or injuries may result.

Do Store the equipment out of reach of small children.

The equipment can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

Don't Do not use or leave the equipment in hot areas, or in areas exposed to direct sunlight, such as inside a vehicle.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to deform or malfunction. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.

Do Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.

May cause injuries.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 15 of 372

⚠ WARNING

Don't — Do not use the phone while operating a vehicle.

Driving hazards or accidents may result. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone.
If you do prohibited act such as using the phone while driving, you may be punished according to law.

Do — Turn the FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

Using the phone near this type of equipment can cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.
* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid: Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electrical medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors, other automatic control equipment
Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electrical medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.

No disassembly — Do not disassemble or remodel the phone.

Fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction may result.

Don't — Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.

Could cause eye injuries. In addition, faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.

Don't — Do not use or leave the battery pack near flames, stoves or other hot areas.

Heat, ignite or malfunction may result.

Do — Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Use in these areas can cause medical and other electrical and electronic equipment to malfunction or fail. If the function which automatically turn on the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power off.
When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.
If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.

Do — When you talk with the speakerphone function activated, always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear.

May cause hearing loss.

Don't — When you use medical electrical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.

Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.

Do — If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the incoming vibrator (vibration) or ring volume setting.

Could affect heart function.

Don't — Do not directly look into the One-touch Light while it is turned on.

May affect your eyes.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 16 of 372

⚠ CAUTION

Do If lightning strikes while using the phone outside, turn the power OFF immediately, and move to a safe location.

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

Don't Do not put liquids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials inside UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot.

May cause fire, equipment failure or electric shock.

Do Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.

The following parts contain metal materials.

Material	Place of use
Chromium plating	Multi-cursor key, (MENU), (▲), (📷), (✉▼), side keys, i-mode mark of the back panel
Gold plating	Fingerprint sensor surface
Magnesium alloy	Display front case*

* : Coated with resin but may come in contact with skin if the coating peels off.

Don't Do not place magnetic disks or cards with magnetic stripes near the phone or place inside and fold the terminal.

Data stored on media such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the phone.

Avoid water Do not let FOMA terminal get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, injuries or electric shock. Take care not to use the phone in areas where it could get wet.

Don't Do not leave your FOMA terminal for a long time in a location where direct sunlight enters the lens of the built-in camera.

A light collection effect from the lens could cause a fire.

Don't Do not swing the phone by its antenna or strap.

May cause equipment damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.

Do If the display part is accidentally damaged and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin.
If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
If the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol, etc. to wipe off and wash with soap.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 17 of 372

⚠ CAUTION

Do

Be careful about broken glass when the display or camera lens is accidentally broken.

May cause injury.
The surface of the display and camera lens is designed with a plastic panel on top of the glass board to keep the glass from breaking into pieces. However, you could be injured if you touch a sharp edge.

Do

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

In this case, do not use the FOMA terminal because it may hamper safe driving.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 18 of 372

Handling battery pack

■Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery

⚠ DANGER

Don't Do not connect the battery pack's terminals to a wire or other metal object. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metal object.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

No disassembly Do not disassemble or remodel the battery pack and do not solder items directly onto the battery pack.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not use or leave the battery pack near flames, stoves or other hot areas.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not nail the battery pack with a nail, hit with a hammer or step on it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Avoid water Do not let the battery pack get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, malfunctions, electric shock or injuries. Take care not to use the phone in areas where it could get wet.

Do If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.

Battery fluid in the eyes may cause blindness.

Don't Do not try to force the battery pack onto the FOMA terminal or battery pack charger if you are having trouble connecting it. Always connect it after confirming that it is correctly oriented.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not bring the battery pack into contact with open flames.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 19 of 372

⚠ WARNING

Don't **If the battery pack starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately disconnect it from the FOMA terminal or battery pack charger.**

Continued use may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do **If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.**

Exceeding the specified charging time may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do **If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.**

The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.

Do **If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.**

The fluid may damage the skin.

Don't **Do not use or leave the equipment in hot areas, or in areas of strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.**

May cause leaks, heating or deterioration in performance and service life.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't **Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.**

Igniting or environmental destruction may result. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into our sales outlet. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 20 of 372

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/In-car holder)

⚠ WARNING

Don't
Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Never plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.

Fire may result.

Do
Only use with the specified power source and voltage.

If incorrect voltage is used, fire or failure may result. If you use adapters overseas, malfunction may result.
AC adapter: 100VAC (Connect to 100VAC outlet for internal household use)
DC adapter: 12V or 24VDC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

Don't
Do not use the AC adapter, desktop holder and battery pack charger in a bathroom or other highly humid area.

Electric shock may result.

Pull the power plug out
Immediately remove the adapter's plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.

Electric shock, smoke or fire may result.

Avoid water
Do not let the adapter get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, malfunctions, electric shock or injuries. Take care not to use the phone in areas where it could get wet.

Don't
Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.

Electric shock, heat or fire may result.

Avoid water
Do not touch the adapter cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

Electric shock may result.

No disassembly
Do not disassemble or remodel the adapter.

Fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction may result.

Don't
Do not short-circuit the charger terminal while it is connected to an outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Do not touch the charger terminal with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.

Fire, malfunction, electric shock, or injuries may result.

Do
If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.

Using other fuses may result in fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.

Do
When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.

Could cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

Pull the power plug out
Always remove the adapter's plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket when not using the adapter for an extended period.

Electric shock, fire or malfunction may result.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 21 of 372

⚠ WARNING

Do
Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the plug.

Fire may result.

Do
Make sure that car holder is securely attached.

Removal of the equipment by abrupt braking, etc. may cause an accident or the equipment malfunction.

Don't
Place the desktop holder in a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap and the desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

May cause the FOMA terminal to be displaced; heating could result in fire or failure.

⚠ CAUTION

Do
When you disconnect the adapter from the outlet or a cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord; instead hold the plug to disconnect.

Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.

Don't
Do not charge a wet battery pack.

It may cause heat generation, ignition or rupture of the battery pack.

Don't
Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord.

Electric shock or fire may result.

Pull the power plug out
Always remove the adapter's plug from the cigarette lighter socket or wall outlet when cleaning the equipment.

Electric shock may result.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 22 of 372

Handling UIM

⚠ WARNING

Don't Do not put the UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

Do Take care when removing the UIM (IC portion).

Hands or fingers may be injured.

No disassembly Do not disassemble or remodel the UIM.

Data loss or malfunction may result.

Don't Do not bend the UIM or place heavy objects on it.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Do not scratch the ICs.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Take care not to touch or short ICs accidentally.

Data loss or malfunction may result.

Don't When storing the UIM, do not place it in areas of direct sunlight or high temperature/humidity.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Do not store the UIM in extremely dusty areas.

Malfunction may result.

Do Use the UIM only with devices specified by DoCoMo.

Use with other devices can cause data loss or malfunction. Contact our sales outlet for the list of specified devices.

Don't Do not drop the UIM or subject it to shocks.

Malfunction may result.

Avoid water Do not let the UIM get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause malfunctions.

Don't Do not bring the UIM into contact with open flames, or heat it.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

Don't Do not use or leave the UIM near flames, stoves or other hot areas.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

Do Store the UIM out of reach of small children.

The UIM can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 23 of 372

Handling miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter

⚠ WARNING

Don't Do not put the card and adapter in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

Do Store the card and adapter out of reach of small children.

The card or adapter can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

⚠ CAUTION

No disassembly Do not disassemble or remodel the card and adapter.

Disappearance of the data or malfunction may result.

Don't Do not drop the card and adapter subject them to shocks.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Do not bend the card and adapter or place heavy objects on them.

Malfunction may result.

Avoid water Do not let the card and adapter get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause malfunctions.

Don't Do not scratch the metal terminal part.

Malfunction may result.

Don't Do not bring the card and adapter into contact with open flames or heat it.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

Don't Take care not to touch or short the metal terminal part accidentally.

Data loss or malfunction may result.

Don't Do not use or leave the card and adapter near flames, stoves or other hot areas.

May cause melting, heating, smoking, loss of data or malfunction.

Do Children using the card or adapter should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the card or adapter without adult supervision.

May cause injuries.

Don't Do not use or keep the card and adapter in the following places:

- Inside the car, under the hot sun or in any other places subject to high temperature
- In the places exposed to direct sunlight
- In very humid places
- In the places where corrosive gas, etc. is generated
- In very dusty places

Malfunction may result.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 24 of 372

Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

■ These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

⚠ WARNING

Do Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

Do Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

Do Obey the following rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not bring the FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
- Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electrical medical devices could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
- If the function to automatically turn on the power is mounted, cancel the setting before turning the power off.

Do When electrical medical devices other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 25 of 372

Handling and care

General

- Keep water away from FOMA terminal.
  - FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter are not waterproof. Do not use FOMA terminal in bathrooms or other high-humidity areas, or in the rain. When carrying FOMA terminal in a pocket near your body, sweat may corrode the inner components, causing malfunction.
    Note that malfunctions deemed to be caused by water are not covered by the warranty, and may be impossible to repair. Since these malfunctions are not under warranty, when repair is possible, it will be done at the user's expense.
  - If the FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the FOMA terminal to our repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the FOMA terminal.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth.
  - To make the color LC display easy to read, some FOMA terminal models use a special coating on the display. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and use a soft, dry cloth for cleaning (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
  - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab.
  - If the jack is dirty, the contact may become poor and data communications error may occur using the desktop holder or the power may shut off. A dirty jack can also result in poor charging, so clean it with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
  - The rapid change in humidity may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not place FOMA terminal in an area where excessive force will be applied to it.
  - If crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, FOMA terminal's LC display or internal PCBs may be damaged or malfunction, and the damage will not be covered by warranty.
- Clean the fingerprint sensor by wiping with a dry soft cloth from time to time.
  - Any soil or water attached to the surface of the fingerprint sensor may cause fingerprint scanning failure, which may lead to reduction of the authentication rate or an error where the sensor operates as authenticating when the finger is not in contact.
- Carefully read the separate instructions that come with the battery pack and adapter.
- For details on handling miniSD memory card (sample), see the manual supplied with the miniSD memory card.

FOMA terminal

- It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. You can continue to use it while warm.
- Avoid temperature extremes.
  - Use FOMA terminal in an ambient temperature range of between 5 and 35°C, and in a humidity range of between 45 and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may affect non-mobile phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal.
  - DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Do not place the FOMA terminal on the desk where obstacles are found.
  - The Out-camera may be damaged.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 26 of 372

- Do not sit down with FOMA terminal in a back pocket. Do not place it at the bottom of a full bag or anywhere it will encounter excessive force.
  - Malfunction or damage may result.
- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.
  - Malfunction or damage may result.

■ Battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable part.
  - Replace the battery pack when FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge (amount of time will vary depending on type of use). Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5 to 35˚C).
- Always charge FOMA terminal before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack will vary depending on the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- Do not discard old battery packs with general household garbage.
  - Igniting or environmental destruction results. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into our sales outlet. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

■ Adapter

- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not charge the battery in the following areas:
  - Where the ambient temperature is less than 5˚C or more than 35˚C.
  - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations.
  - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios.
- It is normal for the adapter to become warm during charging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
  - The vehicle's battery could become flat.

■ UIM

- Avoid temperature extremes.
- Do not use excessive force to remove the card's IC portion.
- Do not place an excessive load on the card when inserting it into the terminal.
- It is normal for the UIM to become warm during use. You can continue using a warm card.
- Note that DoCoMo will not be responsible for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another ＩＣ card reader/writer.
- Always keep UIM ICs clean.
- Clean the UIM with a soft, dry cloth.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register on the UIM.
  - DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to our sales outlet.

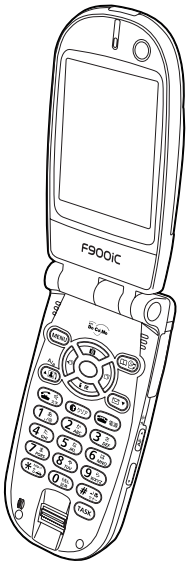
If you use FOMA terminal to commit delinquent acts constituting great annoyance to the public, you may be penalized according to applicable laws or regulations, such as the Nuisance law.

Give consideration to privacy before shooting or sending images with a mobile phone with a built-in camera.

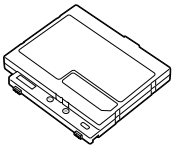
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 27 of 372

Checking purchased product

FOMA F900iC
(including the rear cover F05 and the written warranty)



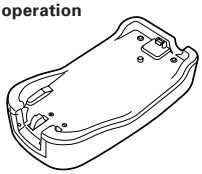
Battery pack F05
(including operation manual)



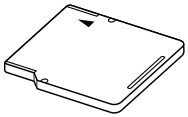
AC adapter F03
(including the written warranty, operation manual)



Desktop holder F05
(including operation manual)



16MB miniSD memory card (sample)

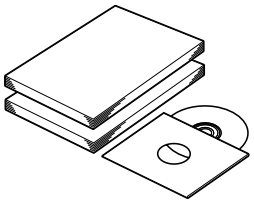


Adapter for miniSD memory card (sample)



Instruction manuals
- "Basic" manual (this manual)
- "Application" manual

CD-ROM for FOMA F900iC



* Quick Reference Manual is appended at the end of the "Basic" manual (→ P364).

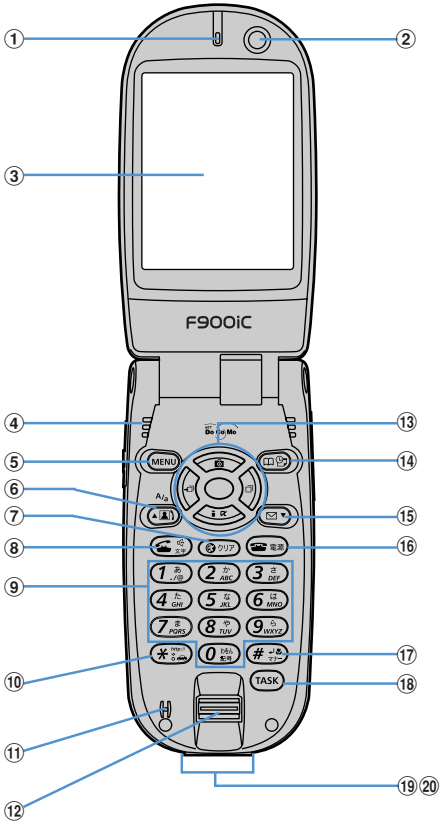
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 28 of 372

Introduction

Names of Parts 28
Menu 37
Before Using FOMA Terminal 43

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 29 of 372

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm) : 104 x 51 x 26
(Folded)
Weight (g) : About 128
(with Battery)

① **Earpiece**
Caller's voice comes out of here.

② **In-camera**
Used to take images to be displayed on the screen.

③ **Display → P32**

④ **Speaker**
Ring alert and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the voice of the other party comes out.

⑤ (MENU) **MENU/upper left soft key**
Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Side key guard, etc.

⑥ (▲) **Video-phone start/▲ (scroll)/A/a/lower left soft key**
Use this key to make/answer video-phone calls, make video-phone calls using the speakerphone function, scroll a mail or site display by a full screen, switch between cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

⑦ (クリア) **Clear key**
Use this key to delete entry when entering characters, return to the previous display, set/cancel Self mode, etc. While setting i αppli stand-by display, press this key to start i αppli software.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 30 of 372

⑧ **Start voice call/speakerphone/character key**
Use this key to make/answer voice calls, make voice calls using the speakerphone function and switch between ordinary and speakerphone calls, switch between entry modes for entering characters, etc.

⑨ **Dial keys**
Used to enter phone numbers and text.

⑩ **✳/Driving mode key**
Use this key to enter "✳", set/cancel Driving mode, switch display mode during camera use, etc.

⑪ **Microphone**
Picks up your voice.
* Covering the microphone while talking or recording video may make it difficult for the other party to hear you or cause failure of recording of the sound.

⑫ **Fingerprint sensor**
Slide your fingertip here for registering or authenticating your fingerprint.

⑬  **Multi-cursor key**

Enter key
Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate focus mode, start i αppli software set for One-touch button, etc.

Camera/↑ key
Use this key to activate camera/video camera, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

i-mode/i αppli/↓ key
Use this key to display i-mode menu or i αppli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.

Received calls/← (previous) key
Use this key to display the list of received calls, switch between displays, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.

Redial/→ (next) key
Use this key to display Redial, switch between displays, move the cursor rightward, set/cancel ｉC card lock, etc.

⑭ **Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key**
Use this key to display the phonebook or schedule, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.

⑮ **Mail/▼ (scroll)/lower right soft key**
Use this key to display mail menu, create new mails, scroll a mail or site display by a full screen, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

⑯ **Power/End/Hold key**
Use this key to turn on/off power, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel secret mode, etc.

⑰ **#/Silent mode/line-feed key**
Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc. Switches between standard mode and close-up mode in the camera mode.

⑱ **TASK key**
Switches the screen when using the Multiaccess or Multitask function. Executes another function while talking on the phone or performing an operation.

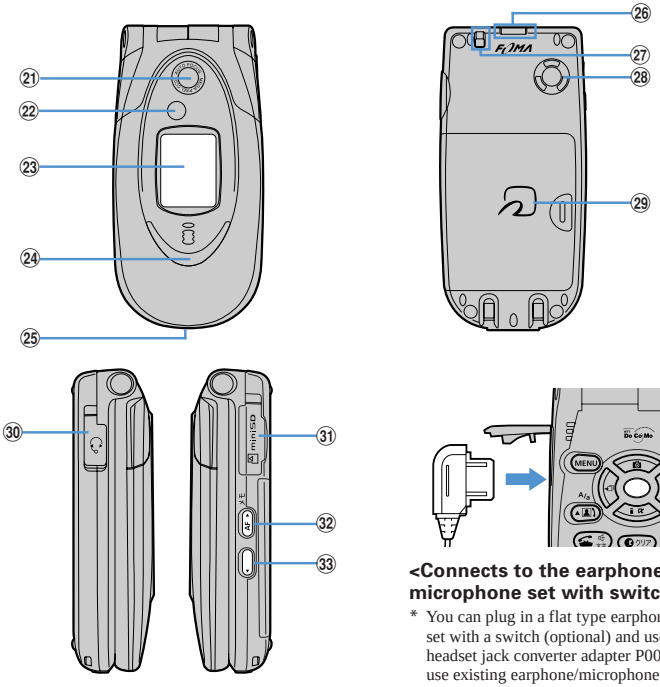
⑲ **External connection terminal**
Used to connect various optional accessories.

⑳ **Charging terminals** → P49

INFORMATION

- The antenna is built into FOMA terminal. → P30
- For descriptions on operations, keys are indicated by graphical symbols as above.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 31 of 372



<Connects to the earphone/ microphone set with switch>

* You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with a switch (optional) and use it. Using headset jack converter adapter P001 allows you to use existing earphone/microphone.

㉑ **Out-camera**
Displays the images taken on this display.

㉒ **One-touch Light**
Lights when shooting images through the out-camera using the one-touch light.

㉓ **Sub-display → P35**
Displays information when receiving calls, mails, and alarm setting time.

㉔ **Incoming Light/Charging Light**
Lights/flashes when calls or messages arrive.

㉕ **Infrared data port**
Used for data exchange with the infrared communication function.

㉖ **Antenna**
* Do not cover the built-in antenna with your finger during a talk or communication.

㉗ **Strap opening**

㉘ **Speaker**

㉙ **FeliCa mark**
A piece of IC card is mounted. Use IC card functions by placing the marked side over the reader/writer (external device). The IC card cannot be detached.

㉚ **Earphone/microphone jack**
Used to connect an earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).

㉛ **miniSD memory card slot**
Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.

㉜ **Side key [AF ▲] → P31**
* Described as "Side key [▲]" except for explaining Auto focus.

㉝ **Side key [▼] → P31**

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 32 of 372

Main operations for side keys

The side key [▲] has two positions: half press and full press to take photos with Auto focus function of the camera, so the feeling is different from the side key [▼] when pressed.

Function		Status of FOMA Terminal	Operation	Status of FOMA Terminal for operation
Sound	Volume	Opened/Folded	Press side keys [▲▼].	During a call, incoming call while talking, setting volume or recording voice memo during talking
	Ring volume	Opened/Folded	Press side keys [▲▼].	During setting ring volume
	Stopping ring alert	Opened/Folded	Press side key [▲].	During incoming call or receiving mails/messages
	Stopping alarm sound	Opened/Folded	Press side key [▲].	During ringing alarm
	Adjusting volume	Opened	Press side keys [▲▼].	During playing stand-by i-motion*2, editing video/ i-motion and playing melody*1 and video/i-motion
Answer machine/ Voice memo	Displaying record message/ Voice memo menu	Opened	Press side key [▲].	On stand-by display
	Activating/deactivating Answer machine	Opened	Hold side key [▲] down for over 1 second.	On stand-by display
	Recording Record message (quick message)	Opened/Folded	Hold side key [▲] down for over 1 second.	During incoming call
	Starting/stopping Voice memo during talking	Opened/Folded	Hold side key [▲] down for over 1 second.	While talking
	Adjusting volume	Opened	Press side keys [▲▼].	During playing record message/voice memo
Others	Setting/canceling Silent mode	Folded	Hold side key [▲] down for over 1 second.	On stand-by
	Canceling vibrator	Opened/Folded	Press side key [▲].	During incoming call, alarm ringing and receiving mails/messages
	Clock display/display switching on sub-display	Folded	Press side keys [▲▼].	On stand-by (stand-by display is not displayed)
	Message retrieval	Opened/Folded	Hold side key [▼] down for over a second.	On stand-by display
Camera	Auto Focus	Opened	Press side key [AF ▲] halfway.	On shooting stand-by
	Shooting		Press side key [AF ▲] all the way.	

Opened: FOMA terminal opened Folded: FOMA terminal folded

*1: You can also operate the function with the FOMA terminal folded.

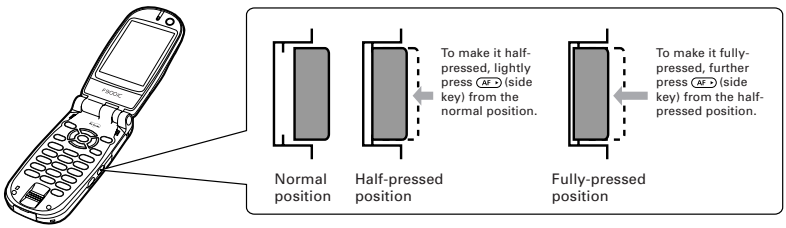
*2: You cannot adjust volume during Silent mode.

Note : Side key setting is also assigned for Video camera.

Pressing the side key [AF ▲]

When taking photos using the camera's Auto focus function, press the side key either fully-pressed or half-pressed as indicated in the illustration below.

→ "Application" manual P219



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 33 of 372

Reading display

The description of icons indicated on the top or at the bottom of the display are shown below:

• Icons not explained in this section → "Application" manual P10



	Condition		Page
①		Indicates the battery level	P52
	漢	Indicates the character input mode (半カ/半英/半数/全カ/全英/全数/登録)	P303
②		Received signal level	P51
	圏外	Out of service area	P51
	SELF	Self mode is set	P205
	TML	During terminal link	—
		During data transfer	P318
		Infrared communication is starting	P298
		Copying to/moving to/deleting from/backing up/restoring/initializing/updating miniSD memory card	P309, 310, 311, 312, 314, 315
		Data link software in progress	P358
③		In i-mode communication (connected to i-mode site)	P27
		In i-mode communication (sending/receiving data)	P27
④		Infrared communication in progress/Infrared remote control function in operation	P298, 303
⑤		Speakerphone function in operation	P59
		USB hands-free communication in progress	P74
⑥		Indicates message stored at i-mode Center	P10
⑦		Indicates received mail	P146, 181
⑧	R	Indicates received MessageR	P113
⑨	F	Indicates received MessageF	P113
⑩		i αppli execution status	P67
		i αppli stand-by display	P83
		i αppliDX execution status	P67
		i αppliDX stand-by display	P83
⑪		Displaying SSL page and starting software downloaded from SSL page	P29, 67
⑫		Secret mode is set	P201

	Condition			Page
⑬		i αppli Auto start failed		P80
⑭		Date and time		P55
⑮		Number of missed calls		P42
⑯		Number of recorded messages		P42
⑰		Number of new voice mail messages		P42
⑱		Number of unread messages		P42
⑲		Silent mode is set		P150
		Custom Silent mode is set		P151
⑳	S	Ring tone is OFF		P73
	V	Vibrator		P152
	SV	Ring tone is OFF and vibrator is set		—
㉑		Driving mode ON		P76
㉒		Answer machine is set		P78
		Record message full		P78
㉓		Using video-phone from external device via USB		P100
		FOMA USB cable connected		P323
㉔		Displaying effective multi-cursor key in focus mode		P42
㉕	SD	miniSD memory card inserted		P306
㉖		Reading UIM		P51
		I C card lock ON		P95
㉗ *		PIM lock ON	High Priority Low	P202
		Keypad dial lock ON		P203
		Side key guard ON		P206
㉘		Alarm Clock being set		P211
		Alarm and Schedule alarm being set simultaneously		—
		Schedule alarm being set		P219
㉙		Software Update pre-specified		P353

*: The current highest-priority item is displayed.

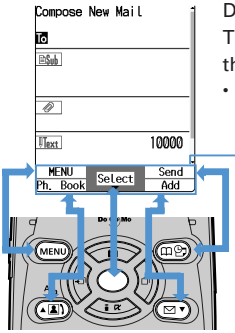
• under "Page" columns show pages in "Application" manual.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 34 of 372

Guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing MENU, ▲, ●, ✉ and ▼ are displayed in the guide row.

<Example> Guide row for Compose New Mail screen



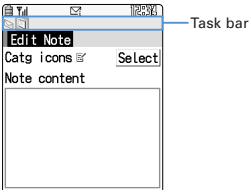
Display locations and keys correspond as shown in the figure. The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen active at the time.

- ◆ on the guide row corresponds to ● ▲ ◀ ▶ of the multi-cursor keys. (It may be different depending on the function you are using or how the site is made.)

Task bar

Task bar refers to a row in which an icon for the function (task) being used/run is indicated. During Multiaccess and Multitasks (→ P261, P265), 2 or more icons are indicated to show which functions are being used and run because the plural numbers of functions are running simultaneously.

<Example> Task bar for editing Notepad while composing mail



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 35 of 372

Icons indicated on the task bar

The icons indicated on the task bar are listed below:

Condition	Page	Condition	Page
Receiving/talking voice call	P58	Bar code reader activated	P240
Receiving/talking video-phone (32 K)	P84	Phonebook displayed	P120, 127
Receiving/talking video-phone (64 K)	P84	Ans. machine and Voice memo being activated	P82, 248
64K data communication	P338, 355	Notepad displayed	P251
Creating/displaying mail	P129, 144 151, 176 179, 183	Scheduler displayed	P232
		Schedule alarm activated	P225
		Calculator displayed	P250
Receiving i-mode Mail	P146	Received calls displayed	P70
Receiving Short Message (SMS)	P181	Redial displayed	P64
Displaying message R/F	P117	Accessing external data	P298, 358, 361
Inquiring for i-mode Mail/Short Message (SMS)	P150, 182		
		miniSD memory card application activated	P307
i-mode activated	P27	miniSD memory card inserted	P306
i αppli activated	P67	Alarm set/activated	P211, 215
Origination/communicating via USB	P337, 355	User information displayed	P56
Sending/receiving packet via USB	P337, 355	Set each function	P39
"Image" activated	P243	Each function on hold	P265
"i-motion" activated	P267	Updating software	P350
"Melody" activated	P285	Software Update notified	P350
"Chara-den" activated	P97	Setting each Network service	P272
Still image shooting screen displayed	P214	Communicating by video-phone call through external device	P100
Video shooting screen displayed	P224		

* under "Page" columns show pages in "Application" manual.

List screen

<Example> Color selection screen



When a list extends to multiple pages, the number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages are displayed.

▲▼ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the item being selected.
- Select an item by pressing ●.
- If ▼ is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears and when ● is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

◀▶ indicates that selectable items exist over the multiple pages.
- Switch pages by pressing ◀▶.

* You cannot switch screens on icon selection screens etc.

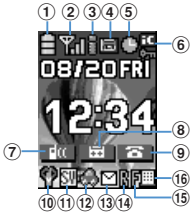
INFORMATION

- Note that the following cases show characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in FOMA terminals:
  - F900iC displays are manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
  - If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal by mistake before the terminal power is turned off, afterimages may remain for some time.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 36 of 372

Reading sub-display

Pressing side keys [▲▼] while FOMA terminal is folded displays the FOMA terminal condition, date and time on the sub-display. Pressing the side key [▼] while the date and time are displayed shows the condition of stored information on FOMA terminal (about missed calls or unread mail/messages R/F), if any. You can set an image to be displayed on the sub-display. → P184

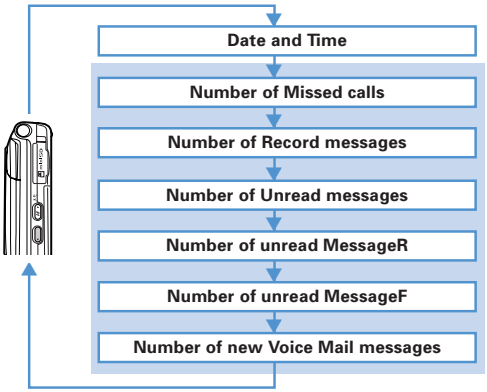


① Indicates the battery level
② Received signal level
③ Blinks in i-mode communication (connected to i-mode site)
During packet communication
②-③
Out of service area
Self mode is set
During terminal link
During data transfer
④ Answer machine is set
Record message is full
⑤ Alarm setting being set
Schedule being set
Set alarm and Schedule being set simultaneously
⑥ IC card lock is ON
⑦ Missed call exists
⑧ Record message exists
⑨ New voice mail message exists
⑩ Silent mode is set
Custom Silent mode is set
⑪ Ring tone is OFF
Vibrator
Ring tone is OFF and Vibrator is set
⑫ Driving mode is set
⑬ Unread i-mode Mail or unread Short Message (SMS) exists
(indicates the storage space is full)
⑭ Unread MessageR exists
(indicates the storage space is full)
⑮ Unread MessageF exists
(indicates the storage space is full)
⑯ Indication of i-mode Mail Center storage condition
Mail or Message R/F storage space in i-mode Mail Center is full

Switching screens on sub-display

When FOMA terminal is folded, you can switch display screens by pressing side key [▼].
Side key operations → P31

- When the battery runs out or All lock is set or Side key guard is ON, you cannot switch display screens. → P53, P200, P206



- Screen shown by [ ] is displayed when there is stored information. For each screen, press side key [▲] to display a subtitle giving detail information.
- If you do not press any keys for approximately 15 seconds when date and time are displayed, the sub-display indication goes out. Pressing the side key [▼] while date and time are displayed shows the condition of stored information, if any.
- If you do nothing for approximately 5 seconds during display of number of calls/messages, the sub-display turns OFF.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 37 of 372

INFORMATION

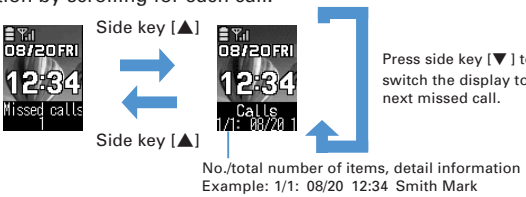
- The side key [▲] has two positions: half-pressed and fully-pressed to take photos with Auto focus function of the camera, so the feeling is different from the side key [▼] when pressed.
- When FOMA terminal is folded, Silent mode can be set/released by holding down the side key [▲] for over a second. → P150
  You can also make Message retrieval by holding down the side key [▼] for over a second. → "Application" manual P150
- The information in the sub-display disappears by opening FOMA terminal.
- When "Hide callers' info" is set for Sub-Display Info (→ P184), the callers' information on the other party (phone number, name or mail address) is not displayed on the sub-display for incoming calls or messages, etc.

Displaying detail information

While the number of items is displayed, press side key [▲] to display detail information such as date and time, phone number and mail address as ticker. Up to ten items of detail information can be displayed by switching with the side key [▼]. If eleven or more items are stored in the terminal, a message "Items remain: ×" is displayed. See the main display to check eleventh or later items.

<Example> When the number of missed calls are displayed

The number of missed calls is displayed. Press side key [▲] to display the date and time (only date is displayed for call or mail received on other than the current day) and caller's information by scrolling for each call.



- If the phone number or mail address is saved in the phonebook, the caller's name is displayed in the detail information. For the phonebook data with secret attribute set, only the caller's name is displayed if Secret mode is set.
- Only the phone number or mail address is displayed instead of the caller's name depending on Privacy Mode Settings.
- Detail information on missed calls cannot be displayed while Call logs settings is OFF. → P208
- If no operation is made for 15 seconds while the detail information is displayed, the display of sub-display disappears.

Other displays

The FOMA terminal's status is displayed on the sub-display in the following cases:

- When the battery runs out → P53
- When FOMA terminal is folded while making/receiving voice calls/talking/calls are on hold → P58, P63, P67
- When FOMA terminal is folded while making/receiving video-phone calls/talking/video-phone calls are on hold → P63, P85, P88
- When the time set for Alarm clock has arrived or snooze is operating → P215
- When the time set for Schedule alarm has arrived → P225
- When Side key guard has been set → P206
- When All lock has been set → P200
- When Remote lock has been set → P206
- When playing a melody stored in "Melody" → "Application" manual P285
- When inquiring i-mode or Short Message (SMS) in the Center → "Application" manual P150, P182
- When an i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) or Message R/F has been received → "Application" manual P113, P146, P181
- When infrared communication is in progress → "Application" manual P298
- When data communication (packet communication/64K) is in progress → "Application" manual P337, P355
- Communicating by USB → "Application" manual P323
- Playing/recording greeting → P79
- Recording video-phone message → P79
- Adjusting volume or ring volume → P72, P73
- Recording voice memo while talking → P247

Note: Some status is displayed on the sub-display by pressing side keys [▲▼].

INFORMATION

- You can change the display of the sub-display. → P185

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 38 of 372

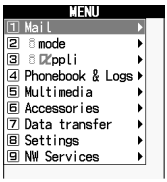
Selecting functions from menu

Select from the menu in stand-by and execute the functions. You can change the menu display format.

Setting menu display format <Menu Settings>

Default	Normal : Tile display Custom : 3D display Describe function : ON Type of icons : Type1 Icon display effect : OFF Default MENU : Normal Active shortcut: Custom

The menu display style can be selected out of following 3 types. Whether to display menu description when a menu is selected can be specified as well.



List view

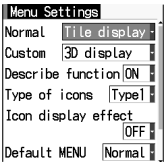


Tile display



3D display

1 Press (MENU) (▲) on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Normal	Sets menu display style for normal menu.
Custom	Sets menu display style for custom menu.
Describe function	Sets whether to display function description when a menu item is selected.
Type of icons	Sets the design of the icons that are displayed during tile icon display and 3D icon display.
Icon display effect	Sets whether to magnify an icon to indicate when it is selected.
Default MENU	Sets the menu display style between normal and custom.
Active shortcut	Sets the operation procedure of shortcuts for custom menu. • "Normal": the same item numbers as normal menu can be used as shortcuts. • "Custom": the item numbers for the positions of the respective functions registered on the custom menu can be used as shortcuts.

2 Select the item to set, press (●) and set it.

3 Press (📖).

The selected settings are registered.

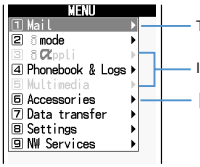
4 Press (☎ 電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 39 of 372

Selecting menu items (List)

The list format consists of a list of item numbers and item names.
Press ○ ○ to select the desired item and press ● to select it.



- You can also select an item pressing dial key for the item number.
- You can select an item by pressing ○ ○, selecting it and pressing ●.
- Press ○ or (クリア) while menu is displayed to return to the previous screen.

Selecting menu items (3D display)

The 3D display format consists of function icons displayed in a ring.
Press ○ ○ to rotate the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press ● to select it.



- Press ○ to rotate the icons clockwise.
- Press ○ to rotate them counterclockwise.
- Press ○ ○ to rotate the icons from the rear to the front (○ rotates them counterclockwise and ○ rotates them clockwise).
- You can also select an item by pressing dial key for the item number. In that case the corresponding item numbers are the same as the numbers displayed on the screen.
- Any disabled function is shown with 🔒.
- Press (クリア) while the menu is displayed to return to the previous screen.

Type of icon design

You have four types of designs for tile icon or 3D icon display.



Type 1 Type 2 Type 3 Type 4

- The selectable icon designs are those in the first level menu that appears first when you press (MENU).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 40 of 372

Selecting a function

There are two ways to select a function. The first method involves using the multi-cursor key to select from among the menu items. In the other method, the dial keys corresponding to the menu items are used.

To select menu items by multi-cursor key

<Example> To execute "Ring volume"

1 Press (MENU) on stand-by display.



The currently selected item is surrounded by a border.

- The menu set in Default MENU of Menu setting is displayed. You can switch between Normal and Custom by pressing (#).

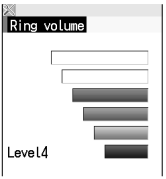
2 Press (camera) (i-α) (◁) (▷), select "Settings" and press (●).

Settings menu is displayed.

3 Press (camera) (i-α) (◁) (▷), select "Sounds/Vibrate" and press (●).

Sounds/Vibrate settings menu is displayed.

4 Press (camera) (i-α) (◁) (▷), select "Ring volume" and press (●).



You adjust the ring volume. →P73

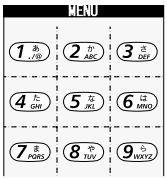
5 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 41 of 372

To select menu items by dial key (Shortcut operations)

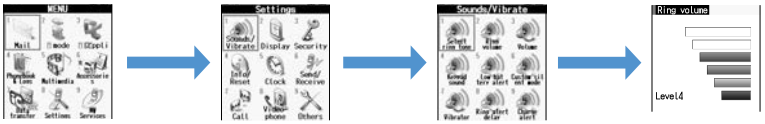
Each menu item has a number and can be selected by pressing the corresponding number key (1 to 9). The item position for each key is shown as follows:



<Example> To execute "Ring volume"

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 ./@ 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

You adjust the ring volume. →P73



2 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

To display descriptions of menu items (Describe function)

Press ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ to select the desired menu item. After a brief interval, a description of the item's function is displayed.



Description of the "Mail" menu item is displayed

- The function description disappears automatically after a brief interval.
- You can set FOMA terminal to not display function descriptions of menu items. →P37

To return to stand-by display or previous menu

After selecting a menu item, you can return to the stand-by display or previous menu by pressing the keys below.

クリア : Returns to the previous screen.

電源 : Returns to the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Display format of the menu →P37
- Custom Menu →P238
- When any executable function is restricted by PIM lock, etc. or UIM is not inserted, disabled functions are shown by that 🔒 is indicated or its characters are grayed-out and cannot be selected.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 42 of 372

Selecting functions from submenu

For some functions, you can display a submenu enabling various operations from the screen. Screens that let you select a submenu have "MENU" indicated on the upper left of the guide row.

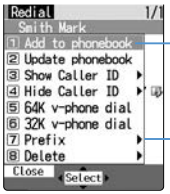
<Example> Selecting the redial submenu

1 Press ☎ on the stand-by display.



"MENU" is displayed at upper-left of the guide row.

2 Press (MENU).



The currently selected item is displayed in a different color.

▶ indicates that lower submenu exists.

3 Press 📷 ✉, select the desired submenu item and press ●.

The submenu item is selected.

- You can also select an item by pressing dial key for the item number.
- You can also select an item by pressing 📷 ✉ and pressing ☎.
- You can close the submenu by pressing (MENU) while a submenu is displayed.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When any executable function is restricted by PIM lock, etc. or UIM is not inserted, disabled items are shown by that its characters are grayed-out and cannot be selected.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 43 of 372

Displaying information quickly <Focus mode>

When any of the icons below is displayed on the stand-by display, you can select it to quickly display the information it stands for.

- 2 : Missed call (history of unanswered calls) exists.
- 1 : Unplayed record message exists.
- 1 : New voice mail message exists.
- 2 : Unread received mail exists.

- The number of stored items is displayed to the right of each icon.
- When a custom stand-by display is set, information is displayed on the stand-by display.You can check detailed information quickly by selecting displayed information. → P176, P177

1 Press ○ on the stand-by display, press ◁ ▷ and select the desired icon.



The selected icon is indicated in a different color.

Indicates directions of effective multi-cursor keys.

2 Press ○.

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.

■ 2

The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time each one was received. If the caller ID was sent, the other's phone number is also displayed, and can be called directly. → P70

■ 1

The record message list is displayed, letting you play the record messages. → P82

■ 1

The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages. → P275

■ 2

The Inbox folder list is displayed. You can display unread mail from this folder list. → "Application" manual P151, P183

3 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When you select an icon and hold down クリア for over a second, the icon and number of stored items temporarily disappear from the screen. And they appear again when new items are stored or information is viewed and the number of the items changes. Also, they appear again when FOMA terminal is turned OFF/ON.
- Depending on lock and other settings, the screen for some icons may not be displayed.
- If you have set Calendar in Stand-by display settings or set Calender for Area in custom stand-by display, press ○ on the stand-by display, select the calendar and press ○ to display Scheduler calendar. → P177 To select an icon, press ○ ☎ 1α, select the icon with ◁ ▷ and press ○.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 44 of 372

Inserting UIM (FOMA card)

UIM (FOMA card) is a card for storing user information such as phone numbers. It can be inserted and used in FOMA-compatible terminals.

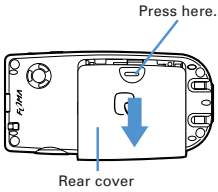
- For details on handling UIM, see the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing UIM

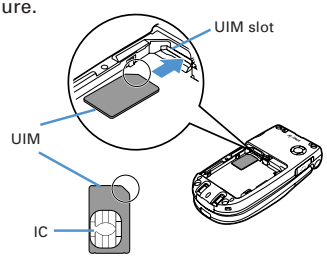
- Insert/remove the UIM with the power turned off and terminal folded by hand. Operation while FOMA terminal is laid down may damage the sub-display.

Inserting card

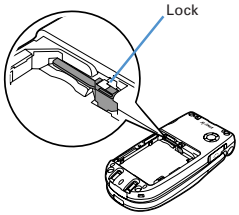
① Remove the rear cover by sliding it in the direction of the arrow while pressing it with your thumb.
If the battery pack is attached, remove it. → P47



② With the IC side of the UIM face down, inset the card into the UIM slot in the direction of the arrow as shown in the figure.



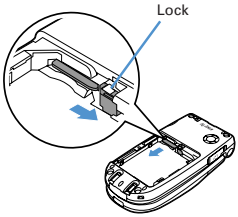
③ Insert the UIM further until the lock slides and the UIM is fixed as shown in the figure.



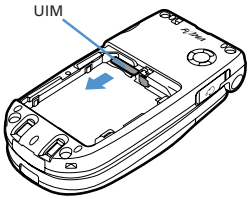
④ Attach the battery pack and rear cover. → P47

Removing card

① Remove the rear cover and battery pack. → P47
Slide the lock in the direction of the arrow while avoiding touching the UIM to let the card slightly pop out.



② Take out the UIM carefully. Be sure to remove by pulling out straight. Be careful do not drop the UIM when removing.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 45 of 372

INFORMATION

- Take care not to force UIM when inserting or removing it as doing so can damage it.
- Take care not to lose UIM after removal.
- When inserting or removing UIM, take care not to touch or scratch the IC portion.
- When removing the UIM, do not press hard. The card may be deformed or damaged.
- If you accidentally touch the UIM when you slide open the lock, it may be difficult to remove the card. Reinsert the card until it stops and then slide the lock to pop out the card again.

UIM security codes

UIM has two security codes, known as the "PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code".

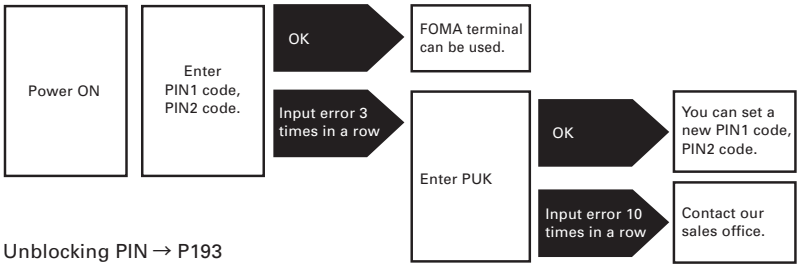
- PIN1 code
  A security code (4 to 8 digits) used to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others.
  Entered each time you insert a UIM in FOMA terminal or turn ON FOMA terminal. Entering the PIN1 code lets you make or receive phone calls and perform communication function operations.
  FOMA terminal is set to enable operation without entering the PIN1 code by default. When you set the terminal to check PIN1 codes, you must enter the PIN1 code when you turn ON the power. → P191
- PIN2 code
  A security code (4 to 8 digits) used for when requesting or using the issue of a user certificate.
  → "Application" manual P24, P29, P59, P61

Changing PIN codes

- Both the PIN1 code and PIN2 code are set to "0000" at the subscribed to FOMA. You can change both of settings. → P191, P192 If you enter the PIN1 code or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, the PIN code is locked automatically, so be sure to keep a separate note of the numbers you set.
- When using current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1 code and PIN2 code should be same ones that you set previously. If no changes have been made to PIN1 code and PIN2 code, your codes are "0000".

PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

- The PUK is the number used to unblock the PIN1 and PIN2. It is given to you at time of purchase. Entering the PUK (8 digits) unblocks the PIN codes.
- If you enter the PUK incorrectly 10 times in a row, it blocks automatically, so be sure to keep a separate note of the number. Contact our sales office if you forget your PUK or cannot unblock the PINs.



Unblocking PIN → P193

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 46 of 372

Function of UIM operation restrictions

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data.

- To protect the information provided by the IP (information service provider), this function restricts displaying and playing of downloaded data, and files and Message R/F attached to mail when your correct UIM is not inserted. Restricted data types are as follows:

- Images (including Animations and Flash graphics)	- i-motion	- Melodies
- Chara-den	- i αppli (including i αppli stand-by display)	- Screen Memos
- Message R/F		- Files attached to i-mode Mail
- Images inserted in DECO mail text		

i αppli with the UIM operation restriction function become unavailable for the following operations if the UIM has been switched with another UIM or removed from FOMA terminal.

- Start
- Display Software details
- Software settings
- Auto start
- Changing Auto start
- i αppli stand-by display settings
- Upgrade

INFORMATION

- If data with the UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the stand-by display or a ring tone, the default settings are restored when the UIM has been switched with another UIM or removed from FOMA terminal. Attaching the UIM that was attached when the data was received/downloaded restores the previous settings.
- The UIM operation restriction function is not enabled for data obtained through infrared communication, miniSD memory card or Data Link Software or images taken with the built-in camera.
- You can use the ＩＣ card function even if UIM operation restriction function is set for the ＦｅＬｉＣａ compatible i αppli. However, you cannot start the ＦｅＬｉＣａ compatible i αppli.

Functional differences between UIM types

There are 2 types of UIMs: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below.

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone numbers that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P117
User certificate download to use FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	"Application" manual P59
WORLD WING Service	Available	Unavailable	See below
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for inquiries and for repairs are available.	Unavailable	P293

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (Green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into an overseas mobile phone (GSM handset), you can make/receive a call in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Contact the following for more information:

WORLD WING <DoCoMo Information Center>

For inquiries (in English)
0120-005-250 (toll-free)
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

For inquiries (in Japanese only)
No prefix 151 (toll-free)
Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

0120-800-000 (toll-free)

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 47 of 372

Charging battery

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Be sure to use the special adapter to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

- The battery pack cannot be directly charged as it is.
- For details on handling the battery pack, see the battery pack manual.

Charging times (estimates)

The times below are the times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal's power switch set to "OFF".
Charging takes longer with the FOMA terminal's power switch set to "ON".

AC adapter F03	Approx. 140 min.
DC adapter F01	Approx. 150 min.

Operation times on full charge (estimates)

The times below will vary depending on the charging method and operating environment.

Continuous stand-by time (stationary)	Approx. 450 H
Continuous stand-by time (moving)	Approx. 340 H
Continuous call time (during a voice call)	Approx. 160 min.
Continuous call time (during a video-phone call)	Approx. 100 min.

- Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- The continuous call time is an estimate of continuous call time at maximum transmission power and the continuous stand-by time is an estimate of continuous stand-by time for mobile use with F900iC folded and in an area where radio reception is normal. The call (communication)/stand-by time may be reduced to about half depending on the battery charge condition, function settings, operating environment such as atmospheric temperature, signal quality in the place of use (radio waves do not or hardly reach), etc. Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Even if calls or i-mode communications are not made, composing i-mode Mail messages or starting downloaded i αppli or i αppli stand-by display reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Some i αppli software may attempt to make connection after it is downloaded. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection.
- Call (communication) or stand-by time will be reduced when performing data communication and Multiaccess or using the camera.

INFORMATION

- Some i αppli software remains constantly operating even when FOMA terminal is folded, continuing to consume power. Use of this software may reduce the call (communication) or stand-by time.
- When you start charging the battery with some types of i αppli software running, charging may not finish. To finish charging the battery, first end the software.

Getting the most out of battery pack

To get the maximum performance from FOMA terminal, use the battery back provided.

- **Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with the FOMA terminal's power ON.**
  If you charge FOMA terminal for an extended period with the power ON, when charging finishes, the terminal will start receiving power from the battery pack, so may only be operational for a short time, after which the low battery alarm will ring. In this case, charge the battery again by the correct procedure. Before charging the battery again, remove FOMA terminal from the AC or DC adapter and reconnect it.
- **Battery pack life**
  The battery pack is a consumable part. As with any rechargeable battery, the operation time it can provide from a single charge shortens each time you charge it. The battery pack's life is effectively over when the operation time it provides on a full charge is half the length it was when the battery pack was new. (The battery pack's life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.)
- **For environmental protection, bring in any battery no longer required to NTT DoCoMo, distributors, recycling cooperation partners, etc.**

Li-ion

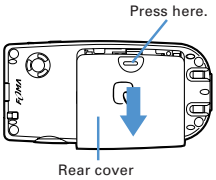
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 48 of 372

Attaching/removing battery pack

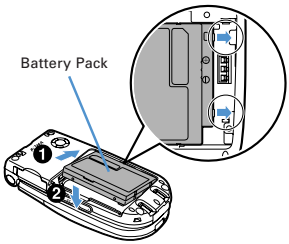
- Attach/remove the battery pack with the power turned off and FOMA terminal folded by hand. Operation while FOMA terminal is laid down may damage the sub-display.

Attaching battery pack

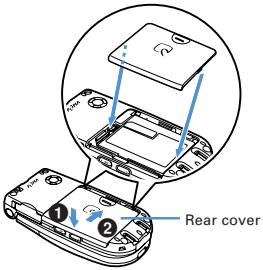
①Remove the rear cover by sliding it in the direction of the arrow while pressing it with your thumb.



②With the marked side of the battery pack face up, align the convex part of the battery pack with the concave part of FOMA terminal, insert the battery pack in the direction of ❶ and press it in the direction of ❷ unit it fits.

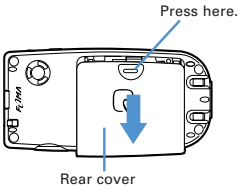


③Bring the two tabs of the rear cover to meet the cuts in FOMA terminal. Slide in the direction of ❷ to fit in while pressing in the direction of ❶ so that no gap is generated between FOMA terminal and the rear cover.

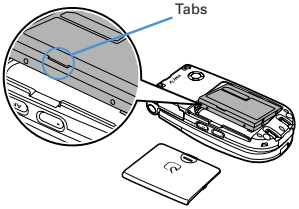


Removing battery pack

①Remove the rear cover by sliding it in the direction of the arrow while pressing it with your thumb.



②Grasp tabs on the battery pack and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



INFORMATION

- Forcing the battery pack into FOMA terminal may damage the FOMA terminal jack.
- Pressing too hard may damage the rear cover.
- FOMA terminal or rear cover may be damaged if you attach or remove the battery pack by a method other than the procedures described.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 49 of 372

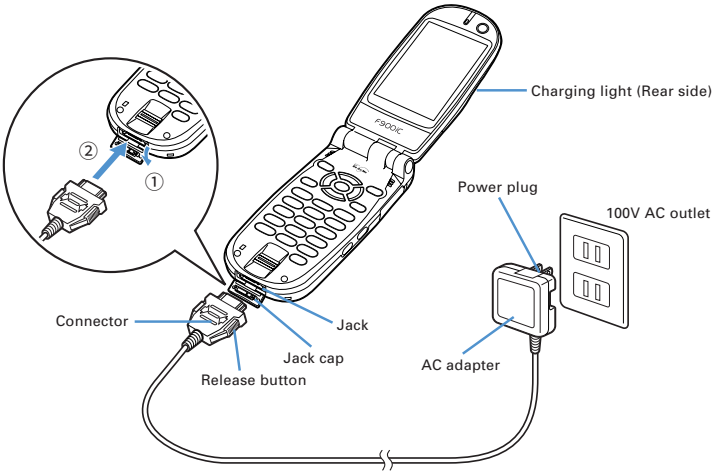
Notice in case of charge

- Refer to the section "Troubleshooting", when the charging light flashes during charging. → P347
- In some environments, the charging light may not light immediately when charging is started; this is normal and not a malfunction. However, if the light fails to light after a few minutes, disconnect FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter then connect it again to start charging. Contact our sales office if the light fails to light a few minutes after charging is started.
- If you use the video-phone or if you transmit/receive packets or 64K data while charging the battery at high temperatures, the charging may not finish normally because of temperature rise in FOMA terminal. For this case, wait until the temperature falls down to try again.
- If the incoming light is used by receiving a mail or performing the shooting with camera during a charge, the charging light goes out temporarily.
- If the Charge Alert Setting is set to "OFF", the charge start/completion alert does not sound. → P171

Charging with AC adapter

Be sure to also read the F03 AC adapter's manual.

(1) Attach the battery pack to FOMA terminal.
(2) Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's jack (①) and insert the AC adapter's connector with the arrow facing upward (②).
(3) Unfold the AC adapter's power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
(4) Check that the charge start alert sounds and the charging light is lit.
  - If charging in stand-by, the battery icons in the display and sub-display blink.
  - It is normal for FOMA terminal, battery pack and AC adapter to become warm while charging.
(5) When the battery has finished charging, the charge end alert sounds and the charging light goes out.
  - The flashing of the battery icon on the display or sub-display also stop.
(6) When the battery has finished charging, disconnect the AC adapter from the outlet, and press the release buttons on both sides of the connector to remove the connector from FOMA terminal.
(7) Close the jack cap.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 50 of 372

Charging with desktop holder

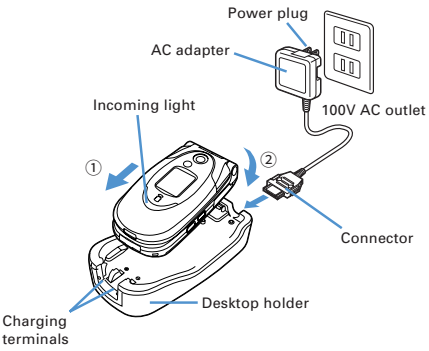
Be sure to also read the F05 desktop holder's manual.

Combining the AC adapter and desktop holder F05 allows recharging without opening the jack cap of the FOMA terminal unit.
Close the jack cap to attach to the desktop holder correctly.
You cannot charge the battery using the desktop holder alone.
When you use desktop holder, place it on the plane surface. Fold FOMA terminal when attaching or removing it to/from the desktop holder.

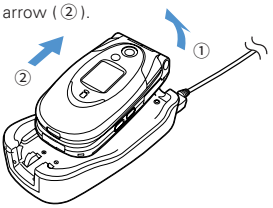
(1) Connect the AC adapter to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the AC adapter's connector facing upward.
(2) Unfold the AC adapter's power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
(3) Align FOMA terminal (and attached battery pack) with the desktop holder's jack (①), and insert FOMA terminal in the direction of the arrow (②) until it clicks.
(4) Check that the charge start alert sounds and the charging light is lit.
- If charging in stand-by, the battery icons in the display and the sub-display blink.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal, battery pack, desktop holder and AC adapter to become warm while charging.

(5) When the battery has finished charging, the charge end alert sounds and the charging light goes out.
- The flashing of the battery icon on the display or sub-display also stop.

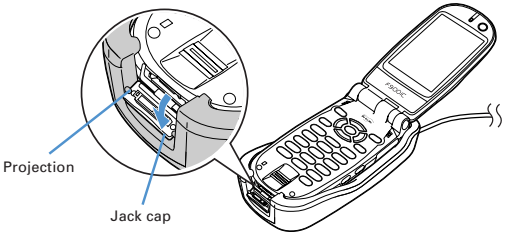
(6) When you have finished charging, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder.
- Remove the AC adapter from the outlet if it will not be used for an extended period.



Removing FOMA terminal from the desktop holder
Hold the desktop folder, and lift up FOMA terminal (①), pulling it out in the direction of the arrow (②).



Using external connection terminal after attachment
Open the terminal cap and hook on the projection of the desktop holder to fix.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 51 of 372

Charging with DC adapter (optional)

Be sure to also read F01 DC adapter's manual.

(1) Attach the battery pack to FOMA terminal.

(2) Open the FOMA terminal jack cap (①), and insert the DC adapter connector with the arrow facing upward (②).

(3) Insert the DC adapter cigarette lighter plug into the vehicle's cigarette lighter socket. Check that the DC adapter's operation light is lit in red.

(4) Check that the charge start alert sounds and the charging light of the FOMA terminal is lit.

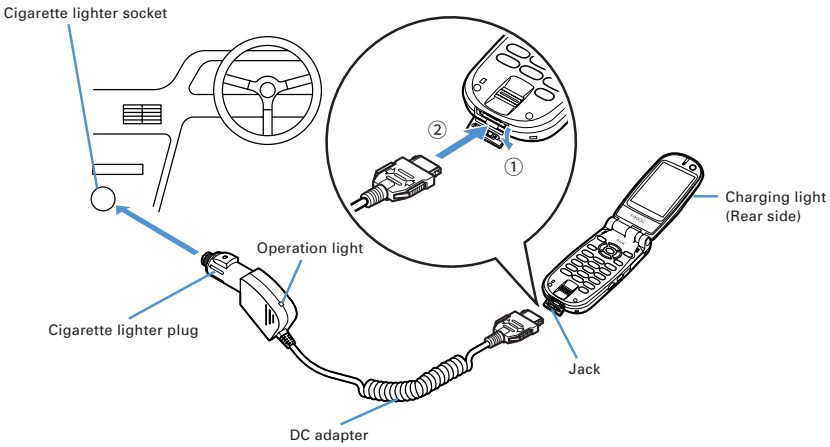
- If charging in stand-by, the battery icons in the display and sub-display blink.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal, battery pack and DC adapter to become warm while charging.

(5) When the battery has finished charging, the charge end alert sounds and the charging light goes out.

- The flashing of the battery icon on the display and sub-display also stop.

(6) When the battery has finished charging, disconnect the connector from FOMA terminal, and disconnect the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket.

(7) Close the jack cap.



INFORMATION

- It is convenient to charge if you use with In-car holder F05 (optional).
- Do not use the DC adapter when the vehicle's engine is not running. Doing so can cause the battery to be discharged.
- FOMA terminal connected to a DC adapter is not turned OFF when the DC adapter is disconnected from the cigarette lighter socket. When FOMA terminal is not used or you are leaving the car, disconnect the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket and disconnect the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal.
- The fuse (1A) is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply store for a replacement.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 52 of 372

Turning power ON/OFF

Turning power ON

1 Hold down 電源 for over 2 seconds.

The wake-up screen is displayed and the stand-by display appears.



Signal quality display			
			圏外
Strong	Medium	Poor	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach



- If the date and time have not been set, a message informing you that the date and time is not set. Press ● and perform from Step 2 in Set time procedure. → P55
- If no UIM is inserted, a message informing you that attachment of UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and turn the power back on.
- Depending on the settings, the PIN1 code input screen may be displayed. → P191
- Depending on the settings, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i αppli stand-by display. → "Application" manual P83
- You can change the graphic, display format of date/time and battery icon displayed in stand-by. → P172, P182
- If a UIM has been inserted incorrectly or if there is a problem with the UIM, you cannot make/receive a call or send/receive a mail.

Turning power OFF

1 Hold down 電源 for over 2 seconds.

The power is turned OFF.

INFORMATION

- When 圏外 is indicated in an area where the outside the service area or radio waves are hard to reach, you must move to the area where the icon is not indicated. However, call may be cut off even when is indicated and you are not moving.
- If you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for 5 minutes when the Turn light on setting is other than Always, the display switches to power saving mode and the light is turned off automatically. However, the display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 53 of 372

Checking remaining battery level

The display shows the approximate remaining battery.

- Battery Level is displayed in 3 levels.
- The remaining battery level display is an approximation.
- If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, the remaining battery level is displayed on the sub-display.



Remaining battery level icon

	Remaining battery level 3 (ample charge)	Remaining battery level 2 (low charge)	Remaining battery level 1 (recharging recommended)
Default	→	→	
Other icons*	→	→	
	→	→	

* : The icon can be changed in Battery icon setting. → P182

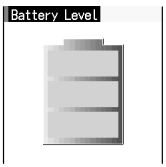
Checking remaining battery level by sound <Battery Level>

- The sound does not ring in the following situations:
  - Keypad sound is "OFF".
  - Silent mode is set (by setting in Custom Silent mode).
  - Ring volume is set to Silent.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 4 た GHI 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.

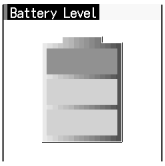
The remaining battery level is displayed for a brief interval and the screen returns to the menu list.

(Remaining battery level 3)



Sound rings 3 times.

(Remaining battery level 2)



Sound rings twice.

(Remaining battery level 1)



Sound rings once.

2 Press 電源.

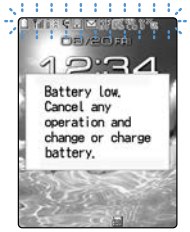
The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 54 of 372

When battery is almost exhausted

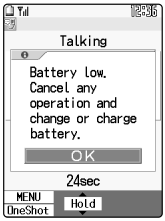
When the battery almost runs out, a message appears on the display or a Low battery alert is given. Charging the battery stops the Low battery alert. If you want to stop this alert immediately, press (電源).

- When your terminal is on stand-by



A message indicating Low battery appears on the display. When you press ( ), the message disappears. For a while, a low battery alert sound is given and the message reappears. At this time, all the icons blink on top of the display and the power automatically turns off after approximately one minute.

- When you are talking



A low battery alert sound is heard from the earpiece and a message indicating Low battery appears on the display. When approximately 20 seconds elapsed after the low battery alert sound is heard, the stand-by display reappears. After that, the power is turned off after approximately one minute.

- If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, "Low battery" is displayed in the sub-display.

Setting low battery alert not to ring <Low Battery Alert>

Default: ON

- In Silent mode or Driving mode, the low battery alert does not sound even when set to "ON". In Custom silent mode, the low battery alarm operation depends on the settings.

1 Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (1 あ ./@) (5 な JKL) on the stand-by display.

The Low Battery Alert screen is displayed.

2 Press (2 か ABC).

Low battery alert is canceled.

- To set the low battery alert, press (1 あ ./@).

3 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- If the battery almost runs out while you are talking, the low battery alarm is heard through the earpiece and "Battery low." message is displayed even when Low battery alert is "OFF".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 55 of 372

Switching to English <Select Language>

Default | Use UIM settings

The screen display can be switched either to Japanese or English.

Switching from Japanese to English

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



2 Press 2 ABC.

The screen is set to English.

Switching from English to Japanese

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@.

The screen is set to Japanese.

INFORMATION

- In English mode, the character input mode changes in the following order: "Alphabet" → "Numeric" → "Hiragana/kanji" → "Katakana"

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 56 of 372

Setting date and time <Set date and time>

The date and time of FOMA terminal is set.

- The set time keeps when you replace the battery pack, but may be reset if the battery is removed for an extended period. In this case, set the date and time again.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 5 JKL 1 .,/@ on the stand-by display.



2 Select the Date field, press ●, enter the date and press ●.

- Enter the last two digits of the year. For single-digit years, months or days, precede the digit with a zero (0).
- The date can be set up between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.
- You can also increase and decrease the entered values by pressing ● ●.
- You can press ◁ ▷ to move the cursor to the digit to change and enter a new value for that digit.

3 Select the Time field, press ●, enter the time and press ●.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with a zero (0). The date can be set from 0:00 to 23:59.
- You can also increase and decrease the entered values by pressing ● ●.
- You can press ◁ ▷ to move the cursor to the digit to change and enter a new value for that digit.

4 Press 📖.

The date and time are set.

5 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 57 of 372

INFORMATION

- You cannot use the following functions when the date and time have not been set:
  - Scheduler → P216, P219
  - Auto power ON → P209
  - Auto power OFF → P210
  - Alarm clock → P211
  - i αppli Auto start function → "Application" manual P79
  - i αppliDX requiring time setting → "Application" manual P67
  - Downloading i-motion files with set replay time periods or time limits → "Application" manual P269
  - Data (schedule) transfer → "Application" manual P299, P301
  - Software update → P350
- If the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions, "----/--/--" is displayed, and a number to segmentalize furthermore (segmental number) may be appended.
  - Redial → P64
  - Received calls → P70
  - Answer machine, Voice memo → P78, P247
  - Date and time of images recorded with the camera (File name) → "Application" manual P215
  - Date and time of videos recorded with the camera (Title) → "Application" manual P225
  - Date and time of software download → "Application" manual P76
  - Date and time of sent mail, unsent mail → "Application" manual P144, P179
- You can set the date and time by pressing MENU 4 during voice call.
- When you handle user certificate (→ "Application" manual P59), set the date and time beforehand.

Checking your own phone number <User Information>

Check your phone number (My phone number), Name, Mail address, etc. with User Information.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 0 on the stand-by display.



- Only own number is displayed by default.
- To check your i-mode Mail address, display iMenu by press i-α 1 on the stand-by display, then select "ENGLISH", "4 Options" → "1 Mail Settings" → "Confirm Mail Address".

2 When finished, press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- Press TASK 0 to check your own phone number (Own number) while talking. → P267
- Changing the mail address field in the user information does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not automatically change the address field in the user information.
  Changing i-mode Mail address → "Application" manual P165
- Saving user information other than phone number → P235
- You can exchange user information between two FOMA terminals with the infrared communication function. → "Application" manual P299, P301

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 58 of 372

Basic Operations

Making/Receiving Calls 58
Setting the response to calls that cannot be answered 75
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls 84
Using Phonebook 101
Setting Alert Profile 149

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 59 of 372

Making calls

Calls from FOMA terminals are made through either of 2 ways; voice call - call only with voice and video-phone call - call with video screen.
The procedure for making voice calls is explained below.

- If other party's mobile phone is turned OFF or in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance is played indicating your call cannot be connected.
- FOMA terminal cannot be called from in-building phones/PBX or other phones that cannot call outside their area code.
- You cannot make calls when 圏外 is indicated.
- You may not be able to make a call while executing another function. → P341, P343
- You cannot make calls in All lock ON. → P200
- You cannot make calls by pressing the dial keys when Keypad dial lock is ON. → P203

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display.



Calling general subscriber phone	Area code - prefix - number • Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phone/ carphone	090 - XXXX - XXXX 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phone	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- You can enter up to 80 digits.
- To correct phone number, press クリア.
- To go back to the stand-by display, hold ○ down for over a second.

2 Press 文字.



You will hear the dial tone. You can start talking as soon as the call is answered.

- If the phone on the other party is busy, you will hear the busy signal. Press 電源 to end the call and make the call again later. You can call back quickly using the Redial. → P64
- You can shoot a still image even during a call with the camera started by pressing ▲. → "Application" manual P239

3 When you have finished your call, press 電源.

- You can also hang up by folding FOMA terminal (default setting). To set FOMA terminal not to hang up when folded, change the setting in "Close Settings". → P164
  The call is continued while an earphone/microphone set with a switch or handsfree device is being connected even if FOMA terminal is folded.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 60 of 372

INFORMATION

- You can make calls by performing Steps 1 and 2 in the reverse order. Voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed and entered the phone number.
- If you hear a guidance to request your Caller ID, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your Caller ID. → P61 When you make a call entering the phone number without turning Send Caller ID function ON/OFF, the setting for Caller ID Notification is used. → P287
- When "Continue (mute)" is set for Close settings (→ P164), folding FOMA terminal while making a call displays the current status, the other party's information, etc. on sub-display. → P35
- Video-phone calls or 64K data communication cannot be performed during voice calls.
- Even if a video-phone call or 64K data communication is received during a voice call, you cannot receive a call or communication. When you subscribe the Call Waiting service, missed calls remain in the Received calls.
  Call Waiting service → P278
- FOMA terminal can handle both voice calls and packet communications (i-mode etc.) simultaneously. → P261
- When the battery runs out during a call, the low battery alarm sounds, and the call is automatically disconnected. → P53
- When a call is made to the other party with video set for Select image of the phonebook data, the first image of the video is played on Calling screen. → P107
- Your FOMA terminal may not smoothly display the count of seconds of call duration immediately after starting a call.
- How to use a earphone/microphone set with a switch → P257

Using speakerphone function

By entering a phone number on the stand-by display and holding down for over a second, you can make a voice call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker (speakerphone function). While making/talking calls, you can switch between ordinary call and call using the speakerphone function by pressing .

Voice call status	Screen display	Voice output
During normal call	–	Earpiece
With speakerphone function operating		Speaker

- When using the speakerphone function, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- When you are talking to the other party, you may hardly hear the other party's voice because of the large background noise around you or the other party. In such case, make normal call.
- Talk to the FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm.

Operation while talking voice calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu while voice calls are taking place:

Submenu item	Description
1 Received Calls	Displays the received calls. → P70
2 Redial	Displays redial data. → P64
3 Phonebook	Displays the phonebook. → P120, 127
4 Set time	Sets the date and time. → P55
5 Reconnect alarm*	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality that has been cut off due to poor signal quality. → P161
6 Quality alarm*	Sets an alarm to ring when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality. → P161
7 Terminal close	Sets whether to hang up by folding FOMA terminal. → P164
8 Dial up	When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, lets you call another person while talking. → P280

*: Setting can be changed when the alarm sounds. But the change is effective when the alarm sounds next time after the alarm once stopped.

The following operations can be performed while talking:

- You can record the voice of the other party by Talking Voice Memo if you hold down side key [▲] for over a second. → P247
- You can adjust volume by pressing side keys [▲▼].

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 61 of 372

INFORMATION

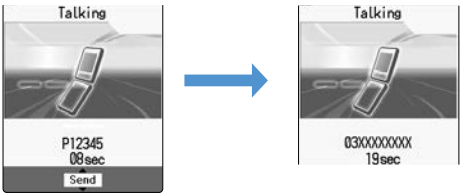
- The side key [▲] has two positions: half-pressed and fully-pressed to take photos with Auto focus function of the camera, so the feeling is different from the side key [▼] when pressed.
- Press (TASK) (0) to check your own phone number (Own number) while talking → P267

Entering pause, timed pause or "+"

You can enter pauses, timed pauses or "+" when making a call.

<Example> When you call to "03XXXXXXXXP12345"

When you press ( ) after the call is connected, all phone numbers after the pause are dialed.



- **Enter pause ("P")**
  Hold down (*) for over a second.
  Pause ("P") is used for sending messages to pagers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc.
  * : The name of the pager service provided by DoCoMo was changed to "QUICKCAST" in January 2001.
  - You cannot make calls with a pause at the beginning of the phone number.
  - Even if you enter "✳" after entering pause, you cannot use it as a separator in sub-addresses.
- **Enter timed pause ("T")**
  Hold down (#) for over a second.
  Timed pause is used to dial outside line number with extensions. The extension number is dialed after placing a pause of a set number of seconds to enter "T" between the outside line and extension number.
  - Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
  - Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
  - You cannot make calls with a timed pause at the beginning of the phone number.
  - Even if you enter "✳" after entering a timed pause, you cannot use it as a separator in sub-addresses.
- **Enter ("+")**
  Hold down (0) for over a second.
  You can enter "+" at the top of phone number.

INFORMATION

- Sent touch-tone (DTMF) signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- When it is necessary to send touch-tone (DTMF) signals following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. Note that input touch-tone (DTMF) signals after switching to the speakerphone.

Specifying sub addresses when making calls

When "ON" is set for Sub Address (→ P160), enter "✳" (sub-address delimiter) by pressing (*) after the phone number and sub-address and press (☎).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 62 of 372

Setting whether to send your phone number when making calls <Caller ID>

Display your phone number (Caller ID) on the display of the other party's phone when you make a call.

- Your caller ID is important information. Take care when deciding to disclose this information.
- Your phone number is displayed only when the other party's phone is one that supports Caller ID display such as a digital mobile phone.
- You can use the following ways to send your phone number to the other party.

① **Setting at one time**	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID at one time for all the calls you make.	P287
② **Setting into Phonebook entries**	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID for each Phonebook entry.	P138
③ **Setting when dialing**	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID for each call you make.	See below

Appending 186 (✳31#)/184 (#31#) to dialed phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to a phone number every time you make a call.

■ Sending your caller ID

"(1 あ ./@)(8 や TUV)(6 は MNO) + phone number + (通話) " or

"(✳ ｱﾙﾌｧﾍﾞｯﾄ)(3 さ DEF)(1 あ ./@)(# ﾏﾅｰ) + phone number + (通話) "

- Press (1 あ ./@)(8 や TUV)(6 は MNO) (or (✳ ｱﾙﾌｧﾍﾞｯﾄ)(3 さ DEF)(1 あ ./@)(# ﾏﾅｰ)) + phone number + (ﾋﾞﾃﾞｵ) to make a video-phone call.

■ Not sending your caller ID

"(1 あ ./@)(8 や TUV)(4 た GHI) + phone number + (通話) " or

"(# ﾏﾅｰ)(3 さ DEF)(1 あ ./@)(# ﾏﾅｰ) + phone number + (通話) "

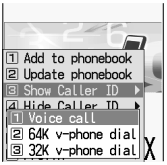
- Press (1 あ ./@)(8 や TUV)(4 た GHI) (or (# ﾏﾅｰ)(3 さ DEF)(1 あ ./@)(# ﾏﾅｰ)) + phone number + (ﾋﾞﾃﾞｵ) to make a video-phone call.

Showing/hiding caller ID when dialing

You set whether to send your caller ID after entering the phone number. You can also set whether to send your caller ID after displaying a phone number from the phonebook or redial list.

<Example> Making a voice call to show caller ID

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by and press (MENU)(3 さ DEF).



- Press (MENU)(4 た GHI) to hide caller ID.

2 Press (1 あ ./@).



The voice call is made.

- Press (2 か ABC) or (3 さ DEF) to make a video-phone call.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 63 of 372

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from the list of Dialed numbers, Received calls, Recorded messages or Voice memo, press (MENU) and select "Show Caller ID" or "Hide Caller ID". When operating from Phonebook list or Details (TOP)/Details (Phone number) screen of FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or User Information Details (Phone number) screen, press (MENU) and select "Call".
- If you hear a guidance to request your caller ID, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- When you make a call entering the phone number without appending 186 (✳31#) or 184 (#31#) and dialed without selecting show/hide your Caller ID from menu, the setting for Caller ID function is used. → P287 However, even if you select show/hide your Caller ID when dialing, in case of the phone number appending 186/184, your terminal operates according to the setting, and in case of the phone number appending ✳31#/ #31#, the setting for Caller ID function is used. → P61
- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even 186 (✳31#) is added.
- If the caller sent their caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed on the screen. When the caller's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed. Name displays → P102
  When the caller ID for an incoming call is not displayed, the reason (one of the reasons below) is displayed.

Reason	Description
User unset	The caller selected not to send own caller ID
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone*1
Not supported	The call was made from a line that does not support Send caller ID function*2

*1: Includes calls from NTT payphones and DoCoMo public carphones.

*2: Includes calls from overseas or from general subscriber phones via various forwarding services. Some connecting phone companies send caller IDs.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 64 of 372

Putting calls on hold <On-hold>

Putting the caller on hold while talking lets you talk to someone without the caller hearing your voice.

- Callers are charged for time spent on hold.

1 Press ◯ while talking.

The call is placed on hold, incoming light flashes in green, and a melody is played on the terminals of you and the other party. For video-phone calls, the video-phone on-hold image is sent to the other party.



On-hold during a voice call



The video-phone call On-hold image

On-hold during a video-phone call

- Press ◯ or 文字 while voice calls are on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press ◯ while video-phone calls are on hold to cancel the hold and send the image similar to that has been sent before on hold.
  Press ▲▲ to cancel the hold and send camera image. Press 文字 to cancel the hold and send a substitutive image to the other party. →P98

INFORMATION

- When "Continue (mute)" is set in Close Settings (→P164), folding the FOMA terminal while a call is on hold followed by pressing side keys [▲▼] shows on the sub-display "On hold" for a voice call and "VP on hold" for a video-phone call and information regarding the other party.
- The video-phone hold image can be changed. →P99
- The melody to be played while on hold can be changed. →P162

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 65 of 372

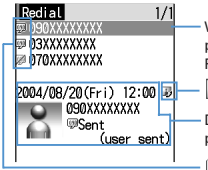
Calling back previously called numbers <Redial>

You call back numbers quickly that were busy, etc. (Redial).
If you have set the date and time in FOMA terminal, the date and time of the most recent calls made are recorded in memory.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded.
- This function is not available while Call logs settings is "OFF". → P208
- When the same number is redialed, only the most recent call is recorded regardless of sent or unsent caller ID.
- Calls to phone numbers retrieved in Secret mode are logged in the redial list, including the phone numbers.
- When Keypad dial lock or PIM lock is set, the numbers stored in the redial list up to that point are deleted. Calls made after setting Keypad dial lock or PIM lock are recorded in the redial list and can be called from it.

Display Redial

1 Press ☐ on the stand-by display and select the number to redial.



When the other party's phone number coincides with a number in the phonebook, the party's name and image are displayed. Displaying names when Privacy Mode or Secret Mode is ON → P102

: Make a video-phone call

Date and time, phone number and condition of outgoing calls to the selected party

: Voice/video-phone call with Caller ID → P61

: Voice/video-phone call without Caller ID → P61

2 Press 通話/文字.

The voice call is made.

- Press ▲📷 to make a video-phone call.
- Pressing ● makes a call in the same way as the selected redial call type (voice call/video-phone call).
- Holding down ✉▼ for over a second displays the Short Message (SMS) creation screen with the Redial phone number specified as the address. If the Redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing ✉▼ displays the i-mode Mail creation screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the Redial phone number specified as the address.

INFORMATION

- When the number of redial exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.
- While the Privacy mode is ON (if the phonebook is set to "Need auth. to use"), even if the caller's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the caller's name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed, when a redial is made.
- To change show/hide caller ID when making a call → P61
- To append a number set in Prefix to the start of the phone number to call → P66, P159
- To use the speakerphone function → P59, P86
- To register a phone number from the redial list in the phonebook → P118

Deleting Redial

You can delete one Redial at a time or all at once.

1 Press ☐ on the stand-by display.

The redial list is displayed.

2 Select an entry to delete and press MENU 8や TUV 1あ ./@.

A confirmation screen is displayed to delete the received call.

- Press MENU 8や TUV 2か ABC to delete all entries.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The entry is deleted from the redial list.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 66 of 372

International calls <WORLD CALL>

DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL"

- This international call service is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

0 0 9 1 3 0 ▶ 0 1 0 ▶ country code ▶ area code ▶ phone number ▶

* The above sequence of numbers can be registered in FOMA terminal phonebook.

* Omit the "0" in area codes starting with 0. This dialing procedure does not cover certain countries including Italy (general subscriber telephones) and areas.

- You can call approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription or monthly charges apply.

* This service is available to subscribers to the FOMA service without the need for making an application.

- Change international call dial procedure

  MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. Along with the introducing of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.

WORLD CALL <DoCoMo Information Center>

For inquiries (in English)	For inquiries (in Japanese only)	
0120-005-250 (toll-free)	No prefix 151 (toll-free)	0120-800-000 (toll-free)
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	

* Confirm the number is correct to prevent wrong numbers.

* To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact the carrier for details.

* This service may not be available depending on the charge plan you subscribed.

- "International video-phone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals*1 can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the video-phone mode.*2

*1: As of June, 2004. Communication can be made with Hutchison 3G UK terminals (United Kingdom) and Hutchison 3G HK terminals (Hong Kong).

*2: The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international video-phone line.

*1/2: For details, visit DoCoMo website.

INFORMATION

- The prefix setting allows you to use the international call service with simple method. → P66, P159

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 67 of 372

Simplified dialing for international calls

Use of Prefix simplifies the procedure for making international phone calls.

- The default setting for "Prefix" is "009130010" for international calls. →P159

1 **Enter a phone number including the country code on the stand-by display.**



2 **Press** MENU 7 PQRS 1 ./@.



3 **Press** 文字.

An international call is made.

INFORMATION

- Dialing for international calls can be simplified by registering phone numbers including the country codes in the phonebook in advance.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 68 of 372

Receiving calls

The procedure for receiving voice calls is explained below.

- You cannot receive calls when 圏外, SELF (during Self mode) or (during data transfer mode) is indicated.
- Telephones that do not support dialed long-distance calls such as in-building phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.

1 FOMA terminal receives a call.



The ring tone sounds, the display's back light lights, and the incoming light is lit/flashed.

- Press 電源 to hold your answer. → P75

2 Press 文字.



You can now answer the call. The call duration is displayed.

- Press to put the call on hold. → P63
- You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing 文字.

3 When you have finished your call, press 電源.

- You can also hang up by folding FOMA terminal (default setting). To set FOMA terminal not to hang up when folded, change the setting in "Close Settings". → P164

  The call is continued while an earphone/microphone set with a switch or handsfree device is being connected even if FOMA terminal is folded.

Display information

The phone number, name, image, etc. appear on the display according to the sending conditions of the caller or FOMA terminal settings.

- Chaku-motion → P169

■ If the other party has sent their caller ID



If you do not register the phone number of the other party in your phonebook, the phone number and the image set in Call Image (→ P180) is displayed. When you set "i-motion" for Phone/Video-phone in Select ring tone setting (→ P168), the i-motion is played regardless of the Call Image setting. However, if the i-motion contains voice only, the call image is displayed by default.



If the phone number of the other party has been already registered in your phonebook, the name or the image set in the phonebook is displayed. Displaying name → P102

If "i-motion" is set for the following each ring tone setting, the set i-motion is played in order of precedence: "1. Phonebook (phonebook No.) → 2.Phonebook (Group) → 3.Phonebook image → 4.Phone/Video-phone of Select ring tone (→ P168)" If you do not set i-motion or Phonebook image, the image set for Call Image (→ P180) is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 69 of 372

If the other party has not sent their caller ID



Displays reason why no Caller ID is sent is displayed. → P62
If a call is received when you set "i-motion" for the following each ring tone setting, the set i-motion is played in order of precedence:
"1. Anonymous caller → 2. Phone of Select ring tone (→ P168)"
When a video-phone call comes in, i-motion that have been set at video-phone in the Ring tone setting will be played. If you do not set "i-motion", the image set for Call Image (→ P180) is displayed.

Operations possible while receiving calls

While the ring tone is sounding to indicate an incoming call, you can perform any of the following operations from submenus. With the setting of "Answer" in the "Arrival Call Act" (→ P294), the same operation can also work when there is another incoming call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
1 **Voice mail***1	The incoming call is transferred to the Service Center.
2 **Call rejection**	The call is disconnected (the caller does not pay for the call).
3 **Call forwarding***2	The incoming call is transferred to the forwarding phone number.

*1: Valid when you subscribe to Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.
*2: Valid when you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

The following operations can be performed when a call arrives.

- You can respond a call with Record message by holding down side key [▲] for over a second (Quick Record Message). → P79
- You can also adjust the ring volume and stop the vibrator. → P31, P73

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service, and have set the service to "Activate", you will hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking. In this case, you can perform any of the following operations:

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service	Forwards calls to Voice Mail Service Center. → P273
Call Waiting Service	Puts current call on hold and answers second call. → P278
Call Forwarding Service	Forwards calls to other phone number. → P281

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 70 of 372

When FOMA terminal is folded

Incoming calls are displayed by flashing incoming light, the sub-display or ring tone. You cannot answer calls just by opening FOMA terminal.

- "Calling" will be displayed when a voice call comes in; "Call video-phone" when a video-phone call; in each case of which, an animation will be displayed. You can change the incoming call image. →P184
- When the caller has sent their caller ID, the sub-display shows their phone number or name registered in the phonebook.
  - When secret attribute is set in the phonebook of FOMA terminal (Terminal), names are displayed only in the Secret mode.
  - The name of a party registered in the phonebook is not displayed when PIM lock or Privacy Mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook).
  - If "Hide caller's info" has been set in Sub-Display Info, nothing is displayed. → P184
- The reason for hide caller ID is displayed when the phone number is not sent. → P62

INFORMATION

- No ring alert sounds when Silent or Driving mode is active or ring tone setting is OFF. If Custom silent mode is set, the setting applies.
- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. → P154
- Any key answering lets you answer calls quickly.
  When Any key answering is "ON", you can use 0 to 9, # and * to take a call in addition to . However, only can be used for call interception.
  Any Key Answer → P164
- Press TASK 0 to check your own phone number (Own number) while talking. → P267
- Even if a video-phone call or 64K data communication is received during a voice call, you cannot receive a call or communication. When you subscribe the Call Waiting service, missed calls remain in the Received calls. Even if a voice call or video-phone call is received during a video-phone call, the same situation occurs.
  For the Call Waiting Service → P278
- FOMA terminal can handle both voice calls and packet communications (i-mode etc.) simultaneously. → P261
- When a forwarded call from the other FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed at the lower left part of Calling screen. The name is not displayed even if the phone number is saved in the phonebook.
- When a call arrives from a party whose video has been set in Image of the phonebook data, the video is played on the display and the ring alert set in the phonebook data sounds while the call is being received.
- If video/i-motion is set for Ring alert of phonebook data (→ P110) or for Phone/Video-phone of Select ring tone (→ P168), the video/i-motion set as the ring alert (video and sound) is played regardless of Select image setting (movie ringtone). However, if the video/i-motion set as the ring alert only contains sounds, the default image is shown on the display while a call is being received. Chaku-motion → P169
- If a voice call arrives during software update, any video/i-motion set as the ring alert is not played.
- An i-motion, a melody or an outgoing/incoming image set as a ring tone may change to "Chicken", "着信音1 (Tone 1)" or "Standard image" respectively if an incoming call is made while melodies or images being deleted or saved.
- Your phone may not smoothly display the count of seconds of call duration during a call.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the sender's number.
- Using the earphone/microphone set with switch → P257

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 71 of 372

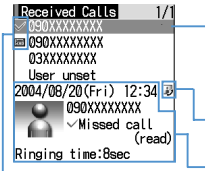
Using received call <Received calls>

The received call list records all the incoming calls both answered and missed calls in memory. Record messages are also included in the list.
If you have set the date and time in FOMA terminal, the dates and times of incoming calls are logged. If the caller sent their caller ID, the phone number is also logged.

- The list can contain up to 30 entries.
- When PIM lock is ON, the entries stored in the received call are deleted. For calls received after setting PIM lock, only the phone numbers are displayed. These numbers can be called from the list directly.
- Setting Keypad dial lock deletes Received calls. Calls received after setting Keypad dial lock are recorded, which can be used to make calls after canceling Keypad dial lock.
- This function is unavailable when "OFF" is set for Call logs settings. → P208

Displaying received call list

1 Press (call) on the stand-by display and select the desired entry in the received call list.



Phone number is displayed if Caller ID was sent. If not, the reason for hide caller ID is displayed.
When the other party's phone number coincides with a number in the phonebook, the party's name and image are displayed. Displaying names when Privacy Mode or Secret Mode is ON → P102
: Received video-phone call
: Received 64K data communication
Date and time, phone number, call history condition and ringing time of incoming calls
: Missed call (unread)
: Missed call (read)
: Record msg waiting
: Record msg deleted

- The missed call displays the time from incoming call to the other party stop ringing (ringing time), which enables you to confirm whether a malicious (one-ring) call is received for the sole purpose of storing the phone number in the received call list when a missed call from an unknown phone number exists.
- When "ON" is set for Ring alert delay setting, missed calls shorter than the set delay time are recorded as Hidden calls and not displayed. → P154
  Press (MENU) (9 wxyz) (2 abc) to display only the corresponding missed call. Press (MENU) (9 wxyz) (1 あ ./@) to display the normal received call list.
- When only missed calls shorter than the set delay time are recorded as Received calls, pressing (call) on the stand-by display shows a confirmation screen notifying you of received calls not displayed. Selecting "Yes" followed by pressing (●) displays Hidden calls.
- Holding down (mail) for over a second displays the Short Message (SMS) creation screen with the phone number in Received calls specified as the address. If the phone number in Received calls is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing (mail) displays the i-mode Mail creation screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the phone number in Received calls specified as the address. When the reason for hide caller ID (→ P62) in Received calls is selected, however, holding down (mail) for over a second displays the Short Message (SMS) creation screen with no address specified and pressing (mail) displays the i-mode Mail creation screen with no address specified.

2 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 72 of 372

Making calls directly from received call list

You can call entries in the received call list directly, by selecting the desired entry and pressing (通話).

- Press ( ) to make a call in the same way as the call type of the selected received call (voice call/video-phone call).
- Select the record from the received call list and press (▲) to make video-phone calls.
- To change show/hide caller ID setting when calling → P61
- To append a number set in Prefix to the start of the phone number to call → P66, P159
- To use the speakerphone function → P59, P86

Unanswered calls (missed calls)

When you cannot answer calls, 着信 2 is indicated in the stand-by display with a number indicating the number of missed calls. When you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded and the icon such as 着信 is indicated on the sub-display.

- You can select the icon in the stand-by display to check the date and time of an incoming call. → P42
- You can confirm the information such as the number of missed calls when FOMA terminal is folded. → P35

INFORMATION

- When the number of received calls exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers than the caller's dial-in number (with dial-in service, you can have multiple incoming phone numbers for one telephone line).
- To register a phone number from the received call list in the phonebook → P118
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), any missed call from a party saved in Phonebook appears as a phone number without name indication.

Deleting received calls

You can delete one at a time or all of received calls at once.

1 **Press (i) on the stand-by display.**

The received call list is displayed.

2 **Select an entry to delete and press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (1 あ ./@).**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the received call.

- Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (2 か ABC) to delete all the entries.

3 **Select "Yes" and press ( ).**

The entry is deleted.

4 **Press (電源).**

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 73 of 372

Adjusting volume of the caller's voice <Volume>

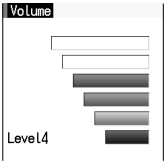
Default | Level4

Adjust the reception volume.

- You set the volume of the caller's voice from "Level1" (lowest volume) to "Level6" (highest volume).
- Volume is also synchronized with the volume of the keypad sound, the playback volume of record messages and voice memos or the volume of warning sounds.
- The volume level set while talking remains after your call is finished.
- Volume keeps in effect even if you turn OFF the power.
- The side key [▲] has two positions: half-pressed and fully-pressed to take photos with Auto focus function of the camera, so the feeling is different from the side key [▼] when pressed.

Adjusting volume while talking

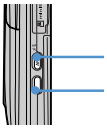
1 Press side keys [▲▼] or [📷] [i α] while talking.



2 Adjust the volume.

- Use the following keys to adjust the volume:

<Using side keys>



<Using multi-cursor key>



- The volume is set when you press [OK] or it is set automatically shortly after you stopped key operations.
- Only the side keys can be used to adjust the volume during a video-phone call. Then, the adjusted volume is temporarily indicated in the lower right of the screen.

Adjusting volume in stand-by

1 Press [MENU] [8 TUV] [1 あ ./@] [3 さ DEF] on the stand-by display.
Volume screen is displayed.

2 Adjust the volume.

3 Press [OK].
The volume is set.

4 Press [電源].
The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 74 of 372

Adjusting ring volume <Ring volume>

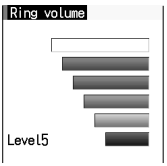
Default | Level4

Adjust the ring volume.

- The ring volume can be adjusted at seven levels, silent and levels 1 to 6. You can also set step tones in stand-by.
- Ring volume is also synchronized with schedule alarm sound.
- The ring volume level set while receiving a call remains after your call is finished.
- Ring volume keeps in effect even if you turn OFF the power.

Adjusting volume while receiving a call

1 Press [camera] [i-mode] to adjust the volume while receiving a call.



The volume is set when it is set automatically shortly after you stopped key operations.

- You cannot adjust the volume while receiving a call in the normal Silent mode or when the select ring tone is "OFF".

INFORMATION

- Pressing the side key [▲] when a call comes in stops the ring tone and vibrator operation (the handset becomes silent).
- Key operation of volume adjustment → P72
- When the step tone is set for ring tone, the change begins with Level 6 when adjustment is done while a call is arriving.

Adjusting volume in stand-by

1 Press [MENU] [8 や TUV] [1 あ .,/@] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.

The Ring volume screen is displayed.

2 Adjust the volume.

- Operation procedure → P72
- When the volume is "Level6", pressing [camera] or [3 ﾘﾀﾞｲﾔﾙ] sets "Step tone" (the volume changes into "Silent" → "Level1" → ... → "Level6" every 3 seconds). When the volume is "Level1", pressing [i-mode] or [9 ﾜｲﾔ] sets "Silent".

3 Press [●].

The volume is set.

4 Press [電源].

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When Ring volume is Silent, S is indicated (S:SILENT) on the stand-by display. If the vibrator is set at the same time, SV is indicated. If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, S or SV is indicated on the sub-display.
- Even when Ring tone is Silent, incoming calls can be indicated by setting vibrator operation, lighting/flashing incoming light or message of sub-display, in addition to message display on the screen. → P152, P184, P245
- When the ring tone is set to step tone, ring tone sounds as follows for every three seconds: Silent → Level 1 →···→ Level 6.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 75 of 372

Talking without using a hand in a car <In-car handsfree>

Connecting FOMA terminal with a handsfree device (car navigation system, etc.) through FOMA USB connection cable allows operations such as making and answering voice and video-phone calls from the device.
For operations of handsfree devices, see the operation manual for the respective devices.

* This function is an optional function that will be available when the compatible device is released.

INFORMATION

- Operations such as display and ring alert for incoming calls are according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- If the setting is made to activate ring alert of a handsfree device while the device is connected, the ring alert of a handsfree device sounds for incoming calls even if Silent mode is set or "OFF" is set for Ring volume on the FOMA terminal. The volume conforms to the Ring volume setting. Ring alert does not sound for incoming messages.
- Incoming operations to be performed while Driving mode is set are according to the FOMA terminal settings. → P76
- If a video-phone call is made with a handsfree device using a phonebook or Redial, the data rate depends on the data rate setting of the handsfree device. If no data rate setting is made, the video-phone call is made at fixed 64K.
- When a video-phone call is made/received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party. → P98
- If the setting is made to activate ring alert of FOMA terminal while a handsfree device is connected, the operation performed when FOMA terminal is folded is according to Close settings. If the setting is made to activate ring alert of a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is folded, regardless of Close settings.
- Volume cannot be adjust from handsfree devices.
- When Answer machine is set, the operations are according to Answer machine settings even if a handsfree device is connected. → P78
- The compatible device has not been released as of July, 2004.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 76 of 372

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer right away <Response hold>

Place incoming calls on hold if you are unable to answer immediately.

- The caller will be charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press 電源 while receiving a call.

FOMA terminal is put on hold. The other party hears the guidance indicating you cannot answer the phone now, please wait or call back later. When a video-phone call is received, the Response and hold image is sent to the other party. The call remains connected and on hold.



During an incoming voice call is on hold



During an incoming video-phone call is on hold

- If the caller presses 電源 or hangs up while on hold, the call is disconnected.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press 文字.

You can now answer the call.

- For video-phone calls, press . Press 文字 to sends a substitute image to the other party. → P98

INFORMATION

- Response hold guidance can be recorded with your voice. → P163
- The video-phone call the Response and hold image can be changed. → P99

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 77 of 372

Using Driving mode <Driving mode>

Driving mode is an automatic answering service considering safety driving. With Driving mode ON, callers hear a guidance informing that you are driving and cannot answer the call and the call is disconnected.

- If you receive calls, mails or Message R/F or schedule/alarm are started during Driving mode, neither the ring alert, schedule alarm nor alarm sounds. Also, neither vibrate alert nor incoming alert light operates.
- When FOMA terminal is turned OFF or outside the service area, the caller hears an out-of-range guidance, the Driving mode guidance is not played.
- During Driving mode, the battery charged sound does not sound when the charging starts/ends even if you have set Charge Alert Setting to "ON". → P171
- You do not need to apply to use Driving mode. No monthly fee is required.
- Driving mode can be set or canceled even when 圏外 is indicated.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Starting Driving mode

When an incoming call is received in Driving mode being set on stand-by, the following takes place:

- The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call is given a guidance and the call is disconnected. Your FOMA terminal does not perform an arrival call act. 2 (number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display and it is registered in the Received calls.
- "Driving mode" is displayed on the terminal of the other party who has made a video-phone call and the call is disconnected. Your FOMA terminal does not perform an arrival call act. 2 (number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display and it is registered in the Received calls.

1 Hold down (✱) for over a second on the stand-by display.



Driving mode is set.

- is indicated in the stand-by display in Driving mode ON. If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, is indicated on the sub-display.
- When Silent mode is also set, Driving mode takes precedence.

Canceling Driving mode

1 Hold down (✱) for over a second in Driving mode ON.

Driving mode is canceled.

- disappears from the stand-by display and disappears from the sub-display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 78 of 372

INFORMATION

- Calls can be made even when Driving mode is set.
- Calls that arrive when Driving mode is set relate to the network services as shown below.
  Network Service → P272

Service name	Operation
Voice mail service	• The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a driving mode announcement and then the call is connected to the voice mail service center. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows (number of missed calls), which is recorded in the incoming call history. If the calling time of the voice mail service is set to "0 sec", the other party's terminal does not receive a driving mode announcement but an announcement that is connected to the voice mail service center. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the incoming call history. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays "Driving mode" and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.
Call forwarding service	• The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a driving mode announcement and then the call is connected to the specified destination. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows (number of missed calls), which is recorded in the incoming call history. If the calling time of the call forwarding service is set to "0 sec", the other party's terminal does not receive a driving mode announcement but the call is forwarded to the specified destination. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the incoming call history. • For making a video-phone call → P281
Call waiting service	• On stand-by or during voice calls, the terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a driving mode announcement. If a voice call or video-phone is being made, "Failed to connect" is displayed on the terminal of the other party who has made a video-phone call. In either case, your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows (number of missed calls), which is recorded in the incoming call history.
Nuisance call barring service	• If the other party who has made a voice call is registered in "Call reject", his/her terminal receives a call reject announcement. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the incoming call history. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays "Failed to connect", and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.
Caller ID request service	• If the other party who has made a call does not notify his/her phone number, his/her terminal will hear an announcement telling him to request caller ID Display. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the incoming call history. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays "Driving mode" and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 79 of 372

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer call <Answer machine>

By setting Answer machine, a response guidance will be played and the caller can leave a recorded message when you cannot answer the call.
When the date and time have been set, the date and time of message recording are automatically recorded. When the phone number is notified, the phone number, etc. are also recorded.

- You can record up to 4 voice and video-phone calls in total, a maximum of approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- Answer machine function can respond a video-phone call , it records only voice messages as in answering a voice call and the image is not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the response guidance. → P80
- The greeting in your own voice can be stored. → P81
- It is advisable that the contents of record messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc.
  The recordings may be lost by failure or repair of FOMA terminal, switching of handset models or other transactions. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- When PIM is locked, the Answer machine function does not work.

Setting Answer machine

- Operate FOMA terminal with opened.

1 Hold down side key [▲] for over a second on the stand-by display.

Answer machine is set.

- is indicated in the stand-by display while setting Answer machine. If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, is indicated in the sub-display.

INFORMATION

- When 4 record messages are recorded, is indicated on the stand-by display (on sub-display if you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded).
- If there are already 4 record messages, Answer machine cannot be set. Delete unnecessary record messages and set again. → P83

Canceling Answer machine

- Operate FOMA terminal with opened.

1 While setting Answer machine , hold down side key [▲] for over a second on the stand-by display.

Answer machine is canceled.

- disappears from the stand-by display and disappears from the sub-display. However, when the 4 record messages are recorded, neither on the stand-by display nor on the sub-display disappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 80 of 372

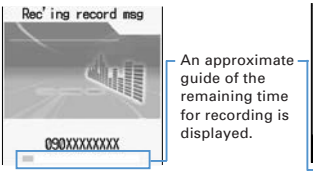
When a call arrives while setting Answer machine

1 A call arrives.

After the ring alert sounds according to the response time setting, "Greeting" screen is displayed and the Answer machine function automatically answers the call.

- When the greeting is set as a "Preinstalled", the caller hears the guidance indicating you cannot answer phone now, please record your message within the 30 second interval after the beep. You keep only voice messages even if the caller use video-phone. When "Personalized" is set for the response guidance, response hold guide recorded with your voice is played.
- You can answer a call while receiving a call or the response guidance. By pressing (通話) while the ring tone is sounding or response guidance is being played, the call is treated as an ordinary voice or video-phone call. (the substitutive image is sent to the other party). Press (ビデオ通話) to answer the video-phone call by sending portrait.

2 The message of the other party is recorded.



Recording voice call record message

Recording video-phone call record message

- A beep announces the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching.
- You can receive a call while recording messages. Pressing (通話) answers the call as a normal voice or video-phone call (substitute image sent to the other party) and pressing (ビデオ通話) answers the call as a video-phone call by sending portrait. In this case, the message given before the call is answered is not recorded.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.

- The icon (1) indicating the number of recorded messages not yet checked is indicated on the stand-by display, if any (in this case, one message not checked).
- You can confirm number of record messages with FOMA terminal is folded.
→ P35

Replying with quick record message

When Answer machine function has not been set to start, you can activate the function only once by holding down side key [▲] for over a second while receiving a call. This operation does not set the Answer machine function to start.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 81 of 372

INFORMATION

- When 圏外 is indicated the Answer machine function does not operate.
- Answer machine function cannot be started and the ring alert keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down the side key [▲] while the phone is ringing, a warning tone (bleep) sounds and the ring alert keeps sounding. To use Answer machine and Quick Record Message function, delete the unnecessary recorded messages. → P83
- Driving mode has priority over the Answer machine function does not operate in Driving mode.
- The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Calls replied by the Answer machine function are stored in the received call list.
- During a voice call, the other party's voice under the recording can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece when it is recorded.
- Incoming calls received while recording a message are rejected and recording continues. If you are contracting Call Waiting service, such incoming calls are recorded in the received call list.
- When video-phone is answered with Record message, the image for recording video-phone message is sent to the other party. The image for recording video-phone message can be changed. → P99
- While the response guidance is being played or a message is being recorded, the sound of the response guidance or the voice of the person recording the message may be heard from the speaker of the FOMA terminal regardless of the operations of the terminal.

Setting the response time when guidance starts <Greeting Response Time>

Default | 8 seconds

Set the period of time from the arrival of a call to the start of the record message response guidance is played.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press side key [▲] 1 あ ./@ 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.



2 Enter the response time and press ●.

The response time is set.

- Enter a greeting response time between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing ◁ ▷.

3 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 82 of 372

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer (when an earphone/microphone set with a switch is connected), Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and this function are all set, the function given the priority varies depending on the ringing times set for Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions. To give priority to the Answer machine function, the ringing time set for this function should be shorter than those set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions. Note that the Answer machine function may not be given the priority according to the signal conditions. You can also respond a call with a quick record message. → P79
- When 4 messages have already recorded in Record message, Answer machine function is not activated. If Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions are set to start, each service start their operation.
- The same time period cannot be set for both Delayed time for Auto Answer and Greeting Response Time. → P259

Setting message response guidance <Set Greeting>

Default	Set Greeting: Preinstalled Edit greeting: Play

Sets the response guidance for Record message. You can record your own voice as greeting.

- One guidance of approximately 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

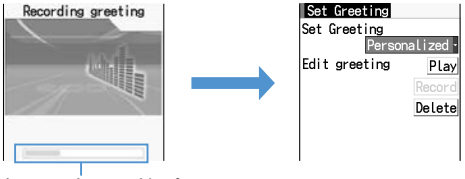
1 Press side key [▲] (1 あ ./@) (4 た GHI) on the stand-by display.



2 Select Set Greeting field, press ( ) and (1 あ ./@) or (2 か ABC).

- Press (1 あ ./@) and go to Step 4 to reset to the default response guidance.

3 Select "Record", press ( ) and speak a greeting after dial tone.



Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- End tone (beep) sounds 10 seconds after starting record.
- To cancel recording of guidance, press ( ).
- "Record" cannot be selected when a recording has already been made. Select "Delete" and press ( ), then select "Yes" and press ( ) to delete the recorded data.
- Select "Play" and press ( ) to check the response guidance.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 83 of 372

4 **Press** (メール).

The Greeting is saved.

5 **Press** (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

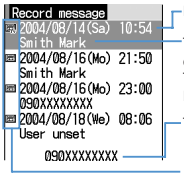
Playing/Deleting record messages

You can play and delete recorded messages from Record messages.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

Playing a recorded message

1 **Press side key [▲] (2 ABC) on the stand-by display.**



Date and time of a recorded message

The phone number is displayed if notified. If not notified, the reason for hide caller ID is displayed.
The name is displayed, if it is registered in the phonebook. Name display when Privacy Mode or Secret Mode is ON → P102

The phone number of a selected party

: Record message of a voice call (Unchecked)
: Record message of a video-phone call (Unchecked)
: Record message of a voice call (checked)
: Record message of a video-phone call (checked)

2 **Select the record message to be played and press (●).**



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

The record message is played back.

- Press (●) to stop playback of a record message.
- Press side keys [▲▼] or (音量) to adjust the volume.
- You can hear a record message from the speaker by pressing (ハンズフリー) during playback (a speakerphone function). By pressing (ハンズフリー) again, you can hear the recorded memo from the earpiece.

3 **Determine whether to delete the played record message.**

- Select "Yes" and press (●) to delete the record message.

4 **Press** (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- Selecting a party from Record messages followed by pressing (ハンズフリー) or (通話) makes a voice call or video-phone call respectively. Submenu can be used to make voice or vide-phone calls by specifying Show/Hide caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate.
- To register phone numbers recorded in a record message to the phonebook → P118
- Record messages, if any, can easily be played from the stand-by display. → P42

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 84 of 372

Deleting a recorded message

You can delete the record messages one by one or altogether.

1 **Press side key [▲] (2 か ABC) on the stand-by display.**

The record message list is displayed.

2 **Select a record message to delete and press (MENU) (2 か ABC) (1 あ ./@).**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the recorded message.

- Press (MENU) (2 か ABC) (2 か ABC) to delete all record messages.

3 **Select "Yes" and press ( ).**

The record message is deleted.

4 **Press (☎ 電源).**

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 85 of 372

Video-phone

The video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's video-phone. It is also possible to send still images, substitute images, Chara-den (→ P86, "Application" manual P23, P96), etc. instead of your own image.

DoCoMo video-phone specifications are conforming to 3G-324M*1, an international standard prepared by 3GPP*2. Note that you cannot establish the connection with the video-phones of different specifications.

*1: 3G-324M
An international standard for the next generation mobile video-phone.

*2: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following two connection speed is provided for video-phone:
  - 64K: Connects at connection speed of 64kbps.
  - 32K: Connects at connection speed of 32kbps.

Reading display during video-phone calls



①	**Main screen**	—
②	**Connection speed**	64K : 64K 32K : 32K
③	**Video-phone status**	Blank: normal communication : speakerphone function being used
④	**Child window**	—
⑤	**Zoom**	×1 : Standard to ×12 : 12x (out-camera) ×1 : Standard to ×2 : 2x (in-camera)
⑥	**Close-up mode**	Blank : Normal mode : Close-up mode
⑦	**Condition**	: Sending portrait : Sending substitute image : Using Chara-den : Sending frame : Sending still image : On-hold : Respond and Hold : Recording message : Recording voice memo
	Action mode	Action : Action Parts : Actions of parts
⑧	**Camera effects**	STD : Normal : Backlight : Sepia : Monotone : Sea/Snow : Sunset
⑨	**One-touch light**	Blank : Turn light OFF : Turn light ON
⑩	**moving image quality**	Blank : Normal HQ : Prefer image quality : Prefer motion
⑪	**Channel establishment**	A : Sound channel established V : Video channel established AV : Sound/video channel established
	Volume/ speakerphone volume	Normal : Blank Adjusting reception/speaker volume : 1 to 6
⑫	**Call time**	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 86 of 372

Making video-phone calls

The procedure for making video-phone calls is explained below.

- You cannot make video-phone calls when 圏外 is indicated.
- You may not be able to make a call while executing another function. → P341, P343
- You cannot make video-phone calls in All lock ON. → P200
- You cannot make video-phone calls by pressing the dial keys in Keypad dial lock ON. → P203
- If you make a video-phone call viewing the face of other party, use a speaker-phone function or connect an earphone/microphone set with a switch. → P86, P257
- International video-phone calls are available using DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". → P65

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display.

- Entering phone number is the same as for voice calls. → P58
- You can specify the data rate (64K or 32K) in making a video-phone call by entering the phone number and pressing MENU 5 な JKL/MENU 6 は MNO.

2 Press ▲📷.



Your image is displayed while video-phone call is made.

- If the phone on the other party is busy, you will hear the busy signal. The message of "Busy" or "Failed to connect" is displayed on the screen. Press 電源 to end the call and make a call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial. → P64
- The charging begins when "Connecting using video-phone" is displayed on the screen.

3 You can talk to the other party.



Image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Pressing ● put the call on hold (→ P63) and sends the video-phone on-hold image to the other party.
- If the image cannot be sent due to the setting of the other party, the image of the other party is not displayed but the substitute image, etc. is displayed.
- You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing スピー.
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between "Me" and "substitutive image" every time ▲📷 is pressed. → P90

4 When you have finished your call, press 電源.

- You can also disconnect calls by folding FOMA terminal (default setting). To maintain connection even if the terminal is folded, change "Close Settings". → P164
  While you are connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch, folding FOMA terminal does not end your call. For this case, the substitutive image is sent to the other party. → P98

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 87 of 372

Using speakerphone function

By entering a phone number on the stand-by display and holding down (▲) for over a second, you can make a video-phone call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker (speakerphone function). While making/talking calls, you can switch between ordinary call and call using the speakerphone function by pressing (☎).

Video-phone status	Screen display	Voice output
With normal talking	–	Earpiece
With speakerphone function operating	🔊	Speaker

- When using the speakerphone function, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- Your call may be hard to hear if there is a large amount of noise around you or other party. Make the call normally.
- Talk to the FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm.

You can perform following operations from submenus during video-phone calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu while talking video-phone calls:

Submenu item	Description
1 **Switch cameras**	Switches between in-camera/out-camera. → P91
2 **Photo-light ON/OFF**	Turns the one-touch light on and off. → P92
3 **Camera settings**	Apply effects on images displayed, set brightness and color density of video-phone camera images and switch to close-up mode. → P92, 93
4 **Receive quality**	Set the quality of received images. This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal. → P94
5 **V-phone settings**	Changing settings for the screen to be displayed during video-phone calls. → P94
6 **Chara-den settings**	Change Chara-den data, switch between overall and partial actions and select actions. → "Application" manual P23, 96
7 **File sending**	Change frame and image to send to the other party. → P95, 96
8 **Input DTMF**	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during video-phone calls. → P96

The following operations are also available during video-phone calls.

- You can record the other party's voice with Talking Voice Memo by holding down the side key [▲] for over a second. → P247
- You can adjust volume by operating side keys [▲▼].

Chara-den

Chara-den is a function to send an image of a character instead of your image to the other party during a video-phone call. You can make the character to move its mouth in response to sounds and to make motions by dial keys.

→ "Application" manual P23, P96

- Keypad sound does not ring when dial keys are pressed to operate characters.



©BVIG

Chara-den

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 88 of 372

INFORMATION

- You can make a video-phone call by performing Steps 1 and Step 2 in the reverse order. In this case, video-phone call will be made automatically about five seconds after you have pressed (TV) and entered the phone number.
- The charges are based on the rate for digital communication rather than voice calls even if substitute image or Chara-den is used.
- If a video-phone call attempt fails, the following message (text information) will be displayed on the screen. The display returns to the stand-by display automatically. Note that displayed messages may not reflect the status on the other party correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or conditions of the network service contract on the other party.

Message	Description
Check the number and retry.	You dialed the phone number not used.
Busy.	The other party is busy or in packet communication.
Disconnected due to outside of service/power off.	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's phone terminal is turned OFF.
Driving mode.	The phone on the other party is in Driving mode.
Failed to connect.	This message is displayed for cases other than the above.

- Video-phone via 32K line is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which video-phone calls via 64K line may not be available depending on the network condition. When a video-phone call is made via 64K line, the call type is automatically switched to via 32K for redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K. When "ON" is set for Voice call auto switch (→P97), redialing via 32K line is also given priority.
  * If video-phone call is made via 32K line, the charge is the same as the digital communication charge via 64K.
- If a video-phone call is made and is not established, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Voice call auto switch setting	Redialing operation
64K	ON	64K → 32K → voice
	OFF	64K → 32K → disconnect
32K	ON	32K → voice
	OFF	32K → disconnect

- Registering the data rates (64K or 32K) in the phonebook can automatically select the applicable data rate for a specific phone number. → P139 If you specify the data rate from the submenu after entering phone number to make a call, the specification in the submenu is effective. If nothing has been specified for the date rate, 64K connection is attempted.
- When "ON" is set for Voice call auto switch (→P97), the call type is automatically switched to voice for redialing if the other party is a user of terminal not supporting the Video-phone function or using the mova service through the Dual Network Service, which increases the assurance of access to that party.
  * If you redial as a voice call, the charge is placed as a voice call.
- Any video-phone call from FOMA terminal to 110, 119 or 118 with Voice call auto switch (→P97) set to "ON" automatically is made as a voice call.
- New voice or video-phone calls cannot be made during video-phone calls. i-mode connection, i-mode Mail, Message R/F or Short Message (SMS) exchange is not available.
- A video-phone call is not available with phones not supporting the Video-phone function, phones without power or located outside the service area. If you set the Voice call auto switch function to ON and attempt to make a video-phone call with an unsupported device, the other party will abort the communications before connected. For this case, voice call redialing will automatically begin. The redialing function cannot work as written above if you attempt video-phone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64K or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN video-phones incompatible with 3G-324M (→P84) (as of July, 2004), or dialing the wrong phone number. Note that these calls may charge you in some cases.
- You can switch Show Caller ID/Hide Caller ID when making video-phone call. → P61
- If a pause or timed pause is entered (→P60), connection will be attempted with the dialing before them, all phone numbers dialed after the pause or timed pause are ignored.
- While you are dialing or redialing video-phone call, incoming calls will abort the dialing and ring tone may sound.
- Even if a voice call or 64K data communication is received during a video-phone call, an incoming call or communication cannot be received. If you subscribe the Call Waiting service, missed calls remain in the Received calls. Even if a video-phone call is received during a voice call or a video-phone call, the same situation occurs.
  Call Waiting service → P278
- If sending/receiving voice or image has failed (A or V indicated), the connection is not automatically restored. Make the video-phone call again.
- When the battery runs out during a call, the low battery alarm sounds, and the call is automatically disconnected. → P53
- If the radio wave conditions are poor during a video-phone call, the image may be displayed as mosaic.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 89 of 372

Receiving video-phone calls

The procedure for receiving video-phone calls is explained.

- Video-phone calls cannot be answered with Any Key Answer (→P164).

1 The FOMA terminal receives a call.



Ring alert sounds, display backlight lights up and incoming light lit/flashes. The reception is indicated by the message on sub-display.

- The other party's phone number, name or still image/video may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller and FOMA terminal settings. Display information → P67
- Press 電源 to hold your answer. The video-phone Response hold image is sent to the other party. → P99

2 Press ▲.



Your image is displayed until the other party whom you are video-phone calling answers the phone.

■ Answering video-phone call with substitute image

Press スケ.

The substitute image instead of your image is sent to the other party when the video-phone call is connected.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the activation of Chara-den may fail. If this happens, the standard image in "Substitute Image" is sent to the other party. → P98

3 You can talk to the other party.



Images of the other party are displayed on the screen.

- Press ○ to place the call on hold (→ P63) and send the video-phone on-hold image to the other party.
- If the image cannot be sent due to the setting of the other party, the image of the other party is not displayed but the substitute image, etc. is displayed.
- You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing スケ.
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between "Me" and "substitutive image" every time ▲ is pressed. → P90

4 When you have finished your call, press 電源.

- You can also disconnect calls by folding FOMA terminal (default setting). To maintain connection even if the terminal is folded, change "Close Settings". → P164
  While you are connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch, folding FOMA terminal does not end your call. For this case, the substitutive image is sent to the other party. → P98

INFORMATION

- You cannot use the Call Waiting service during a video-phone call. → P278

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 90 of 372

Operation possible while receiving calls

You can follow operations from the submenu when video-phone calls come in or while the ring tone is sounding.

Submenu item	Description
1 **Call forwarding***	Makes incoming calls transferred to the forwarding phone number.
2 **Call rejection**	Makes calls to be rejected. (Caller does not pay for calling.)

* : Valid when you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

The following operations can be performed when a call arrives.

- You can respond a call with the Record message by holding down side key [▲] for over a second(Quick Record Message). → P79
- You can also adjust the ring volume and stop the vibrator. → P31, P73

INFORMATION

- No ring alert sounds when Silent or Driving mode is active. If Custom silent mode is set, the setting is applicable.
- During voice call, video-phone call, i-mode, i-mode Mail sending/receiving, or 64K data communication, you cannot receive a video-phone call. If a video-phone call is received during a voice call, video-phone call, i-mode, i-mode mail send/receive or the 64K data communication when you are subscribed to the Call Waiting service, missed calls remain in the received call list.
  Call Waiting service → P278
- When a video-phone call arrives while an earphone/microphone set with switch is connected, holding down the headset switch for over a second allows you to answer the call with a substitute image. → P98
- While an earphone/microphone set with switch is connected, the terminal operates according to the Auto Answer setting (→ P259) so that you can response by sending a substitute image to the caller automatically. → P98
- Voice Mail Service does not cover video-phone calls.
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard (→ P84) even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings.
- If an incoming video-phone shows a phone number registered in Nuisance Call Barring service, the call is rejected without the call rejection guidance. → P285
- Caller ID Request Service does not support the video-phone. → P289
- If sending/receiving voice or image has failed (A or V indicated), the connection is not automatically restored. Make the video-phone call again.
- Any video-phone call that arrives during software update (→ P350) is rejected and recorded as a received call.
- You can use external device for incoming video-phone calls. → P100
- When you end a video-phone call, an image during phone disconnection may not appear depending on your phone.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 91 of 372

Customizing display and other settings during video-phone call

You customize the display setting during a video-phone call.

- You can set the following items:

Item	Page	Item	Page
Using zoom	See below	Switching the camera to close-up mode	P93
Switching outgoing images	See below	Setting quality of outgoing image	P93
Switching between main screen and child window*	P91	Setting quality of received images	P94
Changing main screen size*	P91	Setting screen display during video-phone calls*	P94
Switching cameras	P91		
Turning One-touch light on	P92	Laying frame over images to send	P95
Applying special effects	P92	Sending still images	P96
Setting brightness and color density*	P92	Transmitting tone signals	P96

*: The settings are retained even after a call.

Using zoom

Switch between display magnifications for your image to send to the other party.

- Change can be made only while your image or Frame is being sent (→P95).

1 Press [camera] [i-α] during a video-phone call.



The your image carries out zoom.

The zoom scale is changed.

- Each time you press [camera], the zoom scale switches to the next one. Press [i-α] to reverse the order.

Out-camera : Normal (×1) → 2 times (×2) → 4 times (×4) → 6 times (×6) → 8 times (×8) → 10 times (×10) → 12 times (×12)

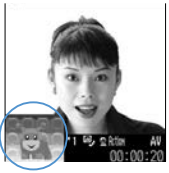
In-camera : Normal (×1) → 2 times (×2)

Switching outgoing images

Default | Me

Switch the image to send to the other party between "Me" and "Substitute image".

1 Press [▲] during a video-phone call.



The substitute image

©BVIG

- Each time you press [▲], the image switches between "Me ( )" and "the Substitute image (or)". → P98
- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the activation of Chara-den may fail. If this happens, the standard image set for "Substitute Image" is sent to the other party. → P98
- Actions can be switched or selected during communication with Chara-den used as a substitute image. → P86, "Application" manual P23, P96

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 92 of 372

Switching between main screen and child window

The screen is switched between the main screen and child window.

1 Press (📖) during a video-phone call.



- Each time you press (📖) during a video-phone call, the screen switches to the next one.

Main : Other / Child : Me → Main : Me / Child : Other → Main : Other / Child : Me

Changing main screen size

Select the main screen view size from "Large", "Medium" and "Small".

1 Hold down (📖) for over a second during a video-phone call.



The main screen display size changes.

- The size is switched in the order shown below every time (📖) is held down for over a second.

Large → Medium → Small → Large

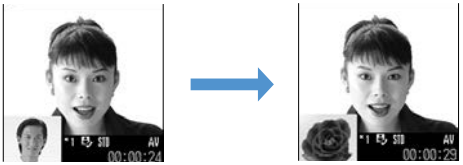
Switching cameras

The camera used during a video-phone call is switched.

- The change can be made only while your image or frame is being sent (→ P95).

1 Press (✉) during a video-phone call.

The image is displayed through the switched camera.



- Each time you press (✉), the camera switches between the in-camera and the out-camera.

INFORMATION

- If you switch cameras, Zoom and Camera effects settings are kept. When you switch to in-camera in using out-camera with quadruple zoom, however, the setting will be changed into double zoom automatically.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 93 of 372

Turning One-touch light on

Switches the one-touch light ON or OFF.

- You can turn on or off the one-touch light only when the out-camera is being used.

1 Hold down (✉▾) for over a second during a video-phone call.

The one-touch light is lit. If the light has been lighted, it goes out.

- Each time you hold down (✉▾) for over a second, the one-touch light switches between ON (☼) and OFF (No icon).

INFORMATION

- One-touch light may go out temporarily depending on the setting operation while talking.

Changing camera settings during video-phone call <Camera setting>

During a video-phone call, you can apply special effects on your image or change the brightness and density of the colors.

Applying special effects <Camera effects>

Default	Normal

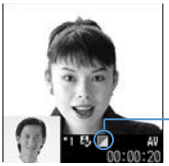
- Change can be made only while your image or Frame is being sent (→ P95).

1 Press MENU 3 さ DEF 1 あ ./@ during a video-phone call.

You can apply the following effects:

Item	Icon	Description
1 Normal	STD	Sends standard image (by default).
2 Backlight		Used when shooting subjects against the light.
3 Sepia		Used for Sepia tone.
4 Monotone		Used for Monotone.
5 Sea/Snow		Used to shoot reflection of light, such as sea or snowed surface more beautiful.
6 Sunset		Used when shooting subjects against sunset glow.

2 Press 1 あ ./@ to 6 は MNO.



- Press 1 あ ./@ to cancel the effect.

The icon for the effect currently applied is indicated

Setting brightness and color density <Brightness/Density>

Default	Brightness: Level 3 Color density: Level 3

Adjusts the brightness and color density of images.

- You can adjust the brightness and color density at 5 levels.
- Change can be made only while your image or Frame is being sent (→ P95).

1 Press MENU 3 さ DEF 2 か ABC during a video-phone call.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 94 of 372

2 **Press [camera] [i-mode] to select Brightness slider and press [◁][▷].**

The Me is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the brightness. You can check the changing brightness as you sift the slider back and forth.

3 **Press [camera] [i-mode] to select Density slider and press [◁][▷].**

The Me is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the density. You can check the changing density as you sift the slider back and forth.

4 **Press [address].**

The setting is changed.

- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting the brightness/color density, the change made to the setting does not determined and Talking screen reappears.

Switching the camera to close-up mode <Close-up mode>

Default	Normal mode

Switching over to the Close-up mode will allow you to adjust the focus when sending images of objects 8 to 15 cm away.

- You can switch the camera to close-up mode only when the out-camera is being used.

1 **Press [MENU] [3 さ DEF] [3 さ DEF] during a video-phone call.**

Camera switches to close-up mode.

- Press [MENU] [3 さ DEF] [3 さ DEF] to return to the normal mode.

INFORMATION

- If you switch the camera to the in-camera in the Close-up mode, the camera returns to the normal mode.

Changing the quality of images to be sent and received images

You can change the quality of the image to be sent or the received image during a video-phone call.

Setting quality of outgoing image

Default	Normal

Sets the quality of outgoing image. Setting "Prefer motion" makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image and setting "Prefer image quality" makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

1 **Press [◁][▷] during a video-phone call.**



The quality of outgoing image is changed.

- Each time you press [◁], the quality of outgoing image switches to the next one. Pressing [▷] becomes the reverse order.

Normal (no icon) → Prefer motion (🏃) → Prefer image quality (HQ)

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 95 of 372

Setting quality of received images <Receive quality>

Default	Standard

Requests quality change of images sent from the other party to the other party's terminal. Setting "Prefer motion" makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image and setting "Prefer quality" makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

- This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.

1 Press MENU 4 during a video-phone call.



2 Press 1 to 3.

Receive quality is set.

Setting screen display during video-phone calls <Video-Phone Settings>

Default	Display image: Both Child window: Me Main screen size: Large Display Light: Always on (normal)

You can change the screen during a video-phone call.

1 Press MENU 5 during a video-phone call.



Item	Description
Display image	Specifies whether to display either or both of your image and the other party's images during a call. • If the setting is other than "Both", "Child window" cannot be set.
Child window	Sets one of the images (Me or Other) to be displayed in the child window while a video-phone call.
Main screen size	Sets the main screen view size.
Display light	Select lighting of the display during video-phone calls. • If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on Display light (→ P183).

2 Select items to set, press ○ and set the value.

3 Press 📖.

The setting is changed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 96 of 372

Selecting frames and images to send <File sending>

You can add a frame to your image or send a still image instead of your image during a video-phone call.

Laying frame over images to send <Select frame>

Lay the image for Frame saved in FOMA terminal over your image to send to the other party.

- This setting is available only while your image is being sent.
- Only the frames of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller can be selected. However, among the downloaded frames, you can only select the frames with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 7 ま PQRS 1 あ ./@ during a video-phone call.



2 Select Frame and press ●.

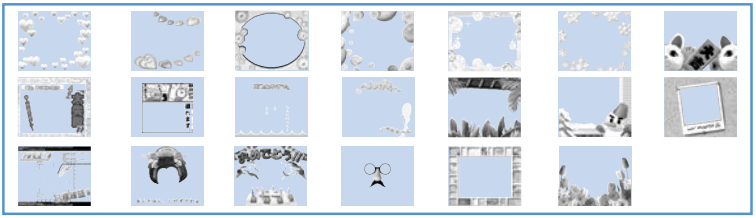


Your image is sent to the other party in the same manner.

- While in-camera is used, a mirror image is displayed and a normal image is sent to the other party. While out-camera is used, the image same as on the display is sent to the other party.
- Pressing ● while an image is sent with a frame cancels the sending with the frame.

The following images are set by default:

- A still image is put in each area.



- You can download the above default frame from "@F ケータイ応援団" site if you delete them.
→ "Application" manual P70

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 97 of 372

Sending still images <Select images>

Select an image to send to the other party from still images saved. You can show the shooting images by FOMA terminal to other party during a video-phone call.

- This setting is unavailable while Fame is being sent (→P95).
- Only still images that are 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from the FOMA terminal can be set. Output still images from FOMA terminal → File restriction "Application" manual P250
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 7 まPQRS 2 かABC during a video-phone call.

Displays "Images" folders list.

2 Select a folder, press ●, select an image from the list and press ●.



The still image is sent to the other party in the same manner.

- How to view the still images list → "Application" manual P243
- You can display a still image by selecting a still image and pressing 📖. Pressing ◁ ▷ allows you to display the previous or next still image. To set it, press ●.
- The setting is released and a default image is displayed if you press ● while sending still images.

Transmitting tone signals <DTMF input>

The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted during a video-phone call.

- The signals may not be received depending device of receiver side.
- If the frames are piled up or the still images are being sent, entering the DTMF input screen will release these states.
- You can enter DTMF by pressing dial keys only when 📷 (sending portrait) or 🖼 (sending substitute image) is displayed during a video-phone call.

1 Press MENU 8 やTUV during a video-phone call and press the dial keys.



The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

- To cancel tone signals (DTMF) sending, press クリア.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 98 of 372

Setting up Video-phone settings <Video-phone settings>

Default	Voice call auto switch: OFF Display image: Both Child window: Me Main screen size: Large Send out portrait: ON Moving image quality: Normal Display light: Always on(normal)

Set the operation to be performed when video-phone calls have failed to get through and the image to be displayed during video-phone calls.

- "Voice call auto switch" is provided in Video-phone settings to ensure the access to the other party. Voice call auto switch is the function to switch the call type to voice for redialing automatically when the other party is a user of terminal not supporting the Video-phone function or cannot receive video-phone call while using the mova service through the Dual Network Service (→P291).

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 8 TUV 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Voice call auto switch	Enables this function if you want to automatically redial a voice call for unsuccessful video-phone attempt.
Display image	Sets one of the images (Me or Other) or both of images to be displayed while a video-phone call. • If you set other than "Both", "Child window" cannot be set.
Child window	Sets one of the images (Me or Other) to be displayed in the child window while a video-phone call.
Main screen size	Sets the main screen view size.
Send out portrait	Specifies whether to send your image to the other party.
Moving image quality	Sets the image quality on the other party's screen.
Display light	Select lighting of the display during video-phone calls. • If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on Display light (→P183).

2 Select a desired item, press ○ and set the value.

3 Press 📖.

The settings are registered.

INFORMATION

- Even if the Voice call auto switch function is set to "ON", redialing may not be attempted depending on the other party and/or network conditions.
- If you redial voice calls with the Voice call auto switch function is set to "ON", the voice call rate will be applied instead of digital communication rate.
- When video-phone communication has been started, redialing as a voice call is not made.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 99 of 372

Changing image displayed of video-phone <Image Settings:V-Phone>

Change the substitute image displayed during video-phone calls, video-phone call Recording msg image, video-phone call Response hold image and video-phone call On-hold image. Changed images are displayed while talking video-phone calls (→P90), while recording messages (→P78), during response hold (→P75) or during On-hold (→P63). Also they are sent to the other party.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.
- You cannot set the following still images:
  - Still images with a size of more than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
  - Animation, create animation and continuous shots
  - Still images in formats other than JPEG and GIF format
  - Still images that must not be output from FOMA terminal Output still images from FOMA terminal
    → File restriction "Application" manual P250

Changing substitute image

Default | Std. Chara-den

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 8 TUV 2 ABC on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@, select image field and press ●.



©BVIG

■ Setting Standard Chara-den

Press 1 ./@.

"Std. Chara-den (Boon Boon (Dimo))" is set.

■ Setting Standard Still image

Press 2 ABC.

"Standard image (Camera off)" is set.

■ Setting other Chara-den

① Press 3 DEF.

② Select "Select image" in the List images field and press ●.

"Chara-den" folder list is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 100 of 372

③ **Select folder, press ●, select Chara-den from the list and press ●.**
Chara-den is set and "Substitute Image" screen reappears.
- Chara-den list → "Application" manual P97
- You can display Chara-den by selecting Chara-den and pressing 📖.

■ Setting other still image

① **Press 4 GHI.**

② **Select "Select image" and press ●.**
"Image" folder list is displayed.

③ **Select folder, press ●, select still image from the list and press ●.**
Still image is set and Substitute Image screen reappears.
- Still image list → "Application" manual P243
- You can display still image by selecting image and pressing 📖. You can display the previous or next image by pressing 画 i-α. Press ● to set image.

3 Press 📖.

The substitute image is changed.

INFORMATION

- Chara-den → P86, "Application" manual P23, P96
- If Chara-den or a still image set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to "Standard image".
- If you set the PIM lock after you change the substitute image, the standard image is displayed except the case an image in "Preinstalled" folder of the "Image" as the substitute and sent to the other party.

Changing image of Recording msg/Respond and hold/On-hold

Default	Answer machine image: Standard image　Response hold image: Standard image On-hold image: Standard image

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 8 TUV 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The video-phone image selection screen is displayed.

2 Press 2 ABC to 4 GHI.



Display when "Answer machine image" is selected

3 Select Image field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 ABC.

- Press 1 あ ./@ and go to Step 4 to return to the default image.
- Press 2 ABC to select the image. The operation procedure is in same as the substitute image setting. → P98

4 Press 📖.

The image is changed.

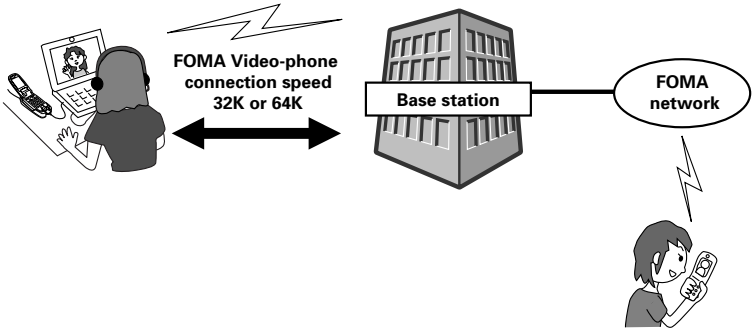
INFORMATION

- If you set the PIM lock after you change the image for Answer Machine, Response Hold, or On-hold, the standard image is displayed except the case an image in "Preinstalled" folder of the "Image" as the substitute and sent to the other party.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 101 of 372

Using video-phone by connecting with external device <Device Settings>

FOMA terminal can be connected to the FOMA USB cable with which video-phone calls can be received.
If you want to use this function, prepare a dedicated external device or a PC, that video-phone application is installed in, and devices such as an earphone/microphone and camera.
*** This function is an optional function that will be available when a supporting application is released.**



Setting device to use for receiving video-phone calls

Default | Terminal

Specifies whether to use FOMA terminal or external device for video-phone.

- This function is unavailable when FOMA terminal is not connected with the external device.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 8 TUV 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

The video-phone device setting is made.

INFORMATION

- Video-phone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during a voice call from an external device. If you are contracting Call Waiting Service, such unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in Received calls. Even if a voice call, a video-phone call or the 64K data communication is received during the video-phone call from the external device, the same situation occurs.
  Call Waiting service → P278
- Video-phone calls through an external device is an optional function available when a supported applications or devices are released. See the instructions manual of external devices for hardware reqirements or setting/operating instructions of video-phone applications.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 102 of 372

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA F900iC supports FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Differences between FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook and UIM phonebook

Item		FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook	UIM phonebook	Page
The number of entries		Up to 700 *1	Up to 50	—
Entry items				
	Name/reading	First and last names set separately	First and last names set together	P105, 115
	Still image, video	○	×	P107
	Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and No group.	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and No group.	P108, 117
	Phone number/Icon	Up to five phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total of Phonebook, can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.	P108, 117
	Mail address/Icon	Up to five mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total of Phonebook, can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.	P109, 117
	Setting for incoming phone calls *2*3	○	×	P110
	Setting for receiving mails *2*3	○	×	P112
	Other settings *4	○	×	P113
	Phonebook No.	○	×	P114
Phonebook searches				
	Rocket search	○	○	P121, 127
	Group search	○	○	P121, 127
	Name search	○	○	P122, 128
	Ph book No. search	○	×	P124
	Phone No. search	○	○	P124, 128
	Secrecy search	○	×	P143
	Search by frequency	○	×	P122
Settings				
	Caller ID Settings	○	×	P138
	Set Secret Code	○	×	P140
	Secrecy	○	×	P142
	Reject/Accept call	○	×	P155
	Video-Phone Settings	○	×	P139
Other				
	Communication information	○	×	P122
	Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/Switching phonebook Nos.	○	×	P136, 137
	Quick dial	○	×	P144
	Quick mail	○	×	P145
	Site display	○	×	P134
	Send data	○	○	P146, "Application" manual P301

○ : Supported × : Not supported

*1 : The number of items that can be registered in a phonebook may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 : The ring tone, vibrator pattern for incoming calls and incoming light pattern and color settings.

*3 : Group setting is also possible only in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

*4 : URL, note, postal code, street address, company name, job title settings

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 103 of 372

Displaying name

The name is displayed as below when calls or mail are made or sent to/from entries in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

When calling/sending mail to registered phonebook entry

The following information is displayed in the redial list, Outbox or Unsent box:

- When a mail or call is made or sent by searching either of 2 phonebooks, the name registered in the retrieved entry is displayed.
- When the same phone number/mail address is registered in both phonebooks, if a call or mail is made/sent by entering the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook, the name registered in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook is displayed.
- When data entered for an address to an i-mode terminal including "@docomo.ne.jp" exactly matches a mail address in the phonebook, the name is displayed otherwise only the entered address is displayed. → "Application" manual P144, P179

When a call/mail is received from registered phonebook entry

The following information is displayed in the received call list, record message/voice memo list, or Inbox:

- If the caller is registered in one but not both of 2 phonebooks, the registered name is displayed.
- If the same phone number/mail address is registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook is displayed.
- To save mail addresses in the phonebook, it is recommended to save the whole addresses of i-mode terminals including the @ and the following domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp"). Although "@docomo.ne.jp" can be omitted, if receiving mail from such a party, only entire accordance including with or without after @, will allow to be used for setting mail reception of the phonebook.
  → "Application" manual P147, P152, P184

INFORMATION

- When secret attribute is set in the phonebook of FOMA terminal (Terminal), names are only displayed in Secret mode. The same applies when the other party's data with secret attribute set are displayed in Redial, Received calls, Record message and Voice memo while talking.
- Calls or mail received from a party for whom a secrecy ON in Secret mode use Ring tone, incoming vibrate alert and Incoming Alert Light set in the phonebook. When not in the Secret mode, calls and mail are announced by the settings made in Ring volume, Vibrator and Incoming Alert Light settings.
- If PIM lock or Privacy mode ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook) is ON, the other party's name is not displayed even when calls are made to or received from parties registered in the phonebook. The same applies when the other party's data are displayed in Redial, Received calls, Record message and Voice memo during call or customized menu.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 104 of 372

Registering entries into FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook

You can register often-used phone numbers or mail addresses with their names.

- The Phonebook can accommodate a maximum of 700 names. For each name, up to five phone numbers and five mail addresses can be registered. The total overall capacity, however, is 2,105 phone numbers and 2,105 mail addresses.
- The following settings are also available.
  - For each phone number, you can set an icon indicating a mobile phone, PHS or other attribute. These icons provide handy identifying information at a glance. You can also set icons for mail addresses. →P108, P109
  - The image, video, etc. for outgoing/incoming calls can be set. → P107
  - You can classify phonebook entries into different groups. → P108
    You can change the name of each group. → P130
  - The ring tone, vibrator pattern, lighting pattern and color can be set for incoming calls. → P110
    The settings for incoming mail can be also set. → P112
  - Street addresses and company names can be set. → P113
  - When you register phone numbers or mail addresses in phonebook No.0 to 99, you can quickly call those numbers (Quick dial → P144) or create mail to send to them (Quick mail → P145).
  - You can copy data registered in the phonebook of FOMA terminal (Terminal) to a UIM. → P146
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.
- When Privacy mode is set ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), entry of the terminal security code or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.

INFORMATION

- You can register phonebook entries even when "圖ｶﾅ" is indicated in the display.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the Phonebook. If you have a PC, you can use data link software (→ "Application" manual P358) and the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) to store the data to the PC.
  Phonebook information may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the phone or other reasons. Phonebook information remains in memory for about 1 month after the battery pack is removed or runs out, but will be lost after this amount of time. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Phonebook entries registered in Secret mode are set as Secrecy ON.
  For details on Secrecy → P142
- The phonebook data set as secret attribute are not changed unless Secret mode is set.
- The information that can be copied to a new handset at the time of switching to a new model, etc. at our sales offices. Please be informed that the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of data registered in FOMA terminal.
- You can back up the phonebook data that is saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) to a miniSD memory card. → "Application" manual P312

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 105 of 372

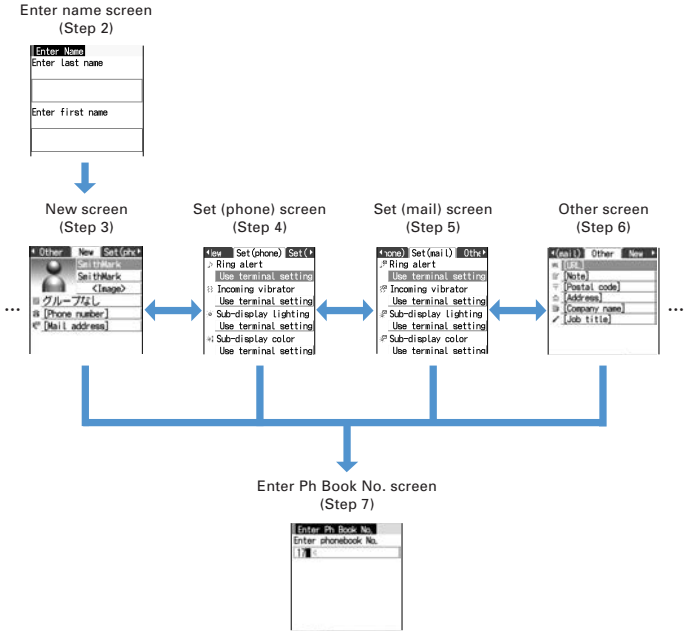
Flow of registering phonebook entries into FOMA terminal (Terminal)

The steps required to register an entry in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook are as follows:

Step 1	Start registration	P105
Step 2	Enter name [Enter name screen]	P105
Step 3	Setting phone number, mail address, etc. [New screen]	P106
Step 4	Making settings for incoming calls [Set (phone) screen]	P110
Step 5	Making settings for receiving mails [Set (mail) screen]	P112
Step 6	Setting various types of information [Others screen]	P113
Step 7	Complete registration [Enter Ph Book No. screen]	P114

: Mandatory step : Optional step

The following screens are used to register phonebook entries:



- Set the items in any order as needed.
- Press ◁ ▷ to switch the screens.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 106 of 372

Step 1 Start registration

1 Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

The Enter Name screen is displayed.

Step 2 Enter name [Enter name screen]

Enter the first and last names separately.

- Either a first or last name must be entered.
- Kanji, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication. → P309
- You can enter up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters in total for first and last name.

<Example> Entering "Smith Mark"

1 Enter the last name "Smith".

① Select the Enter last name field and enter the last name.



"S" →Press 7 PQRS 4 times and ▲.
"m"→Press 6 MNO and ▲.
"i" →Press 4 GHI 3 times.
"t" →Press 8 TUV.
"h" →Press 4 GHI twice.

- If you press the wrong key, press クリア to erase the mistake.
- To append " ゛ " or " ゜ " to kana characters, first enter the character and press *.
  <Example> After entering " ほ ", the character toggles as " ほ " → " ぽ " → " ほ " each time you press *.

② Press ○.

"Smith" has now been entered.

2 Select the Enter first name field, enter the name "Mark" and press ○.

The name is entered.

3 Press 📖.

The New screen is displayed.

- You cannot register information for the entry if you have entered neither a first nor last name. In this case, press ○ and redo the procedure from Step 1.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 107 of 372

Step 3 Setting phone number, mail address, etc. [New screen]

Phone numbers and mail addresses are set. Still image or video to be displayed for incoming calls are also set.

- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of short message (SMS) if it is selected as the address.
- Set items on New entry screen as required.
- Setting can be made to hide image for outgoing/incoming calls even if the image is set. → P180



The name entered in Step 2 is set, which can be changed.
The reading of the name entered in Step 2 is set, which can be changed.
Still image or video that is displayed when a call is received/sent or the phonebook is viewed can be set.
They can be classified into 30 groups and "グループなし (No group)".
Up to 5 phone numbers can be set.
Up to 5 mail addresses can be set.
Allows shooting still images to register with a camera on the scene.
Allows shooting video to register with a video camera on the scene.

- If setting has already been made, the setting is displayed.

1 Check the name.

The name entered in Step 2 is displayed.

■ Correcting name

① **Select Name field and press ○.**

The name entry screen is displayed.

② **Correct the name and press ⊡.**

- Operation procedure → P105

The name is corrected and New entry screen reappears.

2 Check the reading.

The reading of the name entered in Step 2 is displayed.

■ Correcting reading

- If you correct the name in Step 1, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

① **Select Reading field and press ○.**



② **Select the entry field to correct, correct the reading and press ○.**

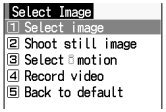
- You can enter up to 32 one-byte characters in total including the last and first names.

③ **Press ⊡.**

The reading is corrected and New entry screen reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 108 of 372

3 Select Select image field and press ●.



• To restore the default setting, press 5 な JKL.

■ Setting a still image

• You cannot set Flash graphics.

① **Press 1 あ ./@.**
"Image Folders" is displayed.

② **Select a folder, press ●, select a still image from the list and press ●.**
The still image is set and New entry screen reappears.
• Still image list → "Application" manual P243
• You can display the still image by selecting a still image and pressing 📖. For Animation, Create animation and continuous shots, displaying image automatically plays the image. Pressing ◁ ▷ displays the previous or next still image. Press ● to set it.
• When a call arrives or phonebook data is checked, image is played for Animation and the first image is displayed for Create animation and continuous shots.

■ Shooting still images with camera

• The size of a still image to be shot is set to "96 x 72" automatically.

① **Press 2 か ABC.**
The still image shooting screen is displayed.
• Shooting still images with camera → "Application" manual P214

② **Point the camera at the subject and press ●.**
The shutter sound is heard, incoming light lit in red, a still image is shot and a confirmation screen is displayed.
• To shoot still image again, press 戻 クリア.

③ **Press ●.**
The still image is saved and New entry screen reappears.

■ Setting video

• You can only set videos shot by the terminal's own camera or videos shot and edited by FOMA terminal.

① **Select "Select i-motion" and press 3 さ DEF.**
The folder list of "i-motion" is displayed.

② **Select a folder, press ●, select video from the list and press ●.**
The video is set and New entry screen reappears.
• Video list → "Application" manual P267
• You can play the video by selecting video, then press 📖.

■ Recording video with video camera

• The size of a video to be recorded is set to "176 x 144" automatically.

① **Press 4 た GHI.**
Video record screen is displayed.
• Recording video with video camera → "Application" manual P224

② **Point the camera at the object and press ●.**
Shutter sound is heard, recording is started and the incoming light flashes in five colors at 2-second intervals.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 109 of 372

③ **Press** (録画).

Ending sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the video.

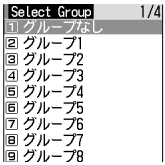
- If the size of the video file reaches the limit while recording, recording ends automatically and a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save.
- To reshoot video, press (クリア).

④ **Press** ( ).

The video is saved and New entry screen reappears.

4 Set the group.

① **Select Group field and press** ( ).



- Select group screen has 4 pages. Press (◁)(▷) to switch between pages.
- The group to be set can be selected from グループ1 (group1) to グループ30 (group30) and "グループなし (No group)". The group names other than "グループなし (No group)" can be changed. →P130

② **Press** (1あ) **to** (9らWXYZ).

The group is set and Add to phonebook screen reappears.

- "グループなし (No group)" is set by default.

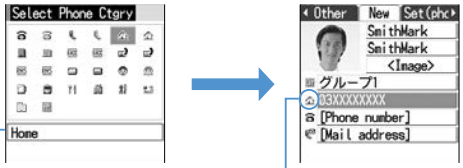
5 Set phone number and icon.

① **Select Phone number field, press** ( )**, enter the phone number and press** ( ).



- Enter phone numbers including the area codes.
- Up to 26 digits can be entered.
- Pause ("P"), Timed pause ("T"), "＋", "＃" and sub-address delimiter "✳" can be entered. →P60
- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of Short Message (SMS) if it is selected as the address.

② **Select an icon and press** ( ).



- Icons can be selected from 26 options.
- ☎ is selected by default.

③ **To register other phone number for the same person, repeat the operation from Step ①.**

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 110 of 372

6 Set mail address and icon.

① Select Mail address field, press ○, enter the mail address and press ○.



- You can enter up to 50 one-byte characters.
- Press 1 あ ./@ in the alphabet input mode to enter symbols often used in addresses including " @ ", ". " and "-". You can enter ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ". com", etc. by pressing * Mode in the alphabet input mode.
- For registering mail addresses of i-mode terminals, "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address can be skipped.

② Select an icon and press ○.



The name of the icon selected is displayed.



The selected icon is displayed.

- Icons can be selected from 22 options.
- is selected by default.

③ To register other mail address for the same person, repeat the operation from Step ①.

INFORMATION

- When a call is made to a party with a video set for Select image of the phonebook data, the first image of the video is shown on the display while the call is being made.
  When a call arrives from such a party, the video is played on the display and the ring alert set in the phonebook data sounds while the call is being received.
- If video/i-motion is set for Ring alert of phonebook data (→P110) or for Phone/Video-phone of Select ring tone (→P168), the video/i-motion set as the ring alert (video and sound) is played regardless of Select image setting.
  However, if the video/i-motion set as the ring alert only contains sounds, the default image is shown on the display while a call is being received. Chaku-motion →P169
- If an image whose horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size exceeds 640 x 480 (dots) is set, it may take time to display a phonebook and its functions (such as incoming call image and received calls of your phone) that uses the images.
- If you operate a key while recording a video, the sound of the key operation may be recorded.
- Displaying name for outgoing/incoming i-mode Mail →P102
- When the other party has registered secret code →P140
- Entering characters →P302
- Even if you set the video inserted by a ticker to the Image field of the phonebook data, the ticker is not reproduced when you refer to the phonebook. → "Application" manual P277

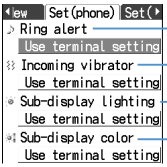
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 111 of 372

Step 4 Making settings for incoming calls [Set (phone) screen]

Set the ring alert, operations of the vibrator and incoming light for incoming calls.

- Make settings on Set (phone) screen as required in any order.

1 Press .



Set ring alert.

Set operation of the vibrator for incoming calls.

Set Sub-display lighting pattern of the incoming light.

Set Sub-display lighting color of the incoming light.

- In the case of "グループなし (No group)", "User terminal setting" is set by default, these settings depend on Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color.
- In the case of other than "グループなし (No group)", Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color settings depend on "Group settings".

2 Select Ring alert field and press to set the tone.



- To cancel the ring alert setting, select "Cancel" and press .
- To apply Ring alert setting (→P168) to the operation, select "Use terminal setting" and press .

■ Setting Chaku-motion (Movie ringtone)

- Only videos recorded by the terminal's own camera, videos recorded and edited by FOMA terminal or videos/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detailed information (→"Application" manual P273) specified to "available" can be set as ring alert. Chaku-motion →P169

Select "motion" and press .

- Operation procedure →P107

■ Setting a melody

① Select "Melody" and press .

"Melody" folder list is displayed.

② Select a folder, press , select a melody from the list and press .

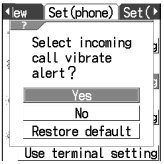
The melody is set and "Set(phone)" screen reappears.

- The melody list →"Application" manual P285
- You can play melody by selecting Melody and pressing . While Melody is playing, press side keys [▲▼] or to adjust the volume and press to play the previous or next Melody. Press to set it.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 112 of 372

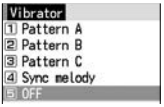
3 Set the incoming call vibrate alert.

① Select Incoming vibrator field and press ●.



- To cancel Vibrator setting, select "No" and press ●.
- To apply Vibrator setting (→P152) to the operation, select "Use terminal setting" and press ●.

② Select "Yes" and press ●.



- Press ◁ ▷ and select a pattern to activate the vibration for about 1 minute in the selected pattern (Note that the vibration is not activated when "Sync melody" is selected).

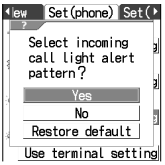
③ Press 1 to 5.

Vibrator is set and Set (phone) screen reappears.

- To activate the vibrator along with the melody set for Ring tone, press 4. (Vibration may not synchronize depending on the file specifications of downloaded melodies.) When i-motion is set as the ring tone, pressing 4 does not synchronize the i-motion but activates the vibrator in "pattern A".

4 Set the Sub-display lighting.

① Select Sub-display lighting field and press ●.



- To cancel Sub-display lighting setting, select "No" and press ●.
- To apply Incoming Alert Light setting (→P245) to the operation, select "Restore default" and press ●.

② Select "Yes" and press ●.



- When ◁ ▷ are pressed to select a pattern, the incoming light lit/flashes in the selected pattern. Note that the incoming light flashes when "Sync melody" is selected.

③ Press 1 to 5.

The sub-display lighting is set and Set (phone) screen reappears.

- To activate flashing along with the melody set for Ring tone, press 4. (Flashing may not synchronize depending on the file specifications of downloaded melodies.) When i-motion is set as the ring tone, pressing 4 does not synchronize the i-motion but the incoming light flashes.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 113 of 372

5 Set the sub-display lighting color.

- When "Sync melody" or "OFF" is set for Sub-display lighting, the sub-display lighting color cannot be set.

① Select sub-display color field and press ●.



- To cancel Sub-display lighting color setting, select "No" and press ●.
- To apply Incoming Alert Light setting (→P245) to the operation, select "Restore default" and press ●.

② Select "Yes" and press ●.



- The color selection screen has 3 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch between pages.
- When 📷 i R are pressed to select a color, the incoming light lights/flashes in the selected color.

③ Press 1 あ ./@ to 9 ら WXYZ.

The sub-display lighting color is set and Set (phone) screen reappears.

INFORMATION

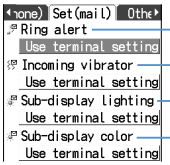
- Vibrator pattern →P152
- Lighting colors (sub-display colors) →P246

Step 5 Making settings for receiving mails [Set (mail) screen]

Set the ring alert for incoming mails. Operations of Vibrator and light for incoming mails can also be set.

- Make settings on Set (mail) screen as required in any order.
- i-motion cannot be set as ring tone.

1 Press ▷.



Set ring tone.

Set operation of the vibrator for incoming mails.

Set Sub-display lighting pattern of the incoming light.

Set Sub-display lighting color of the incoming light.

- In the case of "グループなし (No group)", "Use terminal setting" is set by default, these settings depend on Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color.
- In the case of other than "グループなし (No group)", Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color settings depend on "Group settings".

2 Select the item to set and press ● to set the item.

- Operation procedure →P110 (Step 4)

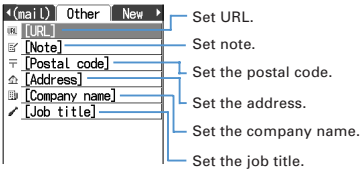
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 114 of 372

Step 6 Setting various types of information [Others screen]

Set address, company name, etc.

- Items on the Other screen can be set as required.

1 Press .



- None of these are set by default. When setting has already been made, the setting is displayed.

2 Select URL field, press , enter the URL and press .

The URL is set and "Others" screen reappears.

- You can enter up to 100 one-byte characters.
- Symbols often used in URLs including "/", "." and "-" can be entered by pressing 1 in the alphabet input mode. In addition, "http://www.", ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com", ".html", etc. can be entered by pressing * in the alphabet input mode.

3 Enter note.

① Select Note field, press , enter note and press .

- You can enter up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters.

② Press .

The note is set and Others screen reappears.

4 Select Postal code field, press , enter the postal code and press .

The postal code is set and "Others" screen reappears.

- You can enter up to 7 one-byte digits.

5 Enter the address.

① Select Address field, press , enter the address and press .

- You can enter up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters.

② Press .

The address is set and "Others" screen reappears.

6 Enter the company name.

① Select Company name field, press , enter the company name and press .

- You can enter up to 50 two-byte or 100 one-byte characters.

② Press .

The company name is set and "Others" screen reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 115 of 372

7 Enter the job title.

① **Select Job title field, press ( ), enter the job title and press ( ).**

- You can enter up to 50 two-byte or 100 one-byte characters.

② **Press (メール).**

The job title is set and "Other" screen reappears.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Step 7 Complete registration [Enter Ph Book No. screen]

- If you register the phone number of the other party as the first phone number of one of phonebook number 0 to 99, you can easily call that party (Quick dial). → P144
- If you register the phone number of the other party as the first phone number of one of phonebook number 0 to 99, you can easily compose Short Messages (SMS) to be sent to that party (Quick mail). → P145
- If you register the mail address of the other party as the first mail address of one of phonebook number 0 to 99, you can easily create i-mode Mail to be sent to that party (Quick mail). → P145
- To make calls with the earphone/microphone with switch, register the other party's phone number as the first phone number of phonebook number 0.

1 Press (メール).



The lowest available phonebook number is automatically entered in the Enter Ph Book No. entering screen.

2 Enter the phonebook number (0 to 699) and press ( ).

The phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

- You can omit the zeroes before single- or double-digit numbers.
- You cannot register higher phonebook numbers than 700. Set a number between 0 and 699.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select "No" not to overwrite, press ( ) and specify another phonebook No.

3 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears. This completes the operation for saving in the phonebook.

INFORMATION

- When secret attribute (→ P142) is set to the Ph book No., it can be overwritten only if Secret mode (→ P201) is ON.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 116 of 372

Registering entries into UIM phonebook

Flow of registering phonebook entries into UIM phonebook

The following steps are required to register an entry in the UIM phonebook:

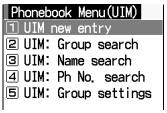
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), entry of the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.

Step 1	Start registration	See below
▼		
Step 2	Enter name [Enter name screen]	See below
▼		
Step 3	Set phone number or mail address [Register UIM screen]	P116

* Entries can be registered without entering phone numbers and mail addresses.

Step 1 Start registration

1 Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 📖 on the stand-by display.



- Each time you press 📖, the screen switches between the UIM phonebook menu and FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook menu.

2 Press 1 ./@.

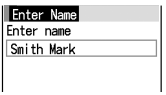
The Enter name screen is displayed.

Step 2 Enter name [Enter name screen]

Enter the first and last names together.

- You must enter a name.
- Kanji, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc. → P309

1 Enter the name and press ○.



- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters. Note that up to 10 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters are used or one-byte katakana characters are included.

2 Press 📖.

The Save To UIM screen is displayed.

- If the name is not entered, press ○ and start again from Step 1.

INFORMATION

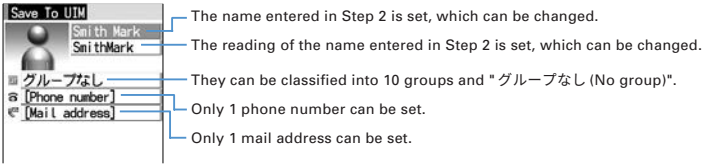
- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 117 of 372

Step 3 Set phone number or mail address [Register UIM screen]

Phone number and mail address can be set.

- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of i-mode Mail if it is selected as the address.
- Make settings on Save To UIM screen as required in any order.



- If setting has already been made, the setting is displayed.

1 Check the name.

The name entered in Step 2 is displayed.

■ Correcting the name

① Select Name field and press ●.

The name entry screen is displayed.

② Correct the name and press ●.

- Operation procedure → P115

The name is corrected and Save To UIM screen reappears.

2 Check the reading.

The reading of the name entered in Step 2 is displayed.

■ Correcting the reading

- If you correct the name in Step 1, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

① Select Reading field and press ●.



② Correct the reading and press ●.

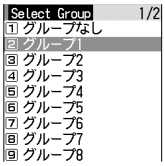
The reading is corrected and Save To UIM screen reappears.

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter reading.
- You can enter up to 12 two-byte or 25 one-byte characters. Note that up to 12 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 118 of 372

3 Set the group.

① **Select Group field and press ●.**



- Select group screen has 2 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch between pages.
- The group to be set can be selected from グループ1 (group1) to グループ10 (group10) and "グループなし (No group)". The group names other than "グループなし (No group)" can be changed. → P130

② **Press 1 to 9.**

The group is set and Register UIM screen reappears.

- "グループなし (No group)" is set by default.

4 Select Phone number field, press ●, enter the phone number and press ●.



- Only 1 phone number can be set. No icon can be set.
- Enter a phone number including the area code.
- Up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits for some types of UIMs) can be entered. → P45
- Pause ("P"), "＋", "＃" and sub-address delimiter ("✳") can be entered and saved. Timed pause ("T") cannot be entered but cannot be saved. → P60

5 Select "Mail address" field, press ●, enter the mail address and press ●.



- Only 1 mail address can be set. No icon can be set.
- You can enter up to 50 one-byte characters.
- You can enter symbols often used in addresses including "@", "." and "-" by pressing 1 in the alphabet input mode. You can enter ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com", etc. by pressing ✳ in the alphabet input mode.
- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp") of the addresses can be skipped.

6 Press 📖.

Registration is made in the UIM phonebook.

7 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- Phone numbers such as redial and received calls can be registered in the UIM phonebook. → P118
- Displaying names for outgoing/incoming i-mode Mail → P102
- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 119 of 372

Registering phone numbers from redial list or received call list

Phone numbers in the redial list or received call list can be registered in the phonebook. You can register numbers in new phonebook entries, or add them to existing entries.

- You can register phone numbers from the following screens:
  - Dial up screen
  - Redial list
  - Received call list
  - Record message list
  - Voice memo list
- You can register phone numbers or mail addresses from sites or i-mode Mail. → "Application" manual P51, P201

Registering new entry

<Example> Registering an entry from the redial list

1 Press ☐ on the stand-by display.



2 Select an entry to register and press MENU 1 あ ./@.



3 Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.



"New" screen is displayed with the selected phone number registered.

4 Register the name, mail address and other information.

- Operation procedure → P105

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from Dial up screen, Received calls list, Recorded message list or Voice memo list, press MENU and select "Add to phonebook".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 120 of 372

Adding number to registered phonebook entry

<Example> Registering an entry from the redial list

1 Press ☎ on the stand-by display.



2 Select an entry to add and press MENU 2 かABC.



3 Press 1 あ./@ or 2 かABC.



- Each time you press 📖, the screen switches between the UIM phonebook and FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

4 Select the desired entry and press ●.



The selected phone number is added.

- When the selected entry has already been registered the maximum number (5 numbers) of phone numbers, a selection screen is displayed. Select the phone number to overwrite.
- Entries set as secret attribute are not displayed unless Secret mode is set. → P201

5 Check the information, press 📖, check the phonebook No. and press ●.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the phonebook.

- For UIM phonebook, checking the information followed by pressing 📖 displays a confirmation screen asking whether to overwrite.

6 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The phonebook data that was added the phone number is registered.

- Select "No" and press ● to change another phonebook number when you do not to overwrite the data.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from Dial up screen, Received calls list, Recorded message list or Voice memo list, press MENU and select "Update phonebook".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 121 of 372

Using FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook to make calls

You can simplify the procedure for making calls by calling the phonebook data from the phonebook for the party to call.

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure:

Rocket search	Searches by characters assigned to dial keys.	P121
Group search	Searches by group.	P121
Name search	Searches by reading.	P122
Search by Frequency	Searches phonebook data that was used many times to make calls or to receive/send mails.	P122
Ph book No.search	Searches by phonebook number.	P124
Phone No. search	Searches by a part of phone number.	P124
Secrecy search	Searches phonebook data with the secret attribute set.	P143

- You can display registered phonebook information to check it. → P125
- To search for phonebook entries including entries set as secret attribute, set the Secret mode then search the data. → P201
  When you select phonebook entries set as secret attribute, at the top of the display blinks.
- Phonebook searches cannot be made in PIM lock ON.
- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.

To make call using the phonebook

You can use the phonebook to easily make calls.

1 Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.



Name search result screen

The search result screen of the previously used search method is displayed.

Icon set for first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in selected entry

First phone number registered in selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted)

- Press (phonebook) to search from the UIM phonebook. → P127

2 Press (camera) (i-α) (◁) (▷) to select an entry.

■ Calling first phone number registered in entry

Press (call).

- Press (video call) to make a video-phone call.

■ Calling second phone number registered in entry

① **Press (menu).**
The Details (TOP) screen is displayed. → P125

② **Press (▷).**
The Details (Phone number) screen is displayed.

③ **Press (camera) (i-α) to select the desired phone number and press (call).**

- Press (video call) to make a video-phone call.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 122 of 372

INFORMATION

- The first time you use the search function, the Name search result screen is displayed (phonebook entries with readings starting with あ (a) line characters (a, i, u, e, o)).
- Before calling, you can switch the Send caller ID setting, or append a prefix to the number. → P132

Rocket Search

Search phonebook data by the characters assigned to dial keys 0 to 9.

- The rocket search is performed on the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or UIM phonebook).

<Example> Searching for 鈴木 (Suzuki)

1 Press 3 DEF then the phonebook key on the stand-by display.





The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the "さ (sa)" line are displayed.

- In the rocket search screen, you can switch kana lines by pressing 0 to 9, #, *, ◁, ▷.
- Press the phonebook key to switch to the UIM phonebook search result screen. → P127
- Press the power key to return to the stand-by display.

Searching by group <Group Search>

Follow the steps below to search for the phonebook entries registered in a specified group. Phonebook entries registered without groups are registered under "グループなし (No group)".

1 Press MENU 4 GHI 1 .@ 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The group search screen is displayed.

2 Select the group to search and ●.





- In the group seach screen, you can switch screens by pressing ◁▷. In the group search result screen, you can switch groups by pressing ◁▷.
- In the group search result screen, you can also switch the screens by pressing a dial key corresponding to the default group No. For 2-digit numbers, press the corresponding dial keys in succession. Press 0 to display "グループなし (No group)".
- The entries in the specified group are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Press the phonebook key to switch to the UIM phonebook search result screen. → P127
- Press the power key to return to the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 123 of 372

INFORMATION

- Dial key character assignments list → P305

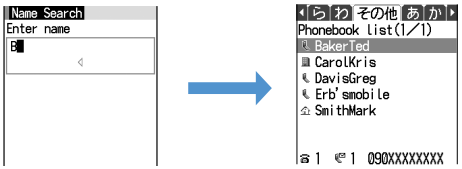
Searching by name <Name Search>

Follow the steps below to enter a reading, and search for the entries with readings that start with characters in the same kana line:

1 Press MENU 4 た GHI 1 あ ./@ 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.

The Name Search screen is displayed.

2 Enter the reading and press ●.



- You can search by entering part of a reading.
- You can enter up to 32 one-byte characters for reading.
- Press 0 わん 記号 to 9 WXYZ, # ↓ マナー, * ﾓｰﾄﾞ ☆ to display the phonebook by characters assigned to dial keys 0 to 9 in Name search result screen. For example, pressing 3 さ DEF displays the " さ (sa)" line in the phonebook.
- Press 📖 to switch to the UIM phonebook search result screen. → P128
- Press 電源 to return to the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Displaying call/mail frequency ranks <Search by Frequency>

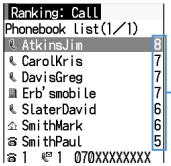
In the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, total number of calls, date and time of last call, total number of mails, and date and time of last mail are recorded for the individual phonebook data (communication information). Based on the information, phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) and by the number of i-mode Mail messages exchanged (Mail frequency rank).

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.
- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- You cannot perform the communication search on UIM phonebook.
- The total number of calls and messages are counted up to 9999. If additional calls or messages sent or received do not update the count when 9999 calls/messages are already counted.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 124 of 372

Displaying call frequency ranks

1 **Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 4 GHI 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.**



Total number of calls

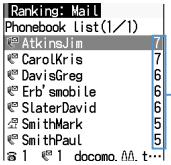
- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset (→ see below). Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

2 **Press 電源.**

The stand-by display reappears.

Displaying mail frequency ranks

1 **Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 4 GHI 2 ABC on the stand-by display.**



Total number of mails

- The total number of mails is the number of messages sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset (→ see below). Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

2 **Press 電源.**

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When the total number of calls or mails of multiple entries is the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Set Secret mode ON to display the frequency ranks of all entries including secret entries. →P201

Resetting number of call/mail

Follow the steps below to reset the stored communication information (total number of calls, date and time of last call, total number of mails, and date and time of last mail) from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen to its status by default.

1 **Press 📖 on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select an entry to reset and press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF.**

A confirmation screen is displayed with asking whether to reset it.

3 **Select "Yes" and press ●.**

The communication information is reset.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 125 of 372

4 **Press (電源).**

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press (MENU) and select "Set/Check" → "Reset comm".
- All communication information cannot be reset at one time.

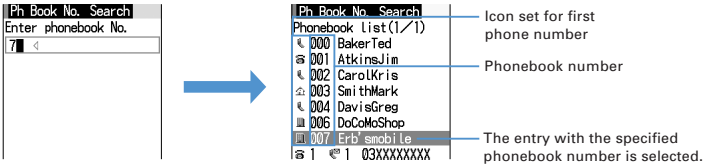
Searching by phonebook number <Ph Book No. Search>

Follow the steps below to search for a phonebook entry by specifying its entry number:

1 **Press (MENU) (4 た GHI) (1 あ ./@) (5 な JKL) on the stand-by display.**

The phonebook number search screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the phonebook number and press (○).**



- You can omit the zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers.
- Press (電源) to return to the stand-by display.

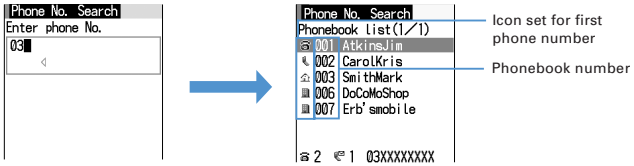
Searching by phone number <Phone No. Search>

You enter a part of a phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it.

1 **Press (MENU) (4 た GHI) (1 あ ./@) (6 は MNO) on the stand-by display.**

The phone number search screen is displayed.

2 **Enter part of a phone number and press (○).**



- You can enter up to 26 digits.
- When multiple corresponding phonebook entries are available, the entries are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Press (□) to switch to the UIM phonebook search result screen. → P128
- Press (電源) to return to the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 126 of 372

Detailed display of FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook entries

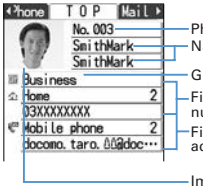
Follow the steps below to display and check information registered in a phonebook entry.

1 Press (m) on the stand-by display.

The FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen is displayed.

- If the UIM phonebook was used the last time, the UIM phonebook search result screen appears.

2 Select the desired entry and press ●.



Phonebook number
Name, reading
Group name
First phone number (icon, type, phone number) and number of registered phone numbers
First mail address (icon, type, mail address) and number of registered mail addresses
Image

- If a video is set for Select image of the Phonebook data (→P107), the video is played.
- You can display the Top screen for the previous/next phonebook entry by pressing ◁ ▷.
- When call rejection/acceptance, Caller ID or secret code is set for the phonebook data, ! is indicated to the right of the phonebook number. →P138, P140, P155
- Press (c) to make a voice call or (d) to make a video-phone call. To specify a call type to be able to make a call →P132
- You can create i-mode Mail to the first mail address registered in entry by pressing (m). If only phone number is registered in the phonebook data, the creation screen of Short Message (SMS) appears. →P133
- You can create a Short Message (SMS) to the first phone number registered in entry by holding down (m) for over a second. →P133

■ Displaying all registered information for item in TOP screen

Press (m).



- Voice and video-phone calls can be made and mails can be created by the same operations as on TOP screen.
- When all the registered information for an item is displayed, press (m) to return to Top screen.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 127 of 372

Displaying detailed registered information

Press ◁▷.

Each time you press ▷ the screen toggles as follows: "Mail" → "Other" → "Phone"

Press ◁ to switch the screen in reverse order.



- You can select a phone number and press 発信 to make a voice call or ▲ to make a video-phone call.
  To specify a call type to be able to make a call → P132
- The Mail screen displays the total number of mails sent/received and the date and time of the last mail.
  You can create an i-mode Mail by selecting a mail address and pressing ●. → P133
- The Phone screen displays the total number of calls made/received and the date and time of the last call.
  You can create Short Message (SMS) by selecting a phone number and press ✉▼. → P133

3 When finished, press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- Total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail apply to both incoming and outgoing calls/mail. Note that, uncompleted calls/mails due to no reply of the other party's call or the radio wave conditions, are not counted.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 128 of 372

Using UIM phonebook to make calls

You can use the UIM phonebook to make calls easily.

- You can use any of the following procedure:
  - Rocket search → See below
  - Group Search → See below
  - Name Search → P128
  - Phone No. Search → P128
- The UIM phonebook search result screen indicates [icon] in front of each entry name.
- You can display registered phonebook information to check it. → P129
- You cannot search the phonebook in PIM lock ON.
- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in privacy mode ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.

Rocket search

Search phonebook data by the characters assigned to dial keys 0 to 9.

- Operation procedure → P121
- The rocket search is performed on the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or UIM phonebook).

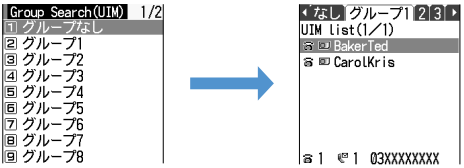
Searching by group <Group Search (UIM)>

Follow the steps below to search for the phonebook entries registered in a specified group.
Phonebook entries registered without groups are registered under "グループなし (No group)".

1 Press MENU 4 1 2 .

The UIM group search screen is displayed.

2 Select the group to search and .



- The entries in the specified group are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Press to switch into the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen. → P121
- Press to return to the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 129 of 372

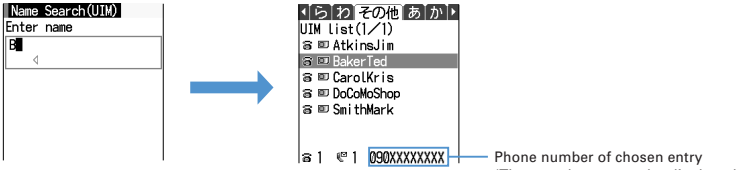
Searching by name <Name Search (UIM)>

Follow the steps below to enter a reading, and search for the entries with readings that start with characters in the same kana line.

1 **Press MENU 4 GHI 1 .@ 3 DEF on the stand-by display.**

The Name Search (UIM) screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the reading and press ●.**



- You can enter readings in two-byte katakana or one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- You can enter up to 12 two-byte or 25 one-byte characters. You can search by entering part of a reading.
- Phonebook entries are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Press 📖 to switch into the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen. → P122
- Press 電源 to return to the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

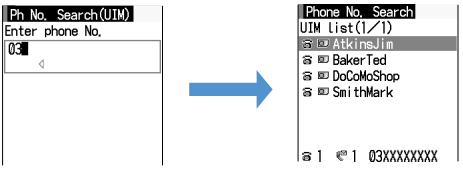
Searching by phone number <Phone No. Search (UIM)>

You can enter a part of a phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it.

1 **Press MENU 4 GHI 1 .@ 4 GHI on the stand-by display.**

The phone number search screen is displayed.

2 **Enter part of a phone number and press ●.**



- You can enter up to 26 digits (Up to 20digits depending on the UIM type). → P45
- When multiple corresponding phonebook entries are available, the entries are displayed in the following order:
  ① Japanese kana order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numerical order
  ④ Entries starting with blanks ⑤ Symbol
- Press 📖 to switch into the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen. → P124
- Press 電源 to return to the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 130 of 372

Detailed display of UIM phonebook entries

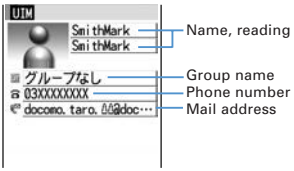
Follow the steps below to display and check information registered in a UIM phonebook entry.

1 Press (メール) twice on the stand-by display.

The UIM phonebook search result screen is displayed.

- If the UIM phonebook was used the last time, pressing (メール) on the stand-by display shows the UIM phonebook search result screen.

2 Select the desired entry and press ●.



- You can display the more info screen for the previous/next phonebook entry by pressing (カメラ) (マナーモード).
- Press (通話) to make a voice call or (ビデオ通話) to make a video-phone call.
  To specify a call type to be able to make a call → P132
- You can create i-mode Mail to the mail address saved in the phonebook entry by pressing (メール). If only phone number is saved in the phonebook data, the creation screen of Short Message (SMS) appears. → P133
- You can create a Short Message (SMS) to the first phone number registered in entry by holding down (メール) for over a second. → P133
- Press (メール) to display the detail information.

3 When finished, press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

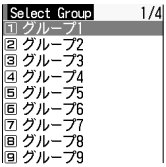
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 131 of 372

Setting group names and actions <Group settings>

You can change the names of "グループ1 (Group1)" to "グループ30 (Group30)" in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, and of "グループ1 (Group1)" to "グループ10 (Group10)" in the UIM phonebook and set different ring tone for a particular group in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

- You cannot change the "グループなし (No group)" group name and action.
- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON (phonebook set to "Need auth. to use"). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.

1 Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



- Press MENU 4 GHI 1 ./@ 📖 5 JKL to change UIM phonebook group names.
- The FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook group selection screen has four pages and the UIM phonebook group selection screen has two pages. Press ◁ ▷ to switch screens.

2 Press 1 ./@ to 9 WXYZ.



3 Enter the desired group name and press ●.

- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.
- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that up to 10 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used.

4 Make settings for incoming calls.

Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color can be set. → P152, P168, P245

5 Make settings for receiving mails.

Ring alert, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color can be set. → P152, P168, P245

6 Press 📖.

The group name and setting are changed.

7 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 132 of 372

INFORMATION

- Ring alert for a particular group, Incoming vibrator, Sub-display lighting and Sub-display color cannot be set for the Phonebook data in the UIM Phonebook.
- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 133 of 372

Making full use of phonebook

The phonebook in FOMA terminal (Terminal) has functions to make calls by setting Call type and create i-mode Mail message and Short Message (SMS) directly from phonebook data. It also allows displaying of the pages of sites at the URLs registered in the phonebook data and copying of the contents of phonebook data.

- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

Specifying call type to make a call

Default	Call type:Voice call	Notification type:Use Present Setting	Prefix:None

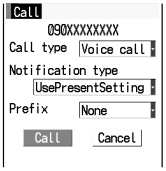
From the phonebook's search result screen or the more info screen, you make a call by specifying a call type or appending a prefix to the phone number.

- To append a prefix before calling, the prefix must have been registered beforehand. → P159

1 Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 Select the entry to call and press MENU 5 JKL.



Item	Description
Call type	Specifies whether to make a voice call or video-phone call (64K or 32K).
Notification type	Specifies whether to send caller ID. • The operation depends on Caller ID setting when set to "UsePresentSetting". → P138
Prefix	Specifies whether to add registered Prefixes to make calls. → P159

- The first phone number registered in the entry will be called.
- To make a call to the 2-5th phone number registered, display a phonebook more info (phone number) screen and select the phone number and press MENU 5 JKL.

3 Select the items, press ○ and set the call type.

4 Select "Call" and press ○.

A call of the set type is made.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, Phonebook list of the UIM phonebook, UIM phonebook details screen or user information details (phone) screen, press MENU and select "Call".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 134 of 372

Creating mail

You can create i-mode Mail or Short Messages (SMS) from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen.

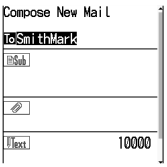
Creating i-mode Mail

- This function is unavailable when no mail address is saved in Phonebook data.

1 **Press (📖) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select the recipient and press (✉▾).**



The first mail address registered in the selected entry is set to the Receiver field.

- When only the phone number is saved in the selected phonebook data for the other party, the Short Message (SMS) creation screen is displayed.
- Select the address on Mail screen and press (✉▾) to create i-mode Mail message using a mail address other than the first address in the phonebook data.
- Creating/sending i-mode Mail
  → "Application" manual P129

Creating Short Messages (SMS)

- This function is unavailable when no phone number is saved in Phonebook data.

1 **Press (📖) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select the recipient of Short Message (SMS) and hold down (✉▾) for over a second.**

The Short Messages (SMS) creation screen is displayed. The first phone number registered in the selected entry is set to Receiver field.

- When only the phone number is saved in the selected phonebook data for the other party, pressing (✉▾) displays Short Message (SMS) creation screen.
- Select the phone number on Phone screen and press (✉▾) to create Short Message (SMS) using a phone number other than the first number in the phonebook data.
- Creating and Sending Short Messages (SMS) → "Application" manual P176

INFORMATION

- When the phone number is registered in the phonebook, holding down (✉▾) for over a second from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, or pressing (✉▾) from Phonebook list of the UIM phonebook, UIM phonebook details screen and User Information details screen displays the Short Message (SMS) creation screen.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 135 of 372

Displaying sites

If you register a URL in the personal information, you connect to the site or Internet Web page it specifies directly from the phonebook's search result screen or a phonebook more info screen.

1 **Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select the desired entry, press (●), (◁) and (▷) to display details (other) screen.**



3 **Press (MENU) (1 あ ./@) (3 さ DEF) while a URL is selected.**



INFORMATION

- When operating from User Information details screen, press (MENU) and select "Msg/URL" → "Connect to URL".

Copying registered information

You can copy items in phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen. Copied items can be pasted into screen input areas such as in the screen for creating mail or the screen for registering a phonebook entry.

- Copied items remain stored in FOMA terminal until the power is turned OFF; they can be pasted any number of times while the power is ON.
- You can store only one item. Each copied item replaces the previous copied item.

1 **Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select the entry to copy from and press (MENU) (7 ま PQRS).**



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 136 of 372

3 Press 1 あ ./@ to 8 や TUV.

The selected item registered in the selected phonebook entry is copied.

- You cannot copy unregistered items.
- Copy name copies the last and first names together.
- Copy phone number/mail address copies the mail address registered as the first items.

4 Display the destination character entry screen and paste the character.

• Operation procedure → P317

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, Phonebook list of the UIM phonebook, UIM phonebook details screen or User Information details screen, press MENU and select "Copy".
- To copy the second or following phone number or mail address, select the phone number or mail address to copy on FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook/User Information details screen before operation.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 137 of 372

Editing phonebook entries

You can make changes to the phonebook data registered in FOMA terminal (Terminal) and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook data. The memory Nos. for 2 phonebook data is switched.

- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.

Editing registered information

The steps below to edit registered phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen.

1 Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 Select the entry to edit and press (MENU) (3 さ DEF).

The edit screen is displayed.

3 Edit and save phonebook entries.

- Operation procedure → P105
- If Ph Book No. has not been changed, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite at the time of saving. Select "No" and press (○) to return "Enter Ph Book No." screen. If Ph Book No. has been changed or UIM phonebook has been edited, a method confirmation screen is displayed at the time of saving. A confirmation screen is displayed asking the registration procedure at the time of registration. Select "Overwrite" to overwrite FOMA terminal (Terminal) Phonebook. Select "New entry" not to overwrite, press (○) and specify another phonebook No.

4 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) Phonebook details screen, Phonebook list or details screen of the UIM phonebook, press (MENU) and select "Edit".
- The data may not be overwritten when a phone number in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook contains "✳". In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select "Yes" and press (○) to add to the phonebook.
- If you correct the phonebook data in Secret mode, a secrete attribute is set to the phonebook data. → P142, P201

Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses

When more than one phone number or mail address is registered in phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses are changed from the Search result display of FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

<Example> To change the order of the phone numbers registered in an entry

1 Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 138 of 372

2 Select the desired entry and press MENU 9 2 1.



- Press MENU 9 2 2 to switch the mail addresses.

3 Select the phone number to register as the first phone number and press ●.

The positions of the selected phone number and first phone number are switched.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press MENU and select "Set/Check" → "Switch order" → "Phone numbers"/"Mail addresses" for switching the order of phone numbers/mail addresses.

Switching phonebook numbers

You switch 2 phonebook numbers of entries registered in the phonebook from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) search result screen.

1 Press 📖 on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 Select the desired entry and press MENU 9 2 3.



3 Select the phonebook number to switch and press ●.

The phonebook numbers are switched.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press MENU and select "Set/Check" → "Switch order" → "Phonebook Nos.".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 139 of 372

Setting functions for phonebook entries

Caller ID profile and video-phone connection speed can be set for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook. Secret code can be set for each mail address.

- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), entry of the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.
- The function described here cannot be set for the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook.

Turning Caller ID Setting ON/OFF for registered phone numbers <Caller ID Settings>

Default | No setting

Set the caller ID profile for each phone number for making a call from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen.

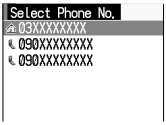
1 Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

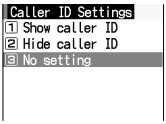
2 Select an entry to set and press (MENU) (9 ら WXYZ) (1 あ ./@) (2 か ABC).

The security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

3 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



4 Select a phone number and press (●).



5 Press (1 あ ./@) to (3 さ DEF).

Caller ID setting is registered.

- Press (3 さ DEF) to cancel Caller ID setting.

6 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 140 of 372

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, press (MENU) and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Caller ID settings".
- When "No setting" is set, the setting for Caller ID function is used. → P287
- ! is indicated to the right of the phonebook number in the phonebook TOP screen for which Send caller ID is set. → P125
- When you turn Caller ID setting ON/OFF for the current call (→ P61), that setting takes precedence over the setting for the phone number.

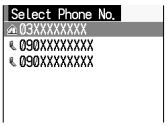
Specifying data rate for video-phone communications <Video-Phone Settings>

Set the video-phone connection speed for each phone number to make a video-phone call from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen.

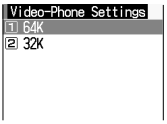
1 **Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 **Select an entry to set and press (MENU) (9 WXYZ) (1 あ ./@) (5 な JKL).**



3 **Select the desired phone number and press (●).**



4 **Press (1 あ ./@) or (2 か ABC).**

The data rate is set.

5 **Press (電源).**

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press (MENU) and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "V-phone settings".
- When you specify the data rate of the video-phone call for the current call (→ P85), that setting takes precedence over the setting for the phone number.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 141 of 372

Setting secret codes for mail addresses <Set Secret Code>

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (phone number @docomo.ne.jp) and you set that secret code for that mail address in your phonebook, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail created by searching the phonebook for that phone number.

1 **Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.**

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

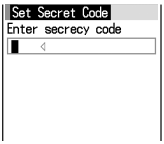
2 **Select an entry to set and press (MENU) (9 ら WXYZ) (1 あ ./@) (4 た GHI).**

The security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

3 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**



4 **Select a mail address and press (●).**



- To cancel the secret code setting, hold down (クリア) for over a second to delete the secret code.

5 **Enter the secret code (4 digits) and press (●).**

The secret code is set.

6 **Press (電源).**

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press (MENU) and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secret code".
- Secret code → "Application" manual P167
- ! is indicated to the right of the phonebook number in the phonebook TOP screen for which a secret code is set. → P125
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", sending mail to or replying to mail from the party becomes impossible. Change it to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" and register the secret code.
- You cannot set a secret code for user information.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 142 of 372

Deleting phonebook entries

Follow the steps below to delete the data for a single phonebook entry (phonebook number and data).

- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.

1 Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 Select the entry to delete and press (MENU) (4 た GHI).

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete it.

3 Select "Yes" and press (●).

The entry's phonebook data is deleted.

4 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, Phonebook list or details screen of the UIM phonebook, press (MENU) and select "Delete".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 143 of 372

Making phonebook entries secret <Secrecy>

The phonebook data that you do not want other people to see is registered as the data having a secret attribute that is used only when you perform authentication operations (input of terminal security codes having four to eight digits or fingerprint authentication). To set a secret attribute, perform the setting in Secret mode (→ P201).

- You needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint while Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable when PIM lock or Keypad dial lock is ON.

Secret attribute setting <Secrecy ON>

You set Secrecy ON in registered phonebook data.

- You cannot set Secrecy for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set secret attribute ON or OFF unless Secret mode is set.

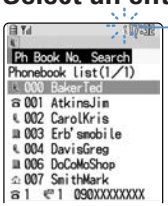
1 Set Secret mode.

- Operation procedure → P201

2 Press (i-mode) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

3 Select an entry to set and press MENU 9wxyz 1 1 .



Flashes when the selected entry has been set as Secrecy ON.

- Select the phone book entry set as Secrecy ON and press MENU 9wxyz 1 1 to set Secrecy OFF.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press MENU and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secrecy ON". To set Secrecy OFF, press MENU and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secrecy OFF".
- Secrecy is set even if the phonebook entry saved and edited when Secret mode ON.
- Entries set as Secrecy cannot be searched unless Secret mode is set. Similarly, the Quick dial and Quick mail cannot be used with secret phonebook entries unless Secret mode is set. When you set Secret mode, you can perform the same searches and operations as with normal phonebook entries.
- When Secret mode is not set, the names of phonebook entries set and registered image/video as secret attributes are not displayed in the incoming call screen, redial list, received call list, received mail list, sub-display and the like. The ring tone and/or vibrator that are/is set for phonebook data will not operate.
  Name displays → P102

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 144 of 372

Searching secret phonebook entries <Secrecy Search>

Follow the steps below to search just the secret phonebook entries.

- You cannot search secret phonebook entries unless Secret mode is set.

1 Set Secret mode.

- Operation procedure → P201

2 Press MENU 4 た GHI 1 あ ./@ 7 ま PQRS on the stand-by display.



- The subsequent steps are the same as for searching normal entries. → P120

3 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- When search other than secrecy search is performed with the secret mode set, the phonebook data with and without secret attribute set are both searched.
- If the phonebook list was displayed after secret search was performed last time, the same secret search result screen is displayed if Secret mode is set. The phonebook No. search result screen is displayed if Secret mode is canceled.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 145 of 372

Using simple dial to make calls <Quick dial>

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

- You needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint while Privacy mode is ON("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number dialed.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

<Example> Calling the phone number registered in phonebook number 2

1 Enter the phonebook number (in this case 2 か ABC) on the stand-by display and press 文字.



- The phonebook number should not be preceded by a zero (0). You cannot use the Quick dial if you enter an initial zero (such as 0 わん 記号 2 か ABC) in the screen above.
- You can make a video-phone call by entering a phonebook number and pressing ▲.

INFORMATION

- If no phone number is registered in the phonebook data of entered phonebook No. or no phonebook data is registered, press 文字 to display a confirmation screen informing you that no applicable data exists. To return to the stand-by display, press ○.
- You cannot call phone numbers set as secret attributes unless Secret mode is set. → P201
- Changing the order of phone numbers → P136

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 146 of 372

Creating mail quickly <Quick mail>

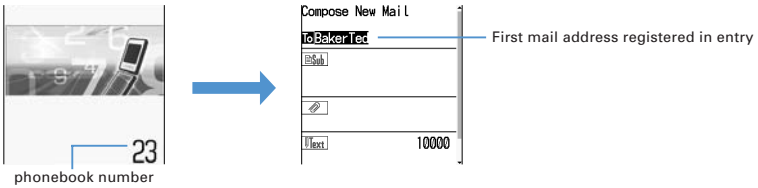
Short messages (SMS) and i-mode Mail can be created by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.

- You needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint while Privacy mode is ON("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Short Messages created in this way are sent to the first phone number registered in the specified entry. i-mode Mails are sent to the first mail address.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

<Example> Sending an i-mode Mail in phonebook number 23

1 Enter the phonebook number (in this case 2 3) on the stand-by display and press ✉.

The first mail address in the specified phonebook entry is set to the Receiver field.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. You cannot use the Quick mail if you enter an initial zero (such as 0 2 3) in the screen above.
- Hold ✉ down for over a second to display a screen to compose a short message (SMS) to the phone number registered in phonebook number that you enter.
- Creating/sending i-mode Mail → "Application" manual P129
- Creating/sending Short Message (SMS) → "Application" manual P176

INFORMATION

- If the phonebook data for the entered Ph. book No. does not have any mail address saved or no phonebook data is saved, when you press ✉, a confirmation screen is displayed with a message that mail address or phonebook data is not saved. Press ○ to display Compose message screen with no address set.
- If no phone number is registered in the phonebook data of entered phonebook number or no phonebook data is registered, hold ✉ down for over a second to display a confirmation screen informing you that mail address data or phonebook data is not recorded. Press ○ to display a screen to compose a short message (SMS) with no destination set.
- For phonebook data with secret attribute set, set Secret mode before operation. → P201
- Changing the order of mail addresses → P136

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 147 of 372

Copying phonebook

You copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) to the UIM and from the UIM to the FOMA terminal (Terminal).

- It needs to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint in Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Once you have entered the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticated your fingerprint while using the phonebook functions, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock and Keypad dial lock ON.

Copying phonebook entries from FOMA terminal (Terminal) to UIM

- When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen, you can collectively copy more than the one-phonebook data. When operating from the details screen, you can copy the phonebook data displayed.
- If the entries of the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook contain a group name that bears the same name as a group already registered in the UIM phonebook, data from the group in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) will be copied to the group in the UIM.
- You can only copy the following items. Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum limit that can be saved in UIM, the exceeding part is omitted.
  - Name : Copies first and last name (up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters. Note that up to 10 characters can be entered when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
  - Reading : Copies first and last name reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters). The UIM replaces one-byte katakana characters with two-byte katakana characters.
  - Phone number : Copies entry's first registered phone number (up to 26 digits. You can enter up to 20 digits depending on the types of the UIM. → P45). Either timed pause ("T") or "+" is deleted when timed pause (T) or "+" is entered. The UIM replaces all icons with ☎.
  - Mail address : Copies entry's first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). The UIM replaces all icons with ✉.

1 Press 📖 on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

- If the UIM phonebook was used the last time, pressing 📖 twice on the stand-by display shows the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook search result screen.

2 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF.

The phonebook selection screen is displayed.

3 Select the entries to copy and press ●.



- Press ● to change ☐ to ☑ and the data is selected.
- Select the phonebook data already selected (☑) and press ● to clear the check box (☐) for the data.
- You can select/deselect all phonebook data by pressing MENU (the guide row appears different from the selection status).

4 Press 📖.

The selected entries are copied from the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook to the UIM.

5 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 148 of 372

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press MENU and select "Send data" → "Copy to UIM".

Copying phonebook entries from UIM to FOMA terminal (Terminal)

- When operating from the UIM phonebook search result screen, you can collectively copy more than the one-phonebook data. When operating from the detail screen, you can copy the phonebook data displayed.
- If the entries of the UIM phonebook contain a group name that bears the same name as a group already registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, data from the group in the UIM will be copied to the group in the FOMA terminal (Terminal).
- You can only copy the following items.
  - Name : Copied to last name in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook entry.
  - Reading : Copied to last name reading in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook entry. Two-byte katakana are replaced with one-byte katakana on the FOMA terminal.
  - Phone number : Copied to phone number. The icon is set with ☎.
  - Mail address : Copied to mail address. The icon is set with ✉.

1 Press 📖 twice on the stand-by display.

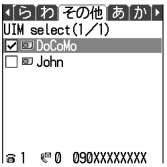
The UIM phonebook search result screen is displayed.

- If the UIM phonebook was used the last time, pressing 📖 on the stand-by display shows the UIM phonebook search result screen.

2 Press MENU 8 や TUV 3 さ DEF.

The phonebook selection screen is displayed.

3 Select the entries to copy and press ●.



- Operation procedure → P146

4 Press 📖.

The selected entries are copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal (Terminal).

5 Press ☎ 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from UIM phonebook details screen, press MENU and select "Send data" → "Copy to terminal".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 149 of 372

Checking number of registered phonebook entries

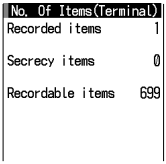
Follow the steps below to display and check the number of registered phonebook entries and the number of secret entries.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press (電話帳) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

2 Press (MENU) (9 らWXYZ) (4 たGHI).



3 When finished, press (○).

The search result screen reappears.

4 Press (電源).

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook details screen, press (MENU) and select "Set/Check" → "No. of items". To operate from Phonebook list of the UIM phonebook or UIM phonebook details screen, press (MENU) and select "No. of items".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 150 of 372

Making FOMA terminal Silent <Silent Mode>

Alert Profile is a function to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling vibrator for incoming calls or disabling the keypad sound.

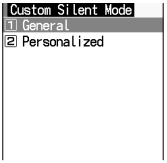
- When Silent mode is active, melodies are not played even if received messages or Message R/F are displayed with "Auto play" set for Message Attachment (→"Application" manual P164). When a melody is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play.
- The shutter sound during shooting with camera is heard also in the Silent mode.
- When starting play-back of video/i-motion or melody, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you want to play it back.

Selecting the type of silent mode

Default | General

There are two modes for silent mode: General silent mode and Personalized silent mode. You can set the setting after starting silent mode.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 ./@ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

- When you select and start the general silent mode, the following options are set.

Item	Setting	Description
Vibrator	ON	Incoming calls are indicated by vibrations in stand-by. However, vibration does not occur when another call is received during a call.
Keypad sound	OFF	Turns OFF keypad sound.
Ring volume	Silent	Ring tone does not sound.
Low battery Alert	OFF	Alarm does not sound when battery runs out.
Alarm/ Schedule sound	OFF	Alarm and schedule alarm do not sound. • In Alarm setting ON, the incoming light and vibrator follow the setting of Set alarm. → P214 • While Schedule being set, the incoming light operates by a vibrator in Silent mode according to the setting for voice call of Incoming Alert Light (→ P245).
Sensitize microphone	ON	Even when you talk in a small voice, the other party can hear you easily.

- When you set the personalized silent mode, the Custom Silent Mode setting screen appears and you can set the options. → P151

3 Press 電源.

The display returns to the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 151 of 372

Setting Silent mode

1 Hold down # (MANNER) for over a second on the stand-by display.



The vibrator operates and Silent mode is set.

- When Silent mode is set, is indicated in the stand-by display.
- When personalized silent mode is set, is indicated on the stand-by display.
- During the silent mode, the mode selected in the silent mode selection screen (normal silent mode or custom silent mode) is effective.
- With FOMA terminal folded, you can set Silent mode by holding down side key [▲] for over a second. If you press side key [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, or is indicated in the sub-display.

Releasing Silent mode

1 Hold down # (MANNER) for over a second in Silent mode.

Silent mode is released.

- or on the stand-by display disappears.
- With FOMA terminal folded, you can release Silent mode by holding down side key [▲] for over a second. or on the sub-display disappears.

INFORMATION

- In Side key guard ON (→ P206), Silent mode cannot be set or canceled by holding down side key [▲] for over a second with FOMA terminal folded.
- Silent mode is still effective even when there is a call arrival from a number registered in the Phonebook with PIM lock is ON in Silent mode.

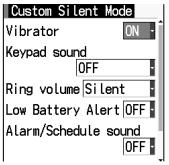
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 152 of 372

Customizing Silent Mode <Custom Silent Mode>

Default | General

You can change the operations for the silent mode.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 あ ./@ 6 は MNO 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Vibrator	Sets the operation of Vibrator for incoming calls and mails in Custom Silent Mode. • When set to "ON", incoming call in stand-by is informed by vibration depends on Vibrator setting. → P152 However, when "OFF" is set for "Vibrator", it operates in "Pattern A" for incoming subject calls/messages.
Keypad sound	Sets to Keypad sound in Custom Silent Mode.
Ring volume	Sets Ring volume or Volume for i αppli for incoming calls in Custom Silent Mode.
Low Battrey Alert	Specifies whether to activate the alarm when the battery becomes low while Custom Silent Mode is active.
Alarm/Schedule sound	Specifies whether to activate Alarm sound or Schedule alarm when the time set for the alarm or schedule arrives while Custom Silent Mode is active. • When "ON" is set, Set alarm setting applies to the operation of the alarm. → P213 Ring volume setting for Custom Silent Mode applies to Schedule alarm volume.
Sensitize microphone	Adjusts the microphone sensitivity in Custom Silent Mode.

2 Select the items press ● to set, and set the desired values.

3 Press 📖.

Custom Silent Mode is set.

4 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 153 of 372

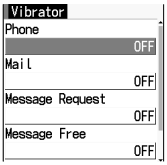
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms <Vibrator>

Default | Phone:OFF Mail:OFF Message Request:OFF Message Free:OFF Video-phone:OFF

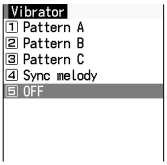
The reception of voice or video-phone calls, messages or Message R/F is indicated by vibration.

- If FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. when vibrator is set, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.
- Vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 ./@ 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.



2 Select the each item field and press ●.



Item	Description
1 Pattern A	0.5 second vibration → 0.5 second pause → 0.5 second vibration → 1.5 seconds pause (repeated)
2 Pattern B	1 second vibration → 2 seconds pause (repeated)
3 Pattern C	0.25 second vibration → 0.25 second pause (repeated)
4 Sync melody	Vibrates along with the melody according to the select ring tone setting. However, the vibration may not synchronize depending on the file specifications of downloaded melodies.
5 OFF	No vibration

- Press ◁ ▷ to select a pattern, FOMA terminal vibrates in each selected pattern for about 60 seconds. Note that vibration is not activated when "Sync melody" is selected.

3 Press 1 ./@ to 5 JKL.

4 Press ●.

The vibrator is set.

5 Press 電源.

The stand-by display reappears.

INFORMATION

- V is indicated in the stand-by display when signal incoming call is set to vibrator. If Ring volume is Silent at the same time, SV is indicated. If you press side key [▲] with FOMA terminal folded, V or SV is indicated in the sub-display.
- When Alarm for schedule/Alarm in advance start time is reached, Vibrator vibrates depending on the made "Phone" setting.
- You can set the vibrator for the following functions:
  - Phonebook entry registration → P111
  - Incoming mail → "Application" manual P203
  - Incoming messages → "Application" manual P115
- When Incoming vibrator for incoming calls or mails of Phonebook have been set, Phonebook setting has a priority, and then each group setting is given priority. → P111, P112, P130
- If the vibrator is set, it may not be activated by Flash graphic sound effects.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 154 of 372

Using Advanced Functions

Using Telephone Functions 154
Changing Sound Settings 168
Changing Displays and Key Settings 172
Restricting Mobile Phone Operations 188
Using Timer Function 209
Using Schedule Management 216
Using Other Functions 235
Multiaccess and Multitask 261

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 155 of 372

Setting ringer action not to start immediately <Ring Alert Delay>

Default	Delayed ring alert: OFF

When a voice call or video-phone call is received from a caller who is not registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or UIM phonebook, the ring alert, vibrator sub-display or incoming light action (ringer action) does not start immediately, but start after the specified time has elapsed.

- When this function is "ON", it works as follows:
  - When a call is received, you will be notified it only with the display for the period of specified time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.
  - Missed calls which end before the specified time are not displayed in the received call list. Note that, their records will remain as hidden calls. If this function is set to "OFF," all calls including the history of calls received while it is "ON" are displayed. →P70
  - Even if you receive a call from the other party saved in the phonebook during a PIM lock, this function will operate without displaying the name of the other party.
  - Up to 30 Received and Hidden calls are stored in total.
  - This function operates also when you receive an incoming call not notifying the caller ID.
- Before the specified time elapses, you can perform ordinary call receiving operation (→P68) such as answering an incoming call or replying it with Answer machine (→P79). In this case, it is stored in the ordinary received call list.
- If a call is received from the caller who is saved in the phonebook, the ringer action starts at the same time as receiving the call regardless of the function setting.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 あ ./@ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Delayed ring alert	Specifies whether to enable Ring tone delay.
Delay time (sec)	Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing.

2 Select Delayed ring alert Field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- To activate Ring alert at the reception of calls, press 2 か ABC and go to Step 4.

3 Select the delay time field, press ●, enter the time and press ●.

- The setting can be made between 1 and 99 seconds.

4 Press 📖.

The Ring tone delay is set.

INFORMATION

- When the Answer machine, Auto reply functions or Auto answering for the Video-phone settings is set, these functions starts when the specified time elapses after getting an incoming call regardless of this Ring tone delay setting. When the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set, the functions will start as well.
- If a call is received from a phone number to be rejected by Reject/Accept Call, Reject non-Reg. call, Anonymous Caller or Reject video-phone settings, the action takes priority over the settings or this function. →P155, P157, P158
- This function is applied when voice calls or video-phone calls are received.
- In case the Ring Alert Delay is set to the same minutes set for Auto Answer function, ring tone may sound on rare occasions.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 156 of 372

Rejecting/Accepting incoming calls by specifying phone numbers <Reject/Accept Call>

You can specify phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook as numbers to accept call or reject call.

- You can set Reject/Accept call for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook.
- This function is activated only when the other party sends the Caller ID.
- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject call, the FOMA terminal's response depends on the setting in Anonymous Caller regardless of this function setting.
- Combination of Caller ID Request Service (→ P289) and Anonymous Caller (→ P158) is recommended when used.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock and Keypad dial lock ON.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

Follow the steps below to specify phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook as numbers to reject/accept call.

- Reject/Accept call set for phone numbers are not enabled unless "Reject Call" or "Accept Call" is set for Reject/Accept call. → P156
- The UIM phonebook does not support Reject/Accept call.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), entry of the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204

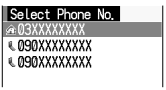
1 Press (phonebook) on the stand-by display.

The result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed.

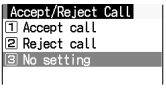
2 Select an entry to set and press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 あ ./@ 3 さ DEF.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

3 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



4 Select a phone number and press (center).



5 Press 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.

Reject/ Accept call is set.

- Press 3 さ DEF to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from the detail screen of the phonebook of the FOMA terminal, press MENU and select "Set/Check", "Settings" and "Accept/Reject Call" sequentially.
- ! is indicated to the right of the phonebook number in the phonebook Top screen for which Reject/Accept Call is set. → P125
- You can still call numbers for which Reject/Accept call has been set regardless of whether the setting is enabled.
- You can change/delete the Phonebook entries with which call rejection/acceptance is set. Since call rejection/acceptance setting has been deactivated if the phone number in the Phonebook entries have been changed, reconfigure the rejection/acceptance setting.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 157 of 372

Rejecting/Accepting calls from specified numbers

Default | Cancel settings

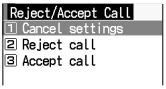
Follow the steps below to set whether to enable Reject/Accept call setting.

- Phone numbers to reject/accept must be specified in advance. → P155

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Press 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.

Reject/Accept call is set.

- Press 1 あ ./@ to cancel the setting.

INFORMATION

- If "Reject call" is set, any incoming call from a phone number set to be rejected is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone. The call is stored as a received call. If Ringing Time setting is 0 for Voice mail or Call forwarding, Voice mail or Call forwarding is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
- If "Accept call" is set, any incoming call from a phone number not set to be accepted is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone. The call is stored as a received call. If Ringing Time setting is 0 for Voicemail or Call forwarding, Voicemail or Call forwarding is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function settings.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 158 of 372

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in phonebook <Reject non-Reg. caller>

Default | OFF

You reject call from callers not registered in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or the UIM phonebook.

- When the setting is "ON", the incoming call is rejected regardless of Caller ID function ON/OFF setting when receiving the following calls: a call from the caller not registered in the phonebook, a call from the caller registered in the phonebook but does not send Caller ID, or a call from the caller registered in the phonebook of secret attribute while Secret mode is OFF. The call is stored in the received call list.
- This function cannot be used in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 6 は MNO 6 は MNO on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.

The reject non-reg. caller screen is displayed.

3 Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

Reject non-Reg. Caller is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 159 of 372

Determining how to handle incoming calls that do not notify phone number <Anonymous Caller>

Default	User unset: Disable settings Payphone: Disable settings Not support: Disable settings

You select a different method for handling incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID, depending on the reason for hide caller ID (→P62).

- For the ring tone to be sounded for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID, the setting to this function takes priority.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Select the user unset field, and press ●.

- To set the operation for incoming "Payphone" calls, select Payphone field and press ●.
- To set the operation for incoming "Not support" calls, select Not support field and press ●.

■ Enabling ring alert set with "Phone" of "Select ring tone"

Press 1 あ ./@.

■ Disconnecting without activating ring alert

Press 2 か ABC.

■ Disabling ring alert

Press 3 さ DEF.

■ Setting incoming melody

① Press 4 た GHI.

② Select Melody field and press ●.
The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.

③ Select a melody folder, press ●, select a melody from the list and press ●.
The melody is set and Anonymous Caller screen is displayed.

- The melody list → "Application" manual P285
- You can play the melody by selecting a melody and pressing ●. While a melody is playing, pressing side keys [▲▼] or ◁ ▷ adjusts the volume and pressing ◁ ▷ plays the previous or next melody. Press ● to set the melody.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 160 of 372

■ Setting Chaku-motion (Movie ringtone)

- Only videos shot by the terminal's own camera, videos shot and edited by FOMA terminal or videos/i-motion (→Chaku-motion P169) with the ring alert setting of the detailed information specified to "available" can be set as ring alert.
  →"Application" manual P273

① **Press** 5 JKL.

② **Select video/i-motion field and press ●.**
The folder list of "i-motion" is displayed.

③ **Select the folder, press ●, select video/i-motion and press ●.**
Video/i-motion is set and "Anonymous Caller" screen is displayed.
- The video/i-motion →"Application" manual P267
- You can play the video/i-motion by selecting video/i-motion and pressing 📖.

4 **Press 📖.**
The Anonymous caller is set.

INFORMATION
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function.
- When "Call Rejection" has been set, the rejected calls are stored in received calls.
- When there is an incoming video-phone call without caller ID notification, this function operates only when Call Rejection is set for the setting of the corresponding reason for hide caller ID. If Call Rejection is not set, the phone operates according to the video-phone ring tone setting.

Recording numbers preceding phone number <Prefix>

Default	009130010

By recording a number (prefix) such as "009130010" for making International calls, etc. before a phone number, you can easily add a prefix even after entering the phone number.
- You can record up to 3 prefixes.

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 5 JKL on the stand-by display.**



2 **Select the Prefix field, enter a number and press ●.**
- You can enter up to 10 digits.

3 **Press 📖.**
The prefix is recorded.

INFORMATION
- To add a prefix to a phone number when dialing →P66, P132
- "+" can be entered by holding 0 WAIT down for over a second.
- If you set a prefix containing a pause (P) or timed pause (T), you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 161 of 372

Making calls by specifying sub address <Sub Address>

Default | ON

You can set a sub address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- A sub-address is a number used to call a specific device out of multiple telephone sets and/or communication devices assigned the same phone number (for example, when multiple devices with sub-addresses are connected to an ISDN line).
  It is also used to select contents in "M-stage V live".

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 6 MNO on the stand-by display.**
Sub address screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.**
Sub address is set.

Making a call by specifying a sub address

After the phone number, press * to enter "*" (sub-address delimiter), enter sub-address, and press or . Note that the communication device or telephone set to be called must have a sub-address assigned.

INFORMATION

- If a phone number begins with "*" or an added prefix contains "*", the digits after "*" is not recognized as a sub-address even when this setting is ON.
- This function applies to both voice and video-phone calls.

Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality <Noise reduction>

Default | ON

The FOMA terminal is provided with a function (Noise reduction) for suppressing ambient noise during a call. When Noise reduction is set, the other party can hear your voice clearly during a call. It also makes it easier for you to hear the voice of the other party.

- It is recommended that this function be turned ON during normal operation.

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.**
Noise reduction screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.**
Noise reduction setting is set.

INFORMATION

- This function applies to both voice and video-phone calls.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 162 of 372

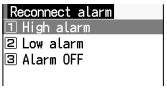
Setting alarm for reconnection <Reconnect alarm>

Default | High alarm

This function sets an alarm that is heard when signal conditions improve and a voice call or video-phone call disrupted by poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building is reconnected.

- The voice of the other party is not heard when the call is disrupted.
- The time required to make a reconnection depends on line use and signal conditions. It normally takes about 10 seconds to reconnect.
- Note that you are charged for the time used to make a reconnection (up to 10 sec).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depends on line use and signal conditions.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 2 ABC on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ to 3 DEF.

Reconnect alarm setting is set.

INFORMATION

- This function applies to both voice and video-phone calls.

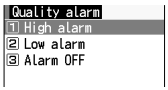
Alarm announcing that call is about to be interrupted <Quality alarm>

Default | High alarm

When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds before the call is cut off.

- If the signal conditions deteriorate rapidly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 4 GHI on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ to 3 DEF.

Quality alarm setting is set.

INFORMATION

- This function applies only to voice calls.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 163 of 372

Setting on-hold tone <On-hold Tone>

Default	On-hold tone (ENTERTAINER)

This function is used to select the melody played back when a call is placed on hold. You can set a melody not only the melody registered in FOMA terminal but the melody saved from i-mode sites or mail .

- The melody to set by this function is played while voice or video-phone calls are on-hold.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 7 PQRS 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



2 Select the on-hold tone field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 4 to reset to the default melody.

3 Set the on-hold melody.

① **Select the on-hold melody field and press ●.**
The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.

② **Select the folder, press ●, select a melody from the list and press ●.**
The melody is set and On-hold tone screen is displayed again.

- The melody list → "Application" manual P285
- You can play a melody by selecting a melody and pressing 📖. The melody is set by pressing ●. During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing side keys [▲▼], ◁ ▷ and play the previous or next melody by pressing 📷 ✉.

4 Press 📖.

The on-hold tone is set.

INFORMATION

- The sound volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.
- If you set the PIM lock after you change the on-hold tone, the On-hold tone is played except the case when you set a melody in the preinstalled Melody folder as the Selection tone.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 164 of 372

Setting hold guidance <Status Message>

Default	On-hold tone: Standard Edit message: Play

Sets a status message to be played back for the other party while the call is on hold. You can record a status message in your own voice.

- One guidance up to 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or a video-phone call is on hold, the status message set by this function is heard.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.



2 Select the on-hold tone field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 1 あ ./@ and go to Step 4 to reset to the default guidance.

3 Select "Record", press ●, speak the status message after the beep.



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

Recording will start after the message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the start of recording.
- Press ● to stop in the middle of status message recording.
- "Record" cannot be selected when a recorded date has already been registered. Select "Delete", press ●, select "Yes" and press ● to delete the recorded data.
- Select "Play" and press ● to check the recorded status message.

4 Press 📖.

The response hold guidance is set.

INFORMATION

- The guidance that "I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please wait or call back later" (in Japanese) is played for you and the other party while the call is on hold, after "Standard" is set.
- For the following cases, "Standard" status message is used even if "Personalized" is set for it:
  - When the status message is deleted after it is recorded
  - When the setting screen is closed by pressing C クリア while Status Message is being set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 165 of 372

Enabling use of dial keys to answer call <Any Key Answer>

Default | ON

This function allows you to answer a call by pressing the one of dial keys except [文字].

- Setting "ON" for Any Key Answer allows answering calls by pressing [0] to [9], [#] or [*].
- The Any key answer function applies only to a voice call. To answer a video-phone call, press [▲] (You can also answer a video-phone call by pressing [発信]. However, the substitutive image will be sent to the other party).

1 Press [MENU] [8] [6] [8] on the stand-by display.

Any Key Answer screen is displayed.

2 Press [1] or [2].

Any Key Answer setting is set.

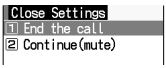
Ending call by folding FOMA terminal <Close Settings>

Default | End the call

You set to end a voice/video-phone call by folding FOMA terminal.

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.

1 Press [MENU] [8] [7] [7] on the stand-by display.



2 Press [1] or [2].

Close Settings are set.

INFORMATION

- If you fold the FOMA terminal during the call connecting an earphone/microphone with switch, handsfree devices, the operations are as follows:
  - If the sound is set to be heard from the devices being connected, a call can be continued regardless of Close Settings, and during a video-phone call, a still image/Chara-den, which has been set at "Substitute Image" in the "Image Settings:V-Phone" (→ P98) will be shown to the other party. When your image is sent with a frame around, the frame will be removed and the other party will see a still image/Chara-den set at the "Substitute Image" in the "Image Settings:V-Phone" (→ P98).
- When "Continue(mute)" is set, folding the FOMA terminal while talking through the standard microphone or by the speakerphone function mutes the microphone.
- When "Continue(mute)" is set, folding the FOMA terminal while talking via video-Phone sends the substitute image (→ P98) to the other party. Opening/closing the FOMA terminal while talking via video-phone sending frame cancels the sending of the frame and the substitute image is sent to the other party. However, opening/closing the FOMA terminal while talking via video-phone sending still image does not stop sending the still image to the other party. → P96

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 166 of 372

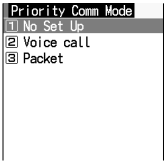
Setting screen to be displayed when an incoming call is received during call or packet communication <Priority Comm Mode>

Default | No Set Up

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- A screen change caused by this function does not suspend the call or packet communication.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 9 WXYZ on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ to 3 DEF.

Priority Comm Mode setting is set.

- To display the last image received without giving display priority, press 1 ./@.

Screen displayed

The following screen is displayed depends on the settings.

- During a Voice call

Setting	Mail reception	Incoming packet other than i-mode packet
No Set Up	Screen displayed during a voice call	Screen displayed during a voice call
Voice call	Screen displayed during a voice call	Screen displayed during a voice call
Packet	Screen showing mail reception result	Screen displayed during incoming packet data

* The screen displayed during incoming calls depends on Arrival Call Act. → P294

- In i-mode

Setting	Incoming call	Mail reception
No Set Up	Screen displayed while receiving a voice call	Screen displayed in i-mode
Voice call	Screen displayed while receiving a voice call	Screen displayed in i-mode
Packet	Screen displayed in i-mode	Screen displayed in i-mode

* Packet communications in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communications. → P341

- During packet communication in modes other than i-mode

The incoming call screen is displayed during an incoming call regardless of this function settings. Mail cannot be received. Incoming packets from modes other than i-mode also cannot be received. → P341

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 167 of 372

Checking call duration/total calls duration

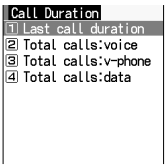
The duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication is checked. The total duration of calls/communication up to the present are also checked.

Checking duration of the last call <Call Duration>

Display an approximate duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication.

- The duration of the last call/communication that took place is displayed, regardless of whether it was outgoing or incoming.
- The displayed durations are approximation and do not represent the accurate durations.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 4 た GHI 1 あ ./@ on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 あ ./@.

The approximate duration of the last call/communication is displayed.

Checking total calls duration <Total calls duration>

Display the total durations of the voice, video-phone calls and data communication up to the present respectively.

- If operation of "Reset Call Duration" (→ P167) was performed in the past, the approximate durations of the total calls made up to the present after the reset are displayed.
- The displayed durations are approximation and do not represent the accurate durations.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 4 た GHI 1 あ ./@ on the stand-by display.

Call duration screen is displayed.

2 Press 2 か ABC to 4 た GHI.

The approximate duration of total calls/communication is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When the total duration of calls/communication exceeds 9999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.
- The duration of packet communication is not included.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 168 of 372

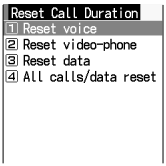
Resetting call duration <Reset Call Duration>

Reset the total calls durations.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 4 GHI 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Press 1 ./@ to 4 GHI.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to reset.

- To reset all of the total calls duration information, press 4 GHI.

4 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The total calls duration is reset.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 169 of 372

Changing FOMA terminal ring tone <Select ring tone>

Default	Phone: Melody/着信音 1(Tone 1)　Mail: ON/着信音 1(Tone 1) Message Request: ON/着信音 1(Tone 1)　Message Free: ON/着信音 1(Tone 1) On-hold tone: On-hold tone (ENTERTAINER)　Video-phone: Melody/ハープ (Harp)

Sets melodies as ring tones or to announce the reception of mail or message R/F. Also sets melodies which sounds when calls are on hold.
You can also make setting to play video/i-motion on the screen displayed for incoming voice or video-phone calls (Chaku-motion).

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 あ ./@ 1 あ ./@ on the stand-by display.



2 Select the item to set and press ○ to set the value.

■ Setting phone/video-phone

Press 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.

You can select the following items:

Item	Description
Melody	Sets the melody. → P110
i-motion	Sets the video/i-motion. → P107
OFF	Sets not to sound the ring alert.

■ Setting mail and message R/F

Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

You can select the following items:

Item	Description
ON	Sets the melody. → P110
OFF	Sets not to sound the ring alert.

■ Setting On-Hold Tone

Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

You can select the following items:

Item	Description
Selection tone	Sets the melody. → P110
On-hold tone	Sets to sound preinstalled sound. (ENTERTAINER).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 170 of 372

3 Press (OK).

The ring tone is set.

INFORMATION

- Ring tone can also be set for the following functions:
  - Save in phonebook → P110, P112
  - Incoming Msg. Settings → "Application" manual P203
  - Incoming Msg. Alert → "Application" manual P115
- When a call or mail is received from a party registered in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, the ring tone set for the phonebook is activated.
- After the ring tone for voice calls/video-phone calls is set to i-motion, if it is set to "OFF", it will play only images without ring tone.

Ring tone priority

- An incoming call with caller ID notification is sounded according to the following priority order:
  ① FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook setting
  * An incoming call from a caller registered only in the UIM phonebook is announced depending on the select ring tone settings.
  ② Each group setting in FOMA terminal (Terminal)
  ③ Ring tone setting
  * When "i-motion" is set for the ring alert, the image is played along with the video/i-motion sound. If the video/i-motion only contains sounds, however, only the sounds are played and the default incoming image is displayed.
- When no caller ID notification is sent, the tone for incoming voice call depends on Anonymous Caller settings and for incoming video-phone call depends on Video-phone settings of Select ring tone.
  Note: In cases other than above, an incoming call depends on the Select ring tone settings.

Chaku-motion (Movie ringtone)

The video recorded by your own terminal, the recorded and edited video or downloaded i-motion for which the ring tone setting is set to "available" can be set as a Chaku-motion.
Whether the Chaku-motion can be set or not is checked by referring the detailed information (→ "Application" manual P273) of each video/i-motion.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 171 of 372

Melody list

The following melodies are provided in the "Preinstalled" folder by default.
Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display end in "...".

Melody name	Composer
着信音 1 (Tone 1)	————
着信音 2 (Tone 2)	
着信音 3 (Tone 3)	
着信音 4 (Tone 4)	
着信音 5 (Tone 5)	
着信音 6 (Tone 6)	
タッチ (Touch)	HIROAKI SERIZAWA
VALENTI	KAZUHIRO HARA
未来予想図 II (Forecast chart in the future II)	MIWA YOSHIDA
きらきら星 (Twinkle star)	WOLFGANG AMADEUS MOZART
大きな古時計 (Grandfather's clock)	HENRY CLAY WORK
静かな湖畔 (Quiet lakeside)	Swiss folk song
一週間 (One week)	Russian folk song
アイーダより凱旋行進曲 (Triumph March from Aida)	GIUSEPPE VERDI
英雄ポロネーズ (Polonaise-Heroique)	FREDERIC FRANCOIS CHOPIN
愛の挨拶 (Salut d'amour)	EDWARD ELGAR
紅葉 (Maple)	TATSUYUKI TAKANO
展覧会の絵 (Picture at an Exhibition)	MODEST PETROVICH MUSSORGSKY
ENTERTAINER	SCOTT JOPLIN
目覚まし時計 1 (Alarm clock 1)	————
目覚まし時計 2 (Alarm clock 2)	
癒やし (Relax)	
残念 (Unfortunately)	
モデム音 (Modem tone)	
観察 (Observation)	
ファンファーレ 1 (Fanfare 1)	
ファンファーレ 2 (Fanfare 2)	
ハープ (Harp)	
黒電話 (Phone)	
電話かよ (Gosh! phone call)	
TV 電話かよ (Gosh! video-phone call)	
メールかよ (Gosh! I got a message)	
もう時間かよ (Gosh! It's time)	
漫才 (Comedy)	
感心 (Admiration)	
もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost schedule time)	
時間になりました (Set time arrives)	

License number: T-0450158

JASRAC

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 172 of 372

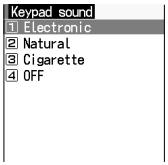
Selecting keypad sound <Keypad sound>

Default | Electronic

This function allows you to confirm key presses.

- The Keypad sound is not heard in the following cases.
  - When this function is turned "OFF"
  - When the call is in progress (You will hear the tone signal (DTMF) from the earpiece when you press the dial keys.)
  - When Silent mode is ON (In the Custom Silent Mode, depending on its setting.)
  - When an i αppli is started up (Press TASK to hear the keypad sound.)

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 ./@ 4 GHI on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ to 4 GHI.

Keypad sound is set.

- To disable keypad sound, press 4 GHI.
- Pressing ◁ ▷ to select keypad sound enables the selected sound as keypad sound. Press ● to set keypad sound.

INFORMATION

- Also the following sounds are not heard when the Keypad sound is OFF:
  - Sound heard when battery level is indicated
  - End alert → "Application" manual P304
- Keypad sound volume is tied to Volume setting. → P72
- Keypad sound for the side keys [▲▼] is not heard, regardless of the setting of this function.

Setting tone for start/end of charging <Charge Alert Setting>

Default | ON

Ring alert is set at the start and end of charging.

- The charge alert does not sound when Silent mode or Driving mode is ON.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 1 ./@ 9 WXYZ on the stand-by display.

Charge alert screen is displayed.

2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

Charge alert is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 173 of 372

Changing stand-by display <Stand-by display>

Default | Standard image: WaterView

You can change the stand-by display image with another image, i-motion or calendar. You can also set i αppli stand-by display or Clock settings and various information display settings (custom stand-by display).

- Setting image
- Setting i αppli stand-by display → P174
- Setting clock display → P175
- Setting video/i-motion → P173
- Setting calendar → P175
- Setting custom stand-by display → P176
- Canceling settings other than image settings → P179

- Depending on an image, video/i-motion or i αppli setting for the stand-by display may be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used in downloading the program.
- Set image, Set i-motion and Set i αppli cannot be selected when PIM lock is ON. Stand-by display when PIM lock is ON → P202
- When All lock is set, a stand-by display set is cancelled and the default image is temporarily displayed. When All lock is canceled, a stand-by display set is displayed again.
- When Privacy Mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for i αppli), you cannot set i αppli stand-by display.

Setting image

Images preinstalled, saved from i-mode sites or mail or shot with FOMA terminal are set in the stand-by display. Animations, Create animation and continuous shots can also be set.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 2 か ABC 1 あ ./@ 1 あ ./@ on the stand-by display.

The list of "Image Folders" is displayed.

2 Select a folder, press ●, select an image from the image list and press ●.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the image.

- Image list can be read in the same way as "Image". → "Application" manual P243
- You can display the image by selecting an image and pressing 📷. For Animation, Create animation and continuous shots, displaying image automatically plays the image. You can display the previous or next image by pressing 📷 i α. Press ● to set the image.
- If the selected image can be zoomed, the image display style selection screen is displayed.

3 Select "YES" and press ●.

Image is set.

- When the image display style selection screen is displayed, select "Yes (Same size)" and press ● to maintain the image size, or select "Yes (Large size)" and press ● to enlarge the image to the screen size to display on the stand-by display.
- If i αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed after Step 3 asking whether to cancel the i αppli stand-by display. To cancel the i αppli stand-by display, select "YES" and press ●.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 174 of 372

INFORMATION

- If an animation, Create animation, continuous shots or Flash graphics is set in the stand-by display, it is played when FOMA terminal is opened during stand-by, (クリア) or (電源) is pressed or stand-by display reappears. Pressing (クリア) while playing brings it to a pause and pressing (クリア) again resumes the playing. Pressing (電源) while playing stops the playing and pressing (電源) again starts the playing from the top.
- In case no number of play times is set for animation, or the number of play times is set to 16 or more, it will play up to 16 times at maximum repeatedly.
- When Flash graphics are set as the stand-by display, playing is brought to a pause after a certain period of time.
- If zoom display is set for animation, the display may be distorted.
- Any of the images and videos/i-motion stored in the miniSD memory card which is moved or copied to the FOMA terminal, can be set as the stand-by display. → "Application" manual P310
- The following images are provided in "Preinstalled" folder by default as stand-by display size images.


WaterView


Marten


Flower


Carbon


Strawberry


WaterRing


Bubble

Setting video/i-motion

Videos with FOMA terminal or i-motion downloaded from sites can be set on the stand-by display.

1 Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (2 か ABC) (1 あ ./@) (2 か ABC) on the stand-by display.

The folder list of "motion" is displayed.

2 Select a folder, press ●, select the video/i-motion and press ●.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the video/i-motion.

- The video/i-motion list → "Application" manual P267
- You can play the video/i-motion by selecting a video/i-motion and pressing (画像).
- If the selected video/i-motion can be zoomed, the video/i-motion display style selection screen is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 175 of 372

3 Select "YES" and press ●.

The video/i-motion is set.

- When the video/i-motion display style selection screen is displayed, select "YES (Same size)" and press ● to maintain the image size, or select "YES (Large size)" and press ● to enlarge the image to the screen size to display on the stand-by display.
- If i αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i αppli stand-by display after Step 3. To cancel the i αppli stand-by display, select "YES" and press ●.

INFORMATION

- When you set i-motion as the stand-by display, the first image is displayed. The set video/i-motion is played when クリア is pressed. During playing, press クリア or 電源 to stop it. When voice and music are included, they will be played with images. The sound volume depends on the setting of "i-motion". → "Application" manual P282
- Voice and music may not sound in the Silent mode.
- Press side keys [▲▼] to adjust the volume during video/i-motion playback.
- Some video/i-motion may not be possible to set in the stand-by display.
  i-motion that can be played → "Application" manual P269
- You cannot use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions of subtitle links in video/i-motion set in the stand-by display.
- Any of the images stored in the miniSD memory card, by moving or copying it to the FOMA terminal, can be set as the stand-by image. → "Application" manual P310
- The following videos are stored in "preinstalled" folder by default.


Chicken


Dance

Setting i αppli stand-by display

Software is set on the i αppli stand-by display if compatible.

- When you set software that performs communication by connecting to the network, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc. Some software and settings communicate automatically.
  → "Application" manual P82
- The following software provided at manufacture is compatible with the i αppli stand-by display:
  - Dimo 絵文字メール (EmojiMail)
  - フリーセル (FreeCell)
  - マイリモコン (My Remocon)
- Only one piece of supported software can be set for the i αppli stand-by display.
- When i αppli stand-by display is canceled (→ "Application" manual P84), the stand-by display is set back to the previous one.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 2 か ABC 1 あ ./@ 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.



A list of software compatible with the i αppli stand-by display appears.

- The i αppli stand-by display list is viewed in the same way as the i αppli software list.
  → "Application" manual P67

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 176 of 372

2 **Select a software and press ●.**

A confirmation screen is displayed to set the software.

3 **Select "YES" and press ●.**

i αppli stand-by display is set.

INFORMATION

- [ext] or [sub] is indicated when the i αppli stand-by display is displayed.
- If you press (クリア) during i αppli stand-by display, you can switch to the set software display for operations and settings. → "Application" manual P83
- In PIM lock ON (→ P202), i αppli stand-by display is not displayed but a stand-by display set before is displayed. Stand-by display when PIM lock is ON → P202
- When Privacy Mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for i αppli), if you activate Privacy Mode after the i αppli stand-by display is set, the image set before is displayed. If Privacy mode is turned OFF, i αppli stand-by display will reappear.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for i αppli) during i αppli stand-by display, i αppli stand-by display is forced to quit with a previously set stand-by display to be shown. If Privacy mode is turned OFF, i αppli stand-by display will reappear.
- Due to the configuration of a software information setup, it may sometimes be impossible to connect to a network or to use icon information (such as unread mail or battery level). → "Application" manual P82

Setting calendar

Setting is made to display calendar on the stand-by display.

- If the date and time have not been set, the calendar is not displayed on the stand-by display.

1 **Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (2 か ABC) (1 あ ./@) (4 た GHI) on the stand-by display.**

A confirmation screen is displayed to set the calendar.

2 **Select "YES" and press ●.**

The calendar on the stand-by display is set.

- If i αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed after Step 2 asking whether to cancel the i αppli stand-by display. To cancel the i αppli stand-by display, select "YES" and press ●.

INFORMATION

- National holidays are not displayed.
- If you set an animation, Create animation, continuous shots or Flash graphics to the image setting, the information is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.
- The month and day-of-week display of the calendar depends on the Select Language setting. → P54
  The display format depends on the display mode of the calendar mode setting. → P216
- Canceling to display calender → P179

Setting clock display

Default	Clock size: Large Time format: 24 hour Day: Japanese

Whether to display clock on the stand-by display or the clock view size is specified.

1 **Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (2 か ABC) (1 あ ./@) (5 な JKL) on the stand-by display.**

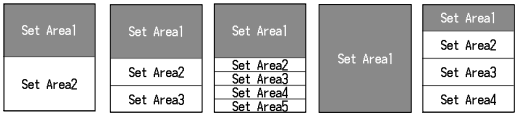
- Operation procedure → P187

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 177 of 372

Setting custom stand-by display

The stand-by display is divided into several areas to display unread mail, missed calls (history of unanswered calls) and other information.

- You can select any of the following 5 patterns.

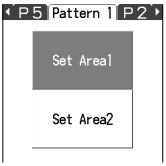


Pattern 1 Pattern 2 Pattern 3 Pattern 4 Pattern 5

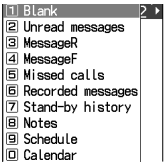
- You can select the following information to be displayed in each area:
  - Blank - Unread messages* - MessageR* - MessageF* - Missed calls
  - Recorded messages* - Stand-by history - Notes* - Schedule* - Calendar

  *: You cannot select in PIM lock.
- Calendar cannot be set for a smaller area of half the size of the screen (Set Area 2 of Pattern 2, etc.)

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 2 か ABC 1 あ ./@ 6 は MNO on the stand-by display.



2 Press ◁▷ to select the pattern, select the area and press ●.



3 Press 0 わ〜ん 記号 to 9 ら WXYZ.

The information to be displayed on the selected area is set and the pattern selection display appears.

Setting Notes

① Press 8 や TUV.

A list of recorded notes is displayed.

- Record notes you wish to view later. → P251

② Select a note to display and press ●.



- You can view a note by pressing メール. The list of notes is displayed when クリア is pressed after displaying the content of a note.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 178 of 372

4 **Press .**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the custom stand-by display.

5 **Select "YES" and press .**

The custom stand-by display is set.

- If the i αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i αppli stand-by display after Step 5. To cancel the i αppli stand-by display, select "YES" and press .

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302
- If you set an animation, Create animation, continuous shots or Flash graphic to the image setting, the information is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.
- If you register the current schedule and date-straddled long-term schedule in the same day, the long-term schedule will appear on the custom stand-by display.
  However, if the current schedule is set to All day or it does not reach the start time of the current schedule, both schedules are displayed on the custom stand-by display.

Checking display information of a custom stand-by display

The custom stand-by display appears as follows, if you set the custom stand-by display.



<Unread messages>



<Schedule>


<Calendar>

You can select information of stand-by display to display detailed information (Focus mode).

1 **Press on the stand-by display.**



Information displayed at the top (or the left most) on the display is selected.

2 **Select an area and press .**

Screen on the selected information is displayed.

- When there is more than one area, press and select an area.

3 **Select the information to check on the respective displays and press .**

Confirm detail information.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 179 of 372

Area information

The numbers of information entries and lines displayed depend on the area size. For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.

- **Unread messages**
  The unread mail list is displayed starting with the most recent item. The reception date and time and the first part of the subject are displayed.
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the Inbox folder list.
  → "Application" manual P151, P183

- **MessageR and MessageF**
  The unread message R/F list is displayed starting with the most recent item. The reception date and time and the first part of the title are displayed.
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the message R or F list.
  → "Application" manual P117

- **Missed calls**
  The missed call list starting with the most recent one is displayed. The date and time of incoming calls and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed.
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the received call list. → P70

- **Recorded messages**
  Record message list is displayed starting with the most recent item. The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or name is displayed when registered in the phonebook) are displayed.
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the record message list. → P82

- **Stand-by history**
  The following information items are displayed starting with the most recent item. An icon that indicates type of the information is indicated at the head.
  - Icon definition
     : Unread messages
     : Missed calls
     : MessageR
     : Recorded messages
     : MessageF
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the latest information.

- **Notes**
  The beginning of the note is displayed.
  Select an area and press ◯ to display the note. When all the memo is deleted after setting, Edit note screen is displayed. → P251

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 180 of 372

• **Schedule**

Scheduled entries for the day that would be started later are displayed starting with the one of the earliest time.

- Icon, date and time and the beginning of the schedule are displayed.
- The date-straddled long-term schedule including the current day is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed. In case of a long-term schedule whose start time has elapsed, it is displayed as "start date 〜" and is listed after today's items (in order of start time).
- If any Schedule set for all day is for the current day, "AllDay" is displayed without the indication of the start time.

Select an area and press ● to display the head part of the schedule. If the schedule is not set, the calendar is displayed. → P216, P232

• **Calendar**

Calendar is displayed.

Select an area and press ● to display the schedule calendar. → P216

INFORMATION

- When PIM is locked, information on the area with Unread messages, Message R/F, Recoded messages, Notes or Schedule set is not displayed. In the area for which stand-by history is set, only missed calls are displayed.
- When "OFF" is set for Call logs settings, information on the area with Missed calls set is not displayed. In the area for which stand-by history is set, missed calls are not displayed.
- If Secret mode is not set, any incoming call or any message recording from a party with secret attribute set in Phonebook appears as a phone number without name indication in the area with Missed calls, Stand-by history or Recorded messages set. Schedules with secret attribute set are not displayed in the area with Schedule set.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), any call or any message recording from a party saved in Phonebook appears as a phone number without name indication in the area with Missed calls, Stand-by history set or Recorded messages. When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for message), any Unread message is not displayed in the area set with Unread messages or Stand-by history.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Hide secrecy data" is set for Mail), Unread messages other than in the privacy attribute folder are displayed.

Canceling settings other than image settings

You can cancel i-motion, i αppli stand-by display, calendar on the stand-by display and custom stand-by display settings to display an image in the stand-by display.

- If an image was previously set, that image is displayed. Otherwise, the default image is displayed as the stand-by display after you cancel the setting.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 1 ./@ 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen to cancel the setting is displayed.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting is canceled and the stand-by display setting screen is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 181 of 372

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls/mails <Call Image>

Images can be set respectively for incoming, outgoing calls, mails, and message retrieval.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.
- If an image whose horizontal vertical and (or vertical and horizontal) size exceeds 640 x 480 (dots) is set, it may take time to display images.
- Flash graphics are not allowed for Call Image.

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls <Call image>

Default	Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image

Images to be displayed for incoming and outgoing calls can be set. If the other party setting can be made to display the image registered in the phonebook data.

- If you select "Select 🚹 motion" in the Anonymous Caller (→ P158) and the other party does not disclose their caller ID, Call Image operates by following Anonymous Caller setting regardless of how you attempt to set this function.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 2 ABC 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Show portrait	Specifies whether to display still image or video saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook. • Setting "ON" displays the image saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook. • Setting "OFF" displays the image set for "Show image".
Show image	Specifies the display image when an incoming/outgoing call of a party not saved in the FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook or "Show portrait" is set to OFF. • Setting "Standard image" disables "List images" setting.
List images	Select image to display. • How to view the image list → "Application" manual P243

2 Select an item to set, and press ● to set it.

3 Press 📖.

Call image is set.

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing mails and inquiries <Outgoing or Incoming Mail Image/Retrieving image>

Default	Show image: Standard image

Images to be displayed for incoming and outgoing mails and for message retrieval can be set.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

Call image screen is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 182 of 372

2 **Press 2 ABC to 4 GHI.**

- Press 2 ABC to set the outgoing mail image.
- Press 3 DEF to set the incoming mail image.
- Press 4 GHI to set the retrieving image.

3 **Select the image and register.**

The procedure that follows is the same as for "Show image" and "List images" of "Call image". → P180

INFORMATION

- If the image for the mail send screen has been changed, the image set for sending i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS) is displayed.
- If the image for Incoming Mail and Message Retrieval has been changed, the image is displayed for i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) and Message R/F in common.
- Setting Create animation or continuous shots displays the first image but is not played.

Changing display colors <Color Scheme>

Default | AquaBlue

This function is used to change the display colors.

- You can select any of 24 display colors.

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 3 DEF on the stand-by display.**



- The color selection screen has 3 pages. Press ◁ ▷ to switch the screens.
- Press 📷 i-α to select a type of color, and the screen is displayed in the selected color.

2 **Press 1 ./@ to 9 WXYZ.**

A color is selected and the Color Scheme is set.

INFORMATION

- Changing Color Scheme does not affect the background of the site displays, etc.
- Changing Color Scheme does not affect the color of the sub-display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 183 of 372

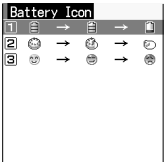
Changing battery level icon <Battery Icon>

Default

This function is used to change the icon of the battery level in the stand-by display and the sub-display.

- You can select one of 3 types of icon of the battery.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 4 GHI on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ to 3 DEF.

Battery Icon is set.

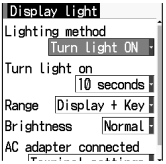
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 184 of 372

Setting display and key light <Display light>

Default	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

These functions set the lighting for the display and keys.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 5 JKL on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Lighting method	Sets the manner of lighting. • Setting "Turn light ON" maintains lighting for the set time. • Setting "Turn light OFF" disables "Turn light on", "Range" and "Brightness" settings.
Turn light on	Sets Lighting time.
Range	Sets whether to lighting the display only or both the display and the keys.
Brightness	Sets the brightness of the display and keys when lit.
AC adapter connected	Sets whether to always light the display while the AC adapter or DC adapter is connected or to light according to the settings above. • Setting "Always on" light the display at "High brightness". • When "Terminal settings" is set, the display is performed according to the "Lighting method" setting.

2 Select an item to set press ○ and set the desired value.

3 Press ▣.

The display light is set.

INFORMATION

- If you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for 5 minutes when the Turn light on setting is other than Always, the display switches to Power saving mode and the light is turned off automatically. However, the display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 185 of 372

Setting sub-display <Sub-Display>

You can set the display style of sub-display.

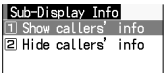
Setting sub-display for incoming calls <Sub-Display Info>

Default	Show callers' info

Sets whether to display the other party's phone number, mail address and name on the sub-display when a call or mail is received.

- The other party's name or phone number is displayed on the sub-display when FOMA terminal is being folded.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 6 MNO 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

Sub-Display Info setting is set.

INFORMATION

- "Hide callers' info" is set, only status such as "Calling" is displayed in the sub-display. In this case, the standard image is displayed on the sub-display.
- Name displays →P102

Setting image to be displayed on sub-display <Sub-display format>

Default	Stand-by image: Standard image1 Calling image: Standard image Incoming mail img: Standard image Clock display: Japanese large Clock display format: 24 hour

Set the stand-by image, calling/incoming image, incoming mail image, clock display, and clock display format to be displayed in the sub-display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 186 of 372

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 6 MNO 2 ABC on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Stand-by image	Sets the image shown in the stand-by display in the sub-display. • You can select preinstalled image by setting it as "Standard image". • By setting it up as "Selected image", you can select one from images taken in from sites or mail or from still images taken by the FOMA terminal. How to see the list of images → "Application" manual P243
Calling image	Sets the image shown in the sub-display at the time of calling. • By setting it as "Standard image", preinstalled image is displayed. • By setting it as "Sync with display", the same image of the main screen is displayed during voice call, video-phone call, or 64K data communication.
Incoming mail img	Sets the image shown in the sub-display at the time of mail arrival. • By setting it as "Standard image", preinstalled image is displayed. • By setting it as "Sync with display", the same image as in the main display will be displayed at the time of mail arrival.
Clock display	Sets whether to display clock. Also set the size of the clock if it is shown in Japanese.  <Japanese large>  <Japanese small>  <English>
Clock display format	Sets whether to show clock in 12/24 hour format.  <12 hour>  <24 hour>

2 Select the item to set and press ● to set the item.

3 Press ▭.

Sub-display is set.

INFORMATION

- The standard image is displayed as stand-by image when PIM lock is ON, even though a selected image has been set. The Selected image is displayed again when PIM lock is OFF. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even if PIM lock is ON.
- When calling/incoming image or incoming mail image is set as "Sync with display", the first one frame is displayed when the main display image is set as animation, Create animation or continuous shots and the standard image when set as i-motion for the ring tone.
- The following standard images 1-4 are provided by default as stand-by display screen size images.






Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 187 of 372

Changing font setting <Font Settings>

Default | Standard

The character size can be changed for entering characters by full-screen entry.

- You can select a character size from 5 types.



<Minimum>



<Small>



<Standard>



<Large>



<Maximum>

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.



- Press ◁ ▷ and select a character size to display character size samples.

2 Press one of 1 .,/@ to 5 JKL.

The font is set.

INFORMATION

- This function does not change the character size for mail messages.
  → "Application" manual P198
- The character size is changed also when displaying i-mode and Message R/F. In that case, however, if a character is set to "Minimum", the "Small" character size is set; if set to "Maximum", the "Large" character size is set.
- The character size is not be changed when the method in which characters are entered directly by selecting entry field (in-line entry) is used. → P303

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 188 of 372

Setting clock display <Clock Display Format>

Default	Clock size: Large	Time format: 24 hour	Day : Japanese

Whether to display clock or the size of clock display on the stand-by display or sub-display can be set. The display format (24 hour/12 hour) and the language to use to display the day of week for the stand-by display and sub-display can also be set.

- Stand-by display can also be used to set clock display. → P175



<Small Clock>



<Large Clock>


<No Clock>

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 5 JKL 4 GHI on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Clock size	Specifies whether to display clock. Also sets the size of the clock when displayed.
Time format	Specifies whether to use the 12 hour or 24 hour format to display clock.
Day	Specifies whether to use Japanese or English to display the day of week. • The display depends on the Select Language setting if "Terminal settings" is set. → P54

2 Select the item to set and press ● to set the item.

3 Press 📖.

Clock display format is set.

INFORMATION

- Stand-by clock cannot be set to "Large" in the following cases. Making one of the following settings after setting "Large" for Stand-by clock makes the stand-by clock display small.
  - Video/i-motion or calendar is set as the stand-by image.
  - During i αppli stand-by display.
  - Custom stand-by display Pattern 4 or 5 is set.
  - Custom stand-by display Pattern 1, 2 or 3 is set and other than "Blank" or "Set Area1" is set for Area 1 setting.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 189 of 372

Security code

Some FOMA terminal functions require entry of security codes. There are 4 security codes: terminal security code for various functions, network security code for use in services to which you subscribe, PIN1/PIN2 code for the UIM and password for i-mode.

- The digits entered on the security code entry screens are masked with "✳" for security.
- Please be notified that, if any security code or password is lost, the subscriber needs to bring FOMA terminal and identification (driver's license, etc.) to our sales office to prevent unauthorized changing of codes by any third party.
- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code to a code of your own choice after the completion of the application for subscription. Be sure to remember the set terminal security code.

Terminal security code

The terminal security code entry screen is displayed when you attempt to use one of the following functions. Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) with dial keys and press ○ for authentication. The default security code is **"0000"**, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. → P189

- Caller ID Settings
- All lock
- ＩＣ card lock
- Secret Code
- Reset call duration
- Change security code
- Change PIN1 code
- Change PIN2 code
- Reset
- Send all/receive all
- Software Update
- Memory reject call
- Reject/Accept call
- PIM lock
- Secret mode
- Remote lock
- Keypad dial lock
- Anonymous caller
- Delete all of each function*
- Change User information
- Format miniSD card
- Fingerprint settings
- Privacy mode
- Reset custom menu

*: Not displayed depending on the function.

When your fingerprint has been registered for setting, the fingerprint authentication screen is displayed, which allows use of fingerprint authentication instead of security code entry. → P194

Press (MENU) to switch the terminal security code entry screen.

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered five times consecutively after the FOMA terminal is turned ON, FOMA terminal power is automatically turned OFF. When the turn the power ON again or entering of terminal security code succeeds, the number of serial failure is reset.

Network security code

4-digit security code, which will be required for some network services or e-sites, can be pre-registered on your own terms when making a FOMA terminal contract. The network security code cannot be changed on your FOMA terminal or from any other phones.

PIN1 code and PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM. Both codes are set to "0000" at the subscribed to the FOMA. You can change this to your own code. → P191, P192

i-mode password

A password is required to store or delete sites in My Menu, apply to and cancel message service or i-mode pay sites, or make mail settings. This password is set to "0000" by default. The user can change the password. → "Application" manual P34
In addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers (IP's).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 190 of 372

Changing terminal security code <Change security code>

Default | 0000

The default or current setting terminal security code is changed.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 6 MNO on the stand-by display and enter the current terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



- Enter the current terminal security code.

2 Enter the new terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) and press ●.

The new terminal security code is entered.

- The terminal security code entered is masked with "✳".

3 Select New security code-check field, enter again the security code entered in Step 2 and press ●.

The new terminal security code to check is entered.

- The terminal security code entered is masked with "✳".

4 Press 📖.

The terminal security code is changed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 191 of 372

Setting PIN code

PIN1 code is 4 to 8 digits security code used to protect your FOMA terminal from misuse.
The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code used when using or requesting the issue of a user certificate.

- The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be changed. →P191, P192

Setting to require entry of PIN1 code when turning power ON <PIN1 code ON/OFF>

Default | OFF

You can set the terminal to request entry of the PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is turned on.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 5 JKL 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

PIN1 code ON/OFF screen is displayed.

2 Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.



- To make setting not to require entry of PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is powered ON, press 2 か ABC.

3 Enter the PIN1 code and press ●.

PIN1 code ON is set.

- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" when shipped.

INFORMATION

- If Alarm Auto Power ON setting is set to "ON", schedule alarm or alarm sounds taking precedence over PIN1 code input screen display when the power is automatically turned ON as specified in the alarm setting or schedule alarm. Press 電源 to end the schedule alarm or alarm, then the PIN1 code input screen is displayed.

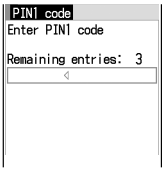
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 192 of 372

Entering PIN1 code

Subscribed to FOMA | 0000

When "ON" is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, powering the FOMA on displays the PIN1 code entry screen. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

1 Hold down (電源) for over 2 seconds to turn ON the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is turned OFF.



2 Enter the PIN1 code and press ( ).



This icon is shown while the UIM is read and disappears when reading is completed.

- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press ( ) to display the PUK entry screen. → P193

Changing PIN1 code <Change PIN1 code>

Subscribed to FOMA | 0000

- To change the PIN1 code, set first the PIN1 code ON/OFF setting to "ON". → P190

1 Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (3 さ DEF) (5 な JKL) (1 あ ./@) on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Enter the current PIN1 code and press ( ).

The current PIN1 code is entered.

- The PIN1 code entered is masked with "✳".

4 Select the New PIN1 code field, enter the new PIN1 code (4 to 8 digits) and press ( ).

The new PIN1 code is entered.

- The PIN1 code entered is masked with "✳".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 193 of 372

5 Select the New PIN1 code - check field, enter the same PIN1 code in Step 4 and press ○.

The new PIN1 code to check is entered.

- The PIN1 code entered is masked with "✳".

6 Press 📖.

The PIN code is changed.

- If the current PIN1 code was not correctly entered, a confirmation screen of authentication failure is displayed. Press ○ and enter the current PIN1 code correctly. If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, lock is automatically set. Press ○ to display the PUK entry screen. → P193

Changing PIN2 code <Change PIN2 code>

Subscribed to FOMA	0000

- The PIN2 code is used for using or requesting the issue of a user certificate.
  → "Application" manual P24, P29, P59, P61

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 5 JKL 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.

PIN2 code changing screen is displayed.

3 Enter the current PIN2 code and press ○.

The current PIN2 code is entered.

- The PIN2 code entered is masked with "✳".

4 Select the New PIN2 code field, enter the new PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) and press ○.

The new PIN2 code is entered.

- The PIN2 code entered is masked with "✳".

5 Select the New PIN2 code - check field, enter the same PIN2 code in Step 4 and press ○.

The new PIN2 code to check is entered.

- The PIN2 code entered is masked with "✳".

6 Press 📖.

The PIN2 code is changed.

- If the current PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a confirmation screen of authentication failure is displayed. Press ○ and enter the current PIN2 code correctly. If a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, lock is automatically set. Press ○ to display the PUK entry screen. → P193

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 194 of 372

Unblocking PIN

If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, lock is automatically set. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

- Operations for PIN1 and PIN2 codes are the same.

<Example> Unblocking PIN1

1 Press ( ) on the confirmation screen of the PUK.



2 Enter the PUK (8 digits) and press ( ).

PUK is entered.

- The PUK entered is masked with "✳".
- The user is notified of the PUK at purchase.
- Contact our sales office if you forget the PUK or you cannot unblock the PIN lock.

3 Select the New PIN1 code field, enter the new PIN1 code (4 to 8 digits) and press ( ).

The new PIN1 code is entered.

- The PIN1 code entered is masked with "✳".

4 Select the New PIN1 code - check field, enter the same PIN1 code in Step 3 and press ( ).

The new PIN1 code to check is entered.

- The PIN1 code entered is masked with "✳".

5 Press ( ).

The PIN1 code is changed.

- If the PUK code was not correctly entered, a confirmation screen of authentication failure is displayed. Press ( ) and enter the PUK code correctly.

INFORMATION

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, FOMA terminal lock is automatically set. Press ( ) to return to the stand-by display. However, operations involving signal sending and receiving such as making phone calls and exchanging messages become unavailable.
- PUK → P44

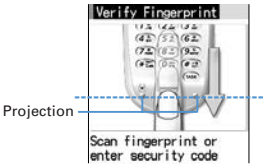
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 195 of 372

Using fingerprint authentication function

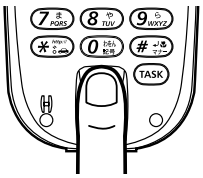
Use of the fingerprint authentication function allows to skip the operation of entering the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) (→ P188) with dial keys by sliding your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor.

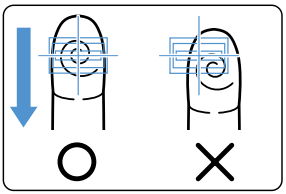
Hints on use of fingerprint authentication function

- This function authenticates the information on the characteristics of fingerprint image. For this reason, user with fingerprint that does not provide enough characteristics information may not be able to complete the registration operation.
- The three readings with the same finger are needed to register your fingerprint. If the different finger is registered, the authentication may not be made.
- The following finger conditions may make fingerprint registration difficult or reduce the authentication rate (The rate of successful fingerprint authentication for correct sliding of the finger).
  Taking measures according to the condition of your finger including washing hands, wiping hands, using a different finger for fingertip authentication and applying cream if the hand is rough or dry may improve the conditions of authentication.
  - Wrinkled after taking a bath, etc.
  - Sweaty and oily enough to obscure ridges of fingertip
  - Rough or damaged (cut, inflamed, etc)
  - Extremely dry or having tendency to get dry
  - Soiled with dirt or oil
  - Became fat or thin to cause the fingerprint to change
  - Surface worn away to make the fingerprint unclear
  - Surface in a condition extremely different from that at the time of fingerprint registration
  - Wet or sweaty
- Any water attached or dew condensed on the fingerprint sensor may cause faulty operation. Wipe the water off with a soft cloth before use.
- Authentication rate depends on the condition of use.
- For registration/authentication of fingerprint, align the root of your fingernail with the projections on the sides of the fingerprint sensor as shown in the figure on the right and contact your fingertip against the fingerprint sensor with your finger sliding and slide again in the direction to lower until the fingerprint sensor is seen. This will decrease the occurrences of authentication failure due to different placements of fingertip between the times of registration and authentication.



- The number of serial failure is reset when the screen shown on the right is displayed.
- If the sliding movement is too fast or too slow, the fingerprint may not be correctly recognized. Follow the instruction message on the screen to adjust the sliding speed.
- The recommended orientation of fingertip placement is the same as the orientation of the terminal.
- The center of the whorl of the fingerprint may be largely displaced or distorted, which is more often the case with thumbs. Since this may make registration difficult or reduce the authentication rate, check the center of the whorl of your fingerprint and press your finger against the fingerprint sensor in such a way that the center of the whorl is positioned at the center of the fingerprint sensor.





Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 196 of 372

- For sliding your finger on the fingerprint sensor, do not set up your finger on the sensor but place it on the fingerprint sensor in such as way that the finger is parallel to the sensor, as shown in the right figure:



- Each finger has a different fingerprint. For authentication operation, be sure to use the finger used for registration.
- If the fingerprint was not correctly read, a warning message is displayed. If the fingerprint was not authenticated within a certain period of time, a confirmation message is displayed and the screen returns to the previous screen.
- Fingerprint authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Please be notified that we will not be held responsible for any damage caused by use of this product or failure to use this product.
- Pressing (MENU) on the fingerprint authentication screen shows the terminal security code entry screen, on which the terminal security code can be entered for authentication. For secure use of the FOMA terminal, changing the default terminal security code "0000" is recommended. →P189

Fingerprint sensor

- The following conditions may cause failure or damage.
  - Fingerprint sensor surface scratched or picked with a pointed object
  - Fingerprint sensor surface rubbed hard with a fingernail or hard object and scratched
  - Fingerprint sensor touched with a hand soiled with dirt, etc. and the fingerprint sensor surface soiled or scratched by fine foreign objects, etc.
  - Fingerprint sensor surface covered with a sticker or ink, etc.
- The following conditions may make fingerprint reading difficult or reduce the authentication rate. Clean the fingerprint sensor surface from time to time.
  - Fingerprint sensor surface soiled with dust or sebum
  - Moisture such as sweat attached to the fingerprint sensor surface
  - Dew condensed on the fingerprint sensor
- If any of the following phenomena occurs, clean the fingerprint sensor, which may improve the condition.
  - "Clean surface of sensor" is displayed.
  - Fingerprint registration or authentication fails often.
- To clean the fingerprint sensor, lightly rub the fingerprint sensor surface with a soft cloth such as eyeglass wiper to remove the soil.
- Before placing the finger on the fingerprint sensor, eliminate static electricity by touching a metal object with the hand, etc. Static electricity may cause failure. Take particular care in dry seasons such as winter.
- Long-term use may cause dust to collect at the fingerprint sensor. Do not attempt to remove the dust with a pointed object.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 197 of 372

Registering fingerprint to use authentication

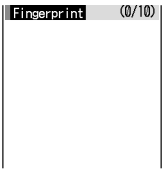
To use the fingerprint authentication function, register your fingerprint first.

- Up to 10 fingerprints can be registered.

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.**

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**



3 **Press .**

Saved fingerprint confirmation screen is displayed.

4 **Press and place your finger on the sensor and slide slowly downwards.**



Your fingerprint is registered.

- If fingerprint scan is failed or finger sliding speed is too fast or slow, a message notification is displayed. Complete the scan according to the message notification.

5 **Enter the user name, press and press .**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use authentication.

- A registration name can contain up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

6 **Select "Yes" and press .**

Fingerprint data registration is completed and the list of registered fingerprints reappears.

INFORMATION

- Fingerprint registration will be cancelled when there is an incoming call or a previously set time for Alarm or a Scheduler has come.
- Entering characters → P302

Changing fingerprint data for authentication

Changes fingerprint data to be used for authentication.

1 **Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.**

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**

The list of registered fingerprints is displayed.

- The fingerprint data used for authentication is marked with at the left of the registration name.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 198 of 372

3 **Select the fingerprint data to use for authentication and press MENU 2 か ABC.**

The fingerprint data is enabled for authentication.

- Select the fingerprint data used for authentication and press ● to deselect the data for use.

Deleting registered fingerprint data

Delete the registered fingerprint data.

- When deleting the fingerprint data for authentication, utilization of a fingerprint authentication function will be released.

1 **Press MENU 8 や TUV 3 さ DEF 7 ま PQRS on the stand-by display.**

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**

The list of registered fingerprints is displayed.

3 **Select the fingerprint data to delete and press MENU 3 さ DEF.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

4 **Select "Yes" and press ●.**

The fingerprint data is deleted.

Changing registration name

Fingerprint data registration name is changed.

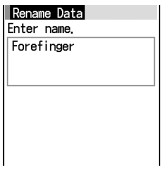
1 **Press MENU 8 や TUV 3 さ DEF 7 ま PQRS on the stand-by display.**

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**

The list of registered fingerprints is displayed.

3 **Select the fingerprint data to change the name and press MENU 4 た GHI.**



4 **Change the registration name, press ● and press 📖.**

The registration name is changed.

- A registration name can be entered up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 199 of 372

Authenticating fingerprint

When the terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed, fingerprint can be used for authentication as well as the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) entry.

- To use fingerprint authentication, register your fingerprint in advance. → P196
- For fingerprint authentication, press the finger set for use against the fingerprint sensor.

1 When the terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed, slide your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor.



When authentication has been completed, the respective setting screen is displayed.

- If authentication was not completed, remove the finger from the fingerprint sensor and retry authentication.

INFORMATION

- Functions requiring terminal security code entry → P188
- When fingerprint authentication has failed five times consecutively, the terminal security code entry screen is displayed. The number of serial failure is reset.
- When authentication rate is low, retry the operation from fingerprint scanning. → P196
- Pressing MENU or a dial key on the terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen switches to the terminal security code entry screen.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 200 of 372

Lock function

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent FOMA terminal from being used by others or to keep your private information and phonebook entries confidential. You can choose the function to suit your needs.

• The following lock functions other than Secret mode are retained even if the power is turned OFF.

Item	Description	Page
All lock	This function disables menu operations to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.	P200
Secret mode	When you set secret attributes for phonebook entries or schedule data, the data is displayed in Secret mode ON to enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits)/authenticate your fingerprint and it is not display in normal operation.	P201
PIM lock	This function disables displaying and editing of the phonebook entries, Scheduler and User information, etc. to prevent the display of and tampering with private information. The name of the other party registered in the Phonebook, whom calling may be made to or received from or whose mail may be received, will not be displayed while the PIM lock is ON.	P202
Keypad dial lock	This function prevents use of the dial keys.	P203
Privacy Mode Settings	If FOMA terminal is left unoperated for a certain period of time, phonebook, mail or i αppli display automatically becomes unavailable, which prevents unauthorized viewing by any third party.	P204
Self mode	This function disables communication functions such as the making/receiving of calls, the sending/receiving of mail and infrared communication.	P205
Side key guard	This function disables the side key functions when FOMA terminal is folded to prevent inadvertent operations.	P206
Remote lock	Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others can be avoided by setting the All lock and ＩＣ card lock by remote control in case the your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P206
ＩＣ card lock	ＦｅｌｉＣａ function and ＦｅｌｉＣａ-compatible i αppli cannot be used if ＩＣ card lock is ON.	"Application" manual P95

* Note: If terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen appear on the stand-by display by having set a lock function, part of the stand-by display will remain displayed on the upper section.

Simultaneous setting of multiple lock functions

For example, to enable simultaneous locks on the use of the dial keys, phonebook and User information, set both Keypad dial lock and PIM lock.

• For information on the stand-by display when multiple lock functions are set → P32

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 201 of 372

Preventing unauthorized use <All lock>

When the All lock is set, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

Calls cannot be made or received during All lock ON.

- When the All lock is ON, emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) cannot be made.
- Be aware that ＩＣ card lock is not automatically set even if Auto lock has been set.
- When All lock is set, the set stand-by display is canceled and the default image is temporarily displayed. The set stand-by image reappears when All lock is canceled. When a stand-by display other than the pre-installed i αppli stand-by display is used, the screen will display the pre-installed i αppli stand-by display that is set last time.

Setting All lock

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



All lock is set.

Canceling All lock

- If you should forget the terminal security code, you need to take your FOMA terminal and documents to prove you are the subscriber (for example, your driver's license) – for the sake of preventing misuse by others – to our salses office.

1 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint during All lock ON.

All lock is canceled.

- The fingerprint authentication is enabled, press any key first to display the fingerprint authentication screen.

INFORMATION

- Calls received during All lock are rejected and the callers hear the busy tone. They are recorded in the received call list. When All lock is canceled, 2 (number of missed calls) is indicated on the stand-by display.
- The reception result screen is not displayed when mail and message R/F are received in All lock ON.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 202 of 372

Displaying data protected by secret attribute setting <Secret mode>

Default | Not set

If Secret mode is set, the phonebook data and the schedule data that have set a secret attribute (→ P142, P230) can be displayed. To set or cancel secret attribute, secret mode must be set for the FOMA terminal.

Setting Secret mode

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.

Secret mode is set.

- 🔒 is indicated in the stand-by display in Secret mode ON.

Canceling Secret mode

1 Press 電源 on the stand-by display.

Secret mode is canceled.

- 🔒 disappears on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Setting secret attribute for Phonebook data → P142
- Setting secret attribute for Schedule → P230

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 203 of 372

Preventing display of phonebook or Scheduler <PIM lock>

Default | OFF

When the PIM lock is set, the following functions are locked to prevent the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be used when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to "ON".
- When PIM lock is set ON, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. You can make a call from the redial data or received call list stored after setting PIM lock ON.
- Even if you make/receive a call to/from or receive mail from the other party registered in the phone book during PIM lock ON, the name of the other party will not be displayed.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

PIM lock is set or canceled.

- is indicated in the stand-by display in PIM lock ON.
- When Keypad dial lock and Side key guard are set simultaneously while PIM lock is ON, the stand-by display displays high priority icons. → P32

When PIM lock is ON

- The following functions and some settings become unavailable.
  - Mail/SMS/Massage R/F*
  - iMenu
  - Bookmark
  - Internet
  - Screen memo
  - Message
  - Message retrieval
  - i αppli
  - Phonebook
  - Image
  - i-motion
  - Melody
  - Chara-den
  - Camera
  - Video Camera
  - Bar code reader
  - Scheduler
  - Notepad
  - Answer machine, Voice memo
  - Set alarm
  - Data transfer in infrared communication
  - miniSD card
  - User Information
  - Software Update
  - IC card software list
  - IC card Lock

  *: Received but Received messages screen is not displayed.
- If the menu is display in PIM lock ON, menus of disabled function are grayed-out or is indicated and you cannot select them.
- In PIM lock ON, the caller's name is not displayed on the screen even if a call is received from a caller registered in the phonebook.
- You cannot set/cancel PIM lock from an external device with AT commands.
- When a function to which PIM lock applies is set as the stand-by display, sub-display or ring alert, the default setting becomes active while PIM lock is activated. The setting you made is restored when PIM lock is canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even if PIM is locked.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 204 of 372

Preventing use of dial keys <Keypad dial lock>

Default | OFF

This function prevents use of the dial keys.

- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) when Keypad dial lock is ON.
- Setting keypad dial lock "ON" deletes Redial and Received calls before the setting is made. The numbers dialed from the Phonebook entries after the setting is made are stored under Redial.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 3 さ DEF 4 た GHI on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

Keypad dial lock is set or canceled.

- is indicated in the stand-by display in Keypad dial lock ON.
- When PIM lock and Side key guard are set simultaneously while Keypad dial lock is ON, the stand-by display displays high priority icons. → P32

When Keypad dial lock is ON

- The following operations cannot be performed:
  - Making calls from Received call
  - Editing, registering, deleting the phonebook
  - Editing and resetting recorded user information data
  - Sending Short Messages (SMS)/i-mode Mail (but mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook)
  - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
  - Making calls from an i αppli
  - Using network service by the dial up operation
  - Phonebook data transfer to/from external devices
- Keypad dial lock of an external device cannot be set or canceled using AT commands.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 205 of 372

Preventing unauthorized use of phonebook or mail/ i αppli <Privacy Mode Settings>

Sets not to use FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, mail or i αppli. Privacy mode can be manually started or specified to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- Mail function of Mail interlinked i αppli can be used in case the mail or i αppli is activated after the certification even if the Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for message or i αppli).

Setting Privacy mode operation

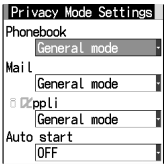
Default	Phonebook: General mode	Mail: General mode	i αppli: General mode	Auto start: OFF

When you use the Phonebook, mail or i αppli while the privacy mode is active, you can choose whether to perform authentication. You can automatically activate the privacy mode also.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 3 DEF 8 TUV on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



Item	Description
Phonebook	Sets whether to require authentication before displaying the phonebook when the Privacy mode is ON.
Mail	Sets whether to require authentication before displaying mail messages when the Privacy mode is ON. You can choose to make setting not to allow displaying of message in folder with privacy attribute set. • Setting "Hide secrecy data" hides the folders with the privacy set to ON for folder setting. → "Application" manual P191
αppli	Sets whether to perform authentication when using i αppli while the privacy mode is active.
Auto start	Sets the time period before starting privacy mode automatically if you do nothing on the FOMA terminal on stand-by. • Setting "OFF" disables auto start of privacy mode.

3 Select the item to set and press ● to set the item.

4 Press 📖.

A confirmation screen for setting/canceling Privacy mode is displayed.

5 Press ●.

Privacy mode operation is set.

Starting Privacy mode

To enable the privacy mode settings, you need to start the privacy mode.

1 Hold down C for over a second on the stand-by display.

Privacy mode is started.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 206 of 372

Canceling Privacy mode

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.

Privacy mode is canceled.

- If you have set "Hide secrecy data" for mail and have set "Privacy" for the folder setting for received mail, sent mail and mail to be sent, hold down (クリア) for over a second in the applicable folder list screen and enter the terminal security code of 4 to 8 digits or authenticate your fingerprint. By doing so, you can temporarily cancel the privacy mode and display the folder.
  → "Application" manual P191

INFORMATION

- If Privacy mode is started while "Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook, you cannot operate Quote phonebook while characters are being entered. → P320
- If Privacy mode is started when "Need auth. to use" is set for mail, an attempt to re-download or upgrade Mail interlinked i αppli returns an "unable to download" message and the deletion fails. An attempt to delete a mail folder for Mail interlinked i αppli also returns "unable to delete" message and the operation fails. Cancel Privacy mode before re-downloading or upgrading.
- When Privacy Mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for i αppli), you cannot set i αppli stand-by display. → "Application" manual P83

Using Self mode <Self mode>

Default | OFF

Making calls, receiving calls and all functions that require communications are disabled in Self mode ON. Infrared data communications are also disabled.

- However, emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can still be dialed in the Self mode (the Self mode is canceled).

Activating/canceling Self mode

1 Hold down (クリア) for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ When the self mode is activated

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to activate the self mode. Select "Yes" and press ● to start.
- In the Self mode, SELF is indicated on the stand-by display. SELF is indicated on the sub-display by pressing the side keys [▲▼] when FOMA terminal is folded.

■ When the self mode is canceled

- SELF on the stand-by display and SELF on the sub-display disappear.

INFORMATION

- If you receive a call during the self mode, a message is played for the caller that you are out of range or your terminal is turned off. The caller can use the Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service of DoCoMo.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 207 of 372

Preventing inadvertent use of Side keys <Side key guard>

Default | OFF

This function disables the side key functions except date and time display when the FOMA terminal is folded up to prevent inadvertent operations when the phone is placed in a bag or the like.

- You can receive calls in Side key guard ON.
- In Side key guard ON, the side keys can still be used when the FOMA terminal is opened.

Activating/canceling Side key guard

1 Hold down (MENU) for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ When the side key guard is activated

The side key is disabled.

- In Side key guard ON, is indicated on the stand-by display.
- When PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set simultaneously while Side key guard is activated, the stand-by display displays high priority icons. → P32

■ When the side key guard is canceled

- disappears on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- This setting keeps even when the phone is turned OFF.
- While receiving a call with Side key guard ON and FOMA terminal folded, the ring tone and vibrator are not stopped by pressing side key [▲].

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal <Remote lock>

Default | Remote lock: OFF

Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others can be avoided by setting All lock (→ P200) and ｉC card lock (→ "Application" manual P95) by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen. Auto lock and ｉC card lock will be activated when there is a call arrival under a preset condition with monitoring period, number of incoming calls, and phone number having been set.

- When you use the Phonebook while Privacy mode is ON ("Need auto. to use" is set for the Phonebook), entry of the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204

Setting the operation conditions for Remote lock

1 Press (MENU) (8 や TUV) (3 さ DEF) (9 ら WXYZ) on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry screen/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



Item	Description
Remote lock	Sets the terminal to activate/deactivate Remote lock.
Monitoring period (minutes)	Sets a time frame in which the pre-set number of calls can be received, commencing at the time of the first incoming call. Even after the time frame has expired, if the pre-set number of incoming calls is not received, the Remote lock will not be activated.
Received calls (times)	Sets the number of incoming calls allowed before the Remote lock is activated.
Sender 1 to 3	Sets the call original phone numbers that will activate the Remote lock. Payphones can be set as the call original phone numbers.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 208 of 372

3 **Select the Remote lock field, press ●, press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.**

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 9 to deactivate Remote lock.

4 **Select the Monitoring period field, press ●, enter the monitoring period and press ●.**

- The setting can be made between 1 and 10 minutes.

5 **Select the Received calls field, press ●, enter the number of incoming calls and press ●.**

- The setting can be made between 3 and 10 times.

6 **Select the Sender1 to Sender3 field, press ●.**

- Up to three phone numbers can be registered as sender. Repeat Step 6 to 8 when registering a second and after.

7 **Select the Select sender field, press ●, and press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.**

- If the Sender is made "Public telephone", press 2 か ABC and 📖. Go to Step 9.

8 **Enter a phone number in the Phone number field and press ●, them press 📖.**

- If the Sender is made "Sender number", you can enter a phone number from the Phonebook entries by pressing ▲📇.
  Searching the Phonebook entries → P120

9 **Press 📖.**

The Remote lock is set.

INFORMATION

- You cannot register a sender using the Phonebook when PIM is locked.
- The number of a phone number after pause and timed pause will be deleted when registering a sender's phone number from the Phonebook.
- The same phone number can be registered as sender.
- It is possible to activate only the ＩＣ card lock on the FOMA terminal. → "Application" manual P95
  In this case, power-off caused by an empty battery will normally release ＩＣ card lock but will not release the ＩＣ card lock activated by Remote lock.

Activating Remote lock

- To perform Remote lock, send your Caller ID and make a call to that number.
- Remote lock cannot be activated from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- To activate Remote lock, you have to preset the operating conditions. →P206
- Call arrival/reception operation is unavailable with Remote lock ON; neither can an emergency call (110, 119 and 118) be made.

1 **Make a voice call under the conditions set by Remote lock.**

Remote lock is activated.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 209 of 372

INFORMATION

- Remote lock can be set when either All lock or ＩＣ card lock is set or when both are set, or Driving mode is set.
- When you make a voice call to activate Remote lock, in case the other party responds to your call, it is not counted as a call for configuration; Remote lock cannot be activated. The count is reset to zero.
- When a call arrives in from a phone number set as sender while Answer machine or Auto Answer is set, Answer Machine or Auto Answer activates four seconds after the time configured in response time. When Answer machine or Auto Answer is activated, it is not counted as call for setting and Remote lock cannot be activated.
- If number of incoming calls reach a preset count to activate Remote lock, you will hear a guidance that your terminal is with All lock or ＩＣ card lock ON. If there is an incoming call from the phone number of sender registered, caller will hear the same guidance and the call will become chargeable. If a call arrives from numbers that are not set as Sender, the call will be disconnected and changed to busy tone.
- The count of missed calls is only effective for the first call made from a sender and counting is initiated. Additional missed calls from other senders are not counted. Also, counting is not initiated even when there is a call arriving from other sender.
- When a sender is saved with a "186(⁎31#)/184(#31#)" prefix, a missed call from that number without that prefix is counted.
- When a sender is saved without a "186(⁎31#)/184(#31#)" prefix, a missed call from that number with the "186(⁎31#) prefix" attached is counted.
- When the saved sender has been set as "Reject Call" or has not been set as "Accept Call", calls from that number will be counted as a missed call.
- When a call is made from a saved caller, even if the call is rejected, or the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is used (excluding when the call time is 0 second), that number is counted as a missed call.
- Calls will be counted even if incoming when Reject Non-Reg. Caller or Ring Alert Delay is set.
- When the period from the time counting is initiated until the time limit ends, counting is released, and the number of missed calls counted from the time counting was initiated is reset to zero.
- If the terminal is turned OFF after the counting has been initiated, the numbers of missed call that have been counted will be reset to zero.
- There is no counting initiated during a call or i-mode.

Canceling Remote lock

Cancel All lock and then cancel ＩＣ card lock in order to cancel Remote lock.

- Canceling All lock → P200
- Canceling ＩＣ card lock → "Application" manual P95

Hiding redial/received calls <Call Logs Settings>

Default | ON

Restrict display of redial or making/receiving calls to prevent unauthorized viewing of Call logs information.

- Even if this is "OFF", call logs information is stored in Redial/making or receiving calls information.

1 Press MENU 4 GHI 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

Call logs settings screen appears.

2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

Call logs settings is set.

- Press 2 ABC to enable to display the information of making/receiving calls.

INFORMATION

- Even if "OFF" is set for Call logs settings, recorded messages can be played.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 210 of 372

Turning ON phone automatically at specified time <Auto power ON>

Default | OFF

This function turns ON FOMA terminal automatically at the specified time.

- You need to make date and time settings. → P55
- This function cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto power OFF.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 5 な JKL 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Auto power ON	Sets/cancels Auto power ON.
Time	Sets the time to automatically turn the power ON.
Repeat	Sets Auto power ON to repeat.

2 Select Auto power ON field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 5 to cancel Auto power ON.

3 Select Time field, press ●, enter the time and press ●.

- Enter the time in 24-hour format. When there is only one digit for hour or minute, precede it with 0.

4 Select Repeat field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 1 あ ./@ to turn the power ON at the specified time every day.
- Press 2 か ABC to turn the power ON once at the specified time.

5 Press 📖.

Auto power ON is set.

INFORMATION

- This function will not work if the power is already ON at the set time. In addition, when Repeat has been set "OFF", FOMA terminal is turned ON only once at the set time and Auto power ON is canceled.
- When the PIN1 code ON/OFF setting (→ P190) is "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed after the power is turned ON at the set time.
  The stand-by display appears after entering the PIN1 code.
- If you set the schedule or Set alarm and this setting for the same time, an operation set in the schedule or Set alarm settings takes place after Auto power ON. → P211, P219

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 211 of 372

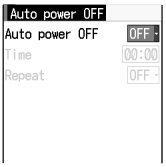
Turning OFF phone automatically at specified time <Auto power OFF>

Default | OFF

This function turns OFF FOMA terminal automatically at the specified time.

- You need to set date and time. → P55
- This function cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto power ON.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 5 JKL 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Auto power OFF	Sets/cancels Auto power OFF.
Time	Enter the time to automatically turn the power OFF.
Repeat	Sets Auto power OFF to repeat.

2 Select Auto power OFF field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 5 to cancel Auto power OFF.

3 Select Time field, press ●, enter the time and press ●.

- Enter the time in 24-hour format. When there is only one digit for hour or minute, precede it with 0.

4 Select Repeat field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 1 あ ./@ to turn the power OFF at the specified time every day.
- Press 2 か ABC to turn the power OFF once at the specified time.

5 Press 📖.

Auto power OFF is selected.

INFORMATION

- When the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned OFF. The power is turned OFF after the stand-by display reappears by exiting each function. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed following the stand-by display or the PIN1 code entry screen displayed when FOMA terminal is turned ON, the power is turned OFF.
- This function will not work if the power is already OFF at the set time. In addition, when Repeat has been set "OFF", FOMA terminal is turned OFF only once at the set time and Auto power OFF is canceled.
- If you set schedule or alarm setting and this setting to the same time, Auto power OFF is made after setting a schedule or alarm setting. If you perform a snooze operation after the alarm or Set alarm sounds, Auto power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation. → P211, P219

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 212 of 372

Automatically turning power ON at alarm set time <Alarm Auto Power ON>

Default | OFF

Make settings to automatically turn the power ON and activate Schedule alarm, Advance alarm or Alarm sound if the power is OFF when the date and hour specified by schedule or alarm clock arrive.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 5 JKL 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

Alarm auto power ON screen is displayed.

2 Press 1 .,@ or 2 ABC.

Alarm auto power ON is set.

- To turn the power ON when the time specified for the alarm arrives while the power is OFF, press 1 .,@.

INFORMATION

- If the PIN1 code ON/OFF setting (→ P190) is "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears after the power is turned ON and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm setting or Schedule alarm. After entering the PIN1 code, the stand-by display appears.

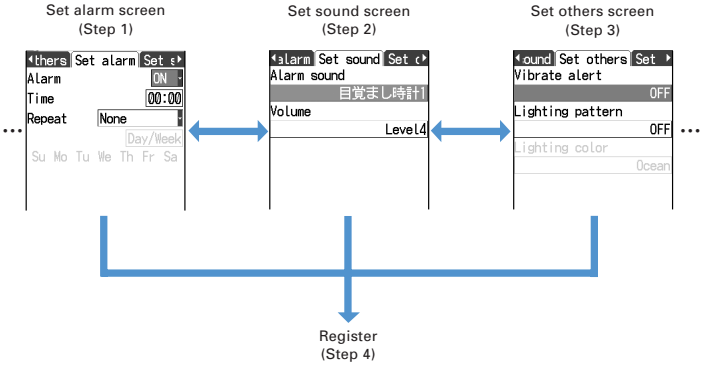
Ring alarm at the set time <Alarm clock>

This function announces the set time with an alarm sound or vibration. You can select the alarm to go on once only or repeat the alarm everyday or on specific days of the week. You can also set the alarm sound, back-panel display color and vibrator operation.

- You need to set date and time. → P55
- This function cannot be used in PIM lock ON.

Flow of setting the alarm clock

Use the following screens to set the Alarm clock.



- To use the Alarm setting, be sure to set Alarm "ON" in Step 1 and perform registration operation in Step 4. Set other items as required in any order.
- Press ◁ ▷ to switch screens.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 213 of 372

Step 1 Setting alarm time [Set alarm screen]

Default | Alarm:OFF

1 Press MENU 6 MNO 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.

The Set alarm screen is displayed.

2 Select the Alarm field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 4 to cancel Alarm. →P215

3 Select the Time field, press ●, enter the time and press ●.

- Enter the time in 24-hour format. When there is only one digit for hour or minute, precede it with 0.

4 Select the Repeat field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.

- Press 1 あ ./@ and go to Step 2 to activate Alarm once.
- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 2 to activate Alarm every day.
- Press 3 さ DEF to activate Alarm on a specific day of week.

5 Select the day of the week.

① **Select "Day/week", press ●, and 1 あ ./@ to 7 まPQRS.**



- ☐ of the item corresponding to pushed dial key changes to ☑ and the item is selected.
- Select the selected day of the week (☑) and press ● to cancel the selection (☐).
- You can select (or cancel) all days of the week by pressing MENU (the guide row display varies depending on the selection conditions).

② **Press 🕮.**

The day of the week is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 214 of 372

Step 2 Setting alarm sound [Set sound screen]

Default	Alarm sound: 目覚まし時計 1（Alarm clock 1）	Volume:Level4

This screen is used to set the sound of the alarm and its volume.

- i-motion cannot be set as the alarm sound.

1 Press .



2 Set the alarm sound.

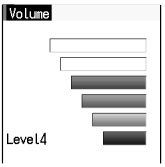
① **Select the Alarm sound field and press .**
The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.

② **Select a folder, press , select a melody from the list and press .**
The melody is set and the Set sound screen reappears.

- The melody list → "Application" manual P285
- You can play the melody by selecting a melody and pressing . Press side keys [▲▼], to adjust the volume during playback, press to play the previous or next melody. Press to set the melody.

3 Set the alarm volume.

① **Select Volume field and press .**



② **Adjust the volume and press .**
The volume is set and the set sound screen reappears.

- Adjusting the volume → P72

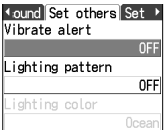
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 215 of 372

Step 3 Setting alarm operation [Set others screen]

Default | Vibrate alert: OFF Lighting pattern: OFF

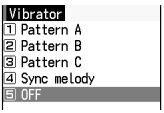
This screen is used to set announcement operation to be started at the set alarm time.

1 Press ▷.



2 Set the vibrator.

① **Select the Vibrator field and press ●.**



- When 📷 or ✉ are pressed to select a pattern, the phone vibrates for 60 seconds. (Note that vibration is not activated when "Sync melody" is selected.)

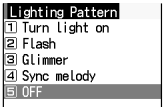
② **Press 1 to 5.**

Vibrator is set and the set other screen reappears.

- To activate Vibrator along with melody set with Alarm sound, press 4. Vibration may not be activated depending on the file specifications of downloaded melodies.
- Press 5 and go to Step 3 not to activate the vibrator.

3 Setting Lighting pattern of the incoming light.

① **Select Lightening pattern field and press ●.**



- When 📷 or ✉ are pressed to select a pattern, the incoming light lights/flashes in the selected pattern. Note that the incoming light flashes when "Sync melody" is selected.

② **Press 1 to 5.**

Lighting pattern is set and Set other screen reappears.

- If you press 4, the incoming light flashes in "Rainbow" along with the melody set for Alarm sound. Press 4 and go to Step 4. (Flashing may not be synchronized depending on the file specifications of downloaded melodies.)
- Press 5 and go to Step 4 to disable lighting of the incoming light.

4 Set the lighting color of incoming light.

① **Select Lightening color field and press ●.**



- The color selection screen has 3 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch the screens.
- When 📷 or ✉ are pressed to select the color, the incoming light is lights/flashes in the selected color.

② **Press 1 to 9.**

Lighting color is set and Set other screen reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 216 of 372

INFORMATION

- Vibrator pattern → P152
- Color of Incoming Alert Light → P246

Step 4 Recording

1 **Press (メール).**

The setting is recorded.

- When Alarm clock is set, or (when a schedule alarm is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display. If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, or (when also a schedule alarm is set) is indicated in the sub-display.

When alarm time arrives



- When the set time arrives, the screen shown on the left is displayed and the alarm sounds with the set volume. If an illumination or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.
  When FOMA terminal is folded, the Alarm screen shown on the left and the time are displayed for 15 seconds.
- Pressing (電源) while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the stand-by display reappears.
- If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than (電源) or the side key [▼] is pressed while the alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops while the display stays the same and the phone "rings for one minute followed by a 4-minute silent period" (snooze operation) repeatedly for 30 minutes.

- If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:

Calling	It is notified by a warning sound and Alarm screen, not the alarm sound. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration.
Power OFF	Neither the power is ON nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON Setting to ON. → P211
When the set time arrives during data transmission/ reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call	After ending of the operation in the left column, an Alarm operates.

INFORMATION

- While Driving mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the sub-display, incoming light or vibrator is not activated.
- While Silent mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator set for "Set alarm" is activated and the incoming alert light is lit/flashed.
  When "ON" is set for "Vibrator" and "Alarm/Schedule sound" of Custom Silent Mode, the "Set alarm" setting applies.
- "Set alarm" does not operate when All lock or PIM lock is ON.
- To stop the alarm sound while the FOMA terminal is folded, press side key [▲]. Pressing the side key [▼] does not stop the alarm sound.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 217 of 372

Displaying calendar

The calendar screen allows registering or displaying schedules.

- In the PIM lock ON, schedules cannot be displayed.

1 Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display.



Today is displayed in peach, Saturday in blue and day-off in red by default.

Cursor
For a day with a schedule set, the item icon for the plan schedule for the earliest hour of the day is indicated.
A date with repeat schedule setting is marked with ◥ to the upper right.
A date with the date-straddled long-term schedule setting is marked with ◺ to the upper right.

- Press (camera) (i) (◁)(▷) to move the date. The Day View screen is displayed by pressing (●).
- Press (▲) to display previous months and (▼) to display coming months.
- The calendar is displayed according to the last setting you set.
  Action or display style for calendar can be changed in Calender View Mode.
  →See below

INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1,2000 and December 31, 2060.
- The displayed color depends on the "Color Scheme" setting. → P181
- National holidays are not displayed.
- Days off can be set. → P218
- The Clock display becomes "Small" when stand-by display is set to a calendar, whereas the Clock display becomes "English" when stand-by display is set to a calendar in English display.
- When the screen is switched to English (→ P54), seven day of calendar etc. are displayed in English.

Changing action or display style for calendar <Calendar View Mode>

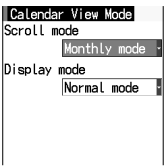
Default	Scroll mode: Monthly mode Display mode: Normal mode

Change the display format and display style of the calendar.

1 Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display.

Calendar is displayed.

2 Press (MENU) (6 は MNO) (1 あ ./@).



Item	Description
Scroll mode	Sets the calendar display mode. • Set "Monthly mode" to switch the display every month. The days of the previous and next months are displayed in different color. • Set "Slide mode" to scroll the display by week. Different background colors are used for adjacent months.
Display mode	Sets the calendar week display mode. • Set "Normal mode" to be Sunday as the beginning (leftmost position) of a week. • Set "Business mode" to be Monday as the beginning (leftmost position) of the week.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 218 of 372

3 **Select an item to set, press ● and set the desired value.**

4 **Press 📖.**

Calendar mode is set.

Specifying dates for display

Specify a particular day and move the cursor to the intended date.

1 **Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display.**

Calendar is displayed.

2 **Press MENU 4 たGHI 2 かABC.**



- Enter the last two digit of the Western calendar year.
- When there is only one digit for the year, month or day, precede it with 0.
- Press MENU 4 たGHI 1 あ./@ to restore the current date display.

3 **Enter the year, month and day and press ●.**

The cursor is moved to the specified date.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from Day View screen, press MENU and select "Move date" → "Move to the date". To bring the cursor back to the present date, press MENU on "Day View" screen and select "Move date" → "Back to today".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 219 of 372

Setting day off <Set day off>

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying a date or days of the week.

Setting Days off by specifying dates

- You can record up to 30 dates.

1 **Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display.**
Calendar is displayed.

2 **Select a day off and press MENU 6 2 1.**
The day off is set.
- The color of the date specified as a holiday changes (for other than the current day).
- Press MENU 6 2 2 to set day off to be repeated yearly.

Canceling Day off setting

1 **Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display.**
Calendar is displayed.

2 **Select a day off to cancel and press MENU 6 2 3.**
The day off on the selected date is canceled.
- Press MENU 6 2 4 to cancel all days off.

Setting Days off by specifying day of week

Default: Sunday

1 **Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display.**
Calendar is displayed.

2 **Press MENU 6 3.**
The select day of week screen is displayed.

3 **Press 1 to 7.**



- ☐ of the item corresponding to pushed dial key changes to ☑ and the item is selected.
- Select the selected day of the week (☑) and press (oval) to cancel the selection (☐).
- "Reset" is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Press MENU to return to the default setting.

4 **Press (book).**
The selected day of the week is set as the day off.

INFORMATION

- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, Sunday is automatically set as the day off.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 220 of 372

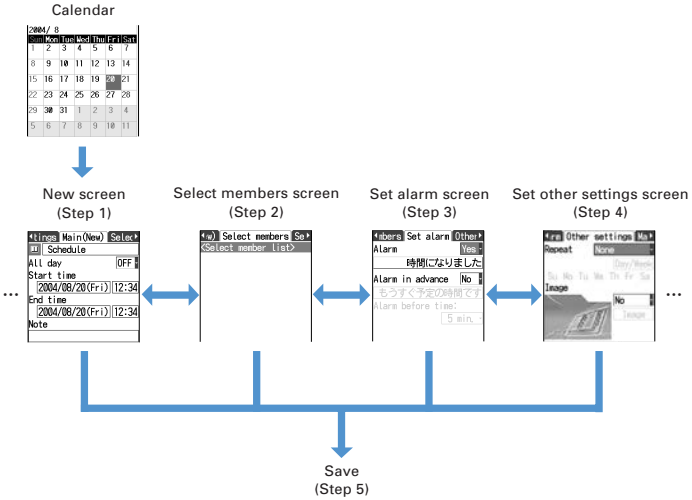
Saving schedules

This function allows you to save various schedules. At the set time, you will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound.

- You can save multiple schedules for the same day.
- You can save up to 300 entries.
- You need to set date and time. → P55

Flow of saving schedules

Use the screen shown below to save schedules.



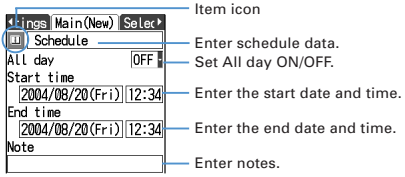
- To use Schedule function, enter the detail and start time in Step 1 and perform registration operation in Step 5. Set other items as required in any order.
- Press ◁▷ to switch the screens.

Step 1 Entering schedule date, time and data [Main(New)]

1 Hold down ☐ for over a second on the stand-by displayed.

Calendar is displayed.

2 Select a day to save a schedule and press ☐.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 221 of 372

3 Select an item icon and press ●.



4 Select an icon and press ●.

The icon is set and the New screen for composing schedules reappears.

- You can select one out of 30 icons.
- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

5 Select the data field, enter the schedule data and press ●.

- The data entered for the icon selected in Step 3 is displayed. Change the data as required. The entered data is not changed by changing the icon.
- You can enter up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters for the data.

■ Inputting values calculated with Calculator

You can input results of calculation with Calculator.

① Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC on the character entry screen.

Calculator is displayed.

- The character entry screen in Step 8 allows the same operation.

② Make a calculation and, when "Insert" is displayed in the guide row, press ●.

The value is input on the character entry screen.

- Calculator operation details → P250

6 Select All day field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- To set "All day" schedule without specifying the hour, press 1 あ ./@.
- Press 2 か ABC when not setting all day.
- If all day is set, the date and hour display of the schedule is marked with "All day" on Day View. If all day is set for the date-straddled long-term schedule, the date and hour display is followed by "All day".

7 Enter the start date and time and the end date and time.

- You cannot set the time if you specify "All day".

① Select the Start date field, press ●, enter the start date and press ●.

- For the year, enter the last two digits of the Western calendar year. Precede a 1-digit month or day by a zero (0).
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- Press ◁ ▷ to increment or decrement numbers.
- You can also enter numbers by pressing ◁ ▷ and selecting numbers to change.

② Select the Start time field, press ●, enter the start time and press ●.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour format. Precede a 1-digit hour or minute by a zero (0).
- Press ◁ ▷ to increment or decrement numbers.
- You can also enter numbers by pressing ◁ ▷ and selecting numbers to change.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 222 of 372

③ Enter the end date and time in the same way.

- If a date-straddled long-term schedule is set over more than one day (for example, August 21 to 24), the date of the set term is marked with ◺ to the upper right. The schedule is preceded by ▬ on Day View.
- Specification of end time is not necessary if no term is to be set.

8 Select the Note field, enter the schedule details and press ●.

- You can enter up to 300 two-byte or 600 one-byte characters for the note.

INFORMATION

- When operating from Day View screen, press (m/p) and select "Main (New)".
- Deleting date-straddled long term schedule → P229
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of the schedule book. If you have a PC, you can use data link software (→ "Application" manual P358) and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.
- Entering characters → P302

Step 2 Creating member list [Select members screen]

You search the phonebook for members related to the schedule and register them in the schedule member list. Such a list allows you to call and send mail.

- You can record 5 members maximum.
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auto. to use" is set for the phonebook), entry of the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or fingerprint authentication is required. → P204

1 Press ☞.



2 Select "<Select member list>", and press ●.

The phonebook list is displayed.

- Press (m/p) to switch between FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook and the UIM phonebook.

3 Select a member to be registered and press ●.



- The first phone number, mail address, URL registered in the phonebook data is registered.
- Select other members to register in the same way.
- Select the member and press (MENU) to delete a member.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 223 of 372

Step 3 Setting alarm [Set alarm screen]

Default	Alarm: Yes 時間になりました (Set time arrives)　Alarm in advance: No

Use this function to select whether the alarm will announce the start time of a schedule and what melody is to be used for the alarm.
You can also set an "Alarm in advance" that preannounces the start date and time.

1 Press ▷.



2 Set the alarm sound.

■ Setting alarm

① **Select the Alarm field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.**
- To disable alarm for the start time of the schedule, press 2 か ABC and move on to Step 4.

② **Select the melody field and press ●.**
The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.

③ **Select the folder, press ●, select a melody from the list and press ●.**
The melody is set and the Set alarm screen is displayed.
- The melody list → "Application" manual P285
- You can play a melody by selecting a melody and pressing 📖. During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing side keys [▲▼], ◁ ▷ and you can play the previous or next melody by pressing 📷 ✉. Press ● to make the setting.

■ Setting advance alarm

① **Select the Advance alarm field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.**
- To disable Advance alarm before the start time of the schedule, press 2 か ABC and move on to Step 4.

② **Select the melody field, then select a melody.**
- The advance alarm is set in the same way as the ordinary alarm.

③ **Select the Advance alarm time:min field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ to 5 な JKL.**
- Select the number of minutes before the ordinary alarm.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 224 of 372

Step 4 Making repeat settings [Other settings screen]

Default | Repeat:None Image:No

This function allows you to set schedule repeating and record images in schedules.

- If a schedule is set to repeat, the set date is marked with ◥ to the upper right in the calendar. The schedule is preceded by ↻ on Day View.
- If an image whose horizontal vertical and (or vertical and horizontal) size exceeds 640 x 480 (dots) is set, it may take time to display images.
- You cannot set Flash graphics for images.

1 Press ▭.



2 Make a Repeat setting.

① Select the Repeat field, press ● and 1 to 6.

The following Repeat settings can be made.

Item	Description
1 None	Sets no repetition.
2 Every day	Sets the same schedule for every day.
3 Every week	Sets the same schedule for the same day of the week as the starting date.
4 Every month	Sets the same schedule for the same date* of every month as the starting date.
5 Every year	Sets the same schedule for the same date* every year as the starting date.
6 Day of week	Sets the same schedule for the specified day of the week every week.

* : Note that the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or Feb. 28) when you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date.

- If 6 was pressed, "Day of week" option is available. Otherwise, go to Step 3.

② Select "Day/Week", press ● and 1 to 7.



- ☐ of the item corresponding to pushed dial key changes to ☑ and the item is selected .
- Select the selected day of the week (☑) and press ● to cancel the selection (☐).
- You can select/cancel all days of the week by pressing MENU (the guide row differs depending on the selection conditions).

③ Press ▭.

The day of the week is set and the Set others screen reappears.

- The day of week selected in Step ② is displayed under "Day/Week".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 225 of 372

3 Select an image.

① Select the Image field, press ● and 1 or 2.

- If 2 was pressed, go to Step 5.

② Select "Image" and press ●.

The image folder list of "Image" is displayed.

③ Select the folder, press ●, select a still image from the list and press ●.

The still image is set and Set others screen reappears.

- The image list → "Application" manual P243
- You can display a still image by selecting a still image and pressing 📖. Animations, Create animation and continuous shots are automatically played when displayed. You can display the previous or next still image by pressing 📷 ✉. Press ● to set the image.
- The selected image is displayed in the schedule alarm screen. When an image is not set, the schedule image is displayed. The image on the sub-display cannot be changed.
- If a Create animation or continuous shots is set, the first image is displayed but not played back in the screen for setting schedules and Schedule alarm.

Step 5 Saving

1 Press 📖.

The schedule is saved.

- When a schedule that sets an alarm and advance alarm is saved, 📖 or 📖⏰ (when Alarm clock is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.
  If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, 📖 or 📖⏰ (when Alarm clock is also set) is indicated in the sub-display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 226 of 372

When a schedule alarm or advance alarm is set



- When the set time arrives, the screen as shown on the left (date/time, schedule description and image) appears on the display and the alarm sounds at the volume set with "Ring volume" (→P73).
  When FOMA terminal is folded, the sub-display shows a message "Schedule", the details of schedule, the alarm start time and image. The incoming alert light or vibrator settings, if any, are used.
- An advance alarm, when set, sounds before schedule start time.
- Pressing 電源 while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the stand-by display reappears. If you do not press any keys for one minute or press a key other than 電源 or the side key [▼] while the alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops without changing the display.
- If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:

Calling	The warning sound but the set alarm occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. At this time, the vibrator does not operate.
Power OFF	Neither the power is ON nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON Setting to ON. → P211
When the set time arrives during data transmission/ reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call	The Alarm operates after the operation shown in the left column. However, if the data schedule is received by data communication, it does not operate.

When multiple schedules are set

- After stopping the alarm sound, press (i) to confirm the data of other schedules to be started at the same time.

INFORMATION

- While Driving mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the sub-display, incoming light or vibrator is not activated.
- While Silent mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator operates in "Pattern A". When Custom Silent Mode is set, the settings for "Vibrator", "Alarm/Schedule sound" and "Ring volume" apply.
- If a Create animation or continuous shots are set, the first image is displayed.
- In All lock or PIM lock ON, the schedule alarm or advance alarm does not sound.
- To stop the alarm sound while the FOMA terminal is folded, press side key [▲]. Pressing side key [▼] does not stop the alarm sound.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 227 of 372

Quickly registering schedule <Quick schedule>

The screen to register a schedule with the date and time specified is displayed by simple key operation from the stand-by display.

- Date and time setting is required. → P55
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

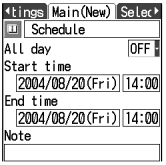
<Example> Registering the schedule for 14:00 of the same day

1 Press dial keys (1 あ ./@ 4 た GHI 0 わん 記号 0 わん 記号) to enter a date to register the schedule on the stand-by display.



- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.
- When entering the date and time, enter 8 digits with 2 digits for month, day, hour and minute respectively.

2 Press 📖.



The time specified in Step 1 is set as the start time.

- When the date that has already passed is entered, the schedule-registering screen for the next year is displayed. When the time that has already passed in the day is entered the schedule-registering screen for the next day is displayed.

3 Register the schedule.

- Operation procedure → P219

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 228 of 372

Using member lists

You make calls to select a member list is recorded in a schedule and create i-mode Mail. Their sites are also displayed from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member list.

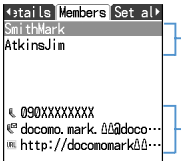
- When Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), you cannot use this function.

1 Hold down (m) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule day to use and press ●.

The Day View screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

2 Select the schedule to use, press ● and press ◁▷ to display the Members screen.



A list of the recorded members is displayed.

The phone number, mail address and URL of the first recorded member are displayed.

- For members with secret attribute set, the name and detail information is masked with "✳" unless Secret mode is set. → P201

3 Use the Phonebook data.

■ Making a voice call

Select a member and press (c).

A voice call is made to the displayed phone number.

- The Caller ID Send Function ON/OFF cannot be selected. This depends on the Send user number of the phone number recorded in the phonebook. → P138
- Select a member and hold down (c) for over a second to hear the voice of the other party over the speaker (speakerphone function). → P59

■ Making a video-phone call

Select a member and press (v).

A video-phone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- The Caller ID Send Function ON/OFF or specifying the data rate cannot be selected. This depends on the Send user number or the data rate of the phone number registered in the phonebook. → P138, P139
- Select a member and hold down (v) for over a second to hear the voice of the other party over the speaker (speakerphone function). → P86

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 229 of 372

■ Sending i-mode Mail

① Select a member and press (✉).

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is entered in the message in the Date To format.

Date To format → P253



- Press MENU 5 JKL 2 ABC to send i-mode Mail to all members. The addresses of all members are placed in the Compose New Mail screen and the schedule is entered in the message in the Date To format.

② Edit and send the i-mode Mail.

- How to create and send i-mode mail → "Application" manual P129

■ To display a site

Select a member and press MENU 6 MNO.

You are connected to the site.

INFORMATION

- To use the phone number and mail address of the second or subsequent member in the phonebook, select a member from the member list screen, press ○ and display the phonebook more info screen. From this screen you can make a voice, video-phone call or create i-mode Mail. → P125, P129
  Note that, if i-mode Mail is created from the phonebook more info screen, the schedule is not set in the message and the Date To function connot be used.
- Press m-ch in the member lists to display the member lists screen allowing you to record or delete members. → P221
- When "No setting" is set for Phonebook data caller ID setting, voice/video-phone calls are made according to Activate/Deactivate setting of Caller ID Notification. → P138, P287

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 230 of 372

Deleting schedules

This function allows you to delete schedules. You can delete schedules one at a time or all schedules for one day.

- You can delete a schedule by one of the following methods.

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Items deleting \ Screen used	Calendar	Day View screen	Details screen for schedule
Selected item	×	○	○
One day	○	○	×
Before date	○	○	×
All	○	○	×

- To delete schedules with Repeat setting, select "Delete all" from Calendar, "Selected item" or "Delete all" from Day View or "Delete entry" from the detail screen.

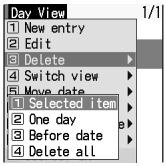
<Example> Deleting the schedule from Day View screen

1 Hold down (book) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule day to use and press ●.

Day View screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

2 Press MENU 3 さ DEF.



3 Press 1 あ ./@ to 4 た GHI.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete those.

- Press 4 た GHI to delete all the schedules and enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint. However, if deleted without set to Secret mode, schedules belonging to secret attribute will not be deleted.

■ When there is date-straddled long-term schedule (→ P216) for "One day"

Select "Delete long term" or "Keep long term" and press ●.

Schedule is deleted in the selected method.

- To delete the schedule for the selected day and all of the date-straddled long-term schedule including the day, select "Delete long term" and press ●.
- To delete the schedule other than the date-straddled long-term schedule for the selected day, select "Keep long term" and press ●.

■ When there is date-straddled long-term schedule (→ P216) for "Before date"

Select "Delete long term" or "Keep long term" and press ●.

Schedule is deleted in the selected method.

- To delete the schedule before the selected day and all of the date-straddled long-term schedule including the day before the selected day, select "Delete long term" and press ●.
- To delete the schedule other than the date-straddled long-term schedule before the selected day, select "Keep long term" and press ●.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 231 of 372

4 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The schedule is deleted.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from calendar or Schedule details screen, press (MENU), select "Delete entry".

Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute setting>

The schedule data that you do not want other people to see is registered as the data having a secret attribute that is used only when you perform authentication operations (input of terminal security codes with 4 to 8 digits or fingerprint authentication). To set a secret attribute, perform the setting in Secret mode (→ P201).

- This attribute can be set both from Day View screen and Details screen for schedule.
- Secrecy cannot be set ON/OFF when Secret mode is not set.

1 Set the Secret mode.

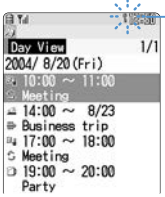
- Operation procedure → P201

2 Hold down (📖) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule day to use and press ●.

The Day View screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

3 Select the schedule to set and press (MENU) (9 WXYZ).



Blinks when the secret attribute is set for the selected schedule.

- Select the schedule of Secrecy ON and press (MENU) (9 WXYZ) to cancel the secrecy setting.

INFORMATION

- A schedule of Secrecy ON can only be viewed in Secret mode.
- Secret attribute is automatically set for schedule made while Secret mode is active.
- For schedule set with secret attribute, alarm sound or alarm in advance is not activated unless Secret mode is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 232 of 372

Copying schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another day.

- When a date-straddled schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is copied.

Copying schedules

- Use the Day View screen to copy schedules. You cannot copy schedules from the calendar or Details screen for schedule.
- The copied schedule is retained in the FOMA terminal until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another day any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. Copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 Select the recorded schedule day from Calendar to use and press ●.

The Day View screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

2 Select the schedule to copy and press MENU 6 は MNO 1 あ ./@.

The schedule is copied.

Pasting schedules

- Schedules can be pasted from the calendar or the Day View screen.

1 Copy a schedule.

- Operation procedure → See above

2 Select the day to paste the schedule and press MENU 5 な JKL.

The schedule is pasted to the selected day.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from Day View screen, press MENU and select "Copy/Paste" → "Paste".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 233 of 372

Checking recorded schedule data

This function displays recorded schedules. You can add, change and cancel the schedules from the displayed screen.

- A schedule for which the secret attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret mode.

1 Hold down (m) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule day to check and press (●).



Daily view screen

- Press (◁)(▷) to switch dates in the Day View screen.

2 Select the schedule to check and press (●).



Details screen for schedule

- Press (◁)(▷) to switch screens in Details screen for schedule.

INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule data contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used. → "Application" manual P48, P49
- A schedule with Repeat setting is indicated by , and schedules whose date-straddled are indicated by .
- A schedule with all day set is marked with "AllDay" on the Day View screen.

Changing schedules

You can change the recorded schedule as follows:

1 Hold down (m) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule day to change and press (●).

The Daily view screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

2 Select the schedule to be changed, press (●), and press (m).

The Edit screen is displayed.

3 Change the schedule data and press (m).

A registration confirmation screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P219

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 234 of 372

4 Select "Yes" and press .

The changed schedule is stored.

INFORMATION

- When operating from "Day View", press (MENU) and select "Edit".

Displaying schedules for specific item icon only

You can choose to display only the schedules for specific item icons.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Calendar is displayed.

2 Press (MENU) (3 さ DEF) (2 か ABC).



- Press (MENU) (3 さ DEF) (1 あ /@) to show all items.

3 Select an item icon and press .

Matched items are displayed.



Item icon is displayed.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated.
  When operating from Day View screen, press (MENU) and select "Switch view" → "Display by type". To display all items again, press (MENU) on "Day View" screen and select "Switch view" → "Display all items".

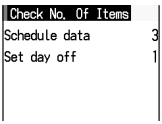
Checking number of registered items <Check No. Of Items>

You can check the number of registered schedule and days off set in the schedule.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Calendar is displayed.

2 Press (MENU) (7 ま PQRS).



- Press to return to the calendar.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 235 of 372

Creating mail from schedule

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen used.

○ : Available ✕ : Unavailable

Items sent \ Screen used	Calendar	Day View screen	Details screen for schedule
1 item	✕	○	○
1 day	○	○	✕
All*	○	○	✕

*: Sends all recorded schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are written to a mail message in the Date To format. → P253
- If a schedule exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be discarded.
- When schedules are displayed by type, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- Set the Secret mode to send schedules for which the Secret attribute is set. → P201

<Example> Sending a schedule from the Day View screen

1 Hold down (i-mode) for over a second on the stand-by display, select the recorded schedule to send by mail and press ●.

The Day View screen is displayed.

- Operation procedure → P216

2 Select the schedule to send by mail press ✉▼.



- Press MENU 7 PQRS 2 ABC to send all of the schedule registered for the selected day by mail.
- Press MENU 7 PQRS 3 DEF to send all of the schedule registered at the same time.
- Creating/sending i-mode Mail → "Application" manual P129

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ from the screen being operated. When operating from calendar or Details screen for schedule, press MENU and select "Compose message".
- If you operate from Details screen for schedule, press ✉▼ to create i-mode Mail.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 236 of 372

Recording your own name and mail address <User Information>

In addition to the subscribing terminal phone number (own number), you can also record your name and mail addresses.

- You can record the following types of data:
  - Name and reading
  - Image
  - Phone numbers (up to 5 numbers including the FOMA terminal number)
  - Mail addresses (up to 5 addresses)
  - Personal information (URL, note, postal code, address, company name and job title)
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

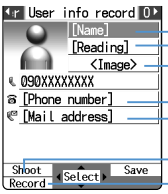
Recording user information

1 Press MENU 0 わん 記号 on the stand-by display.



- As own number, the subscribing terminal phone number is set.

2 Press 📖 and enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



Enter the first and last name separately.

When the name is entered, the furigana name is automatically entered. It can be changed.

Still image or video can be entered.

Up to 4 phone numbers other than the subscribing terminal number can be entered.

You can set up to 5 mail addresses.

You can shoot still images to record on the moment.

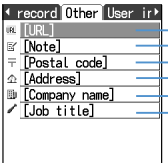
You can shoot videos to record on the moment.

- The existing data, if any, is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (own number) is stored in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

3 Enter the phone number and mail address.

- Items are set in the same way as phonbook items (Step 3). → P106

4 Press ◁▷ to set the other information.



Sets URL.

Sets note.

Sets postal code.

Sets address.

Sets company name.

Sets job title.

- Nothing is set by default. The existing data, if any, is displayed.
- Items are set in the same way as phonebook items (Step 6). → P113

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 237 of 372

5 Press (メール).

The user information is recorded.

INFORMATION

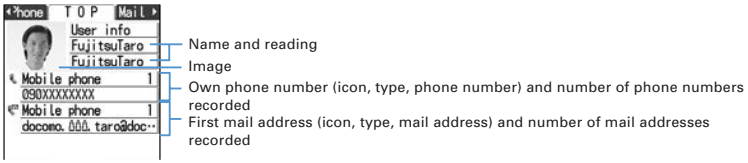
- Your own phone number is recorded in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on the FOMA terminal (Terminal).
- User information can be stored also when 圏外 is indicated.
- Changing the mail address field in the user information does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not automatically change the address field in the user information.
  To change the mail address → "Application" manual P165
- If you operate a key while shooting a moving image, the sound of the operation may be recorded.

Displaying user information details

1 Press (MENU) (0 わをん 記号) on the stand-by display.



2 Press (○) and enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Check the user information.

- The existing data, if any, is displayed. When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed.
- Press (メール) to display name, reading, the first phone number and the first mail address. → P125
- To check recorded items, the display changes each time (▽) is pressed. The screens are displayed in the reversed order when (△) is pressed. → P126

INFORMATION

- You can use the information stored in user information to perform a number of operations in the same way as the phonebook.
  - Using Phonebook → P132
  - To forward user information (Send My Info by Infrared communication) → "Application" manual P301
  - To set various functions → P138

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 238 of 372

Editing user information

1 Display the detail (TOP) screen.

• Operation procedure → P236

2 Press MENU 2 か ABC.

The user information edit screen is displayed.

3 Edit the user information.

• Operation procedure → P235

Resetting recorded data

You can reset recorded user information data to the default value. This deletes all information except own phone number.

1 Display the detail (TOP) screen.

• Operation procedure → P236

2 Press MENU 3 さ DEF.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to reset it.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The user information data is reset.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 239 of 372

Using original menus <Custom Menu>

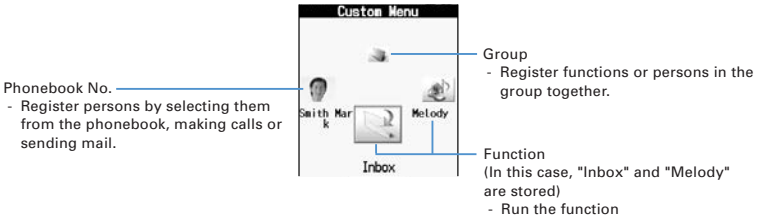
In the FOMA terminal, you can create your original menu by freely registering functions or phonebook data in addition to the menus that are previously registered (Custom menu). Store the functions you most often use and the phonebook data of the other party you frequently reach in this menu for quick access and making a call easily.

- 9 items can be set at each hierarchy.
- Three pre-recorded templates are provided for Custom menu. You can also create Custom menu by importing templates and adding or deleting optional functions. → P239
- When you press (MENU) by default, Normal menu is displayed.
- Custom menu can store the following items:

Item	Description
Phonebook No.	Save Phonebook data. Saving parties you frequently contact simplifies the procedure of making calls and sending messages.
Function	Set functions or menus with the second level. Setting functions and menus you frequently use allows quick access to desired functions. • If you register a menu in the second level, the menu is displayed in the display format set to "Normal" of Menu settings (→ P37) for the lower-order level menus when selecting the item.
Group	Create group folders for grouping Phonebook data, functions and menus for each purpose. • Items can be saved in up to 3 levels by creating a group folder in another group folder. Group folders can be created in up to 2 levels.

Custom menu example

The custom menu display style depends on the selected display style in Custom of the Menu settings. → P37



Reading a template sample

Default | Sample 1

This section describes how to read the previously registered template samples.

- The following templates are registered by default:

Item	Registered functions
1 **Sample 1**	IC card software list, IC card lock, Fingerprint settings, Privacy mode settings, Remote lock
2 **Sample 2**	Inbox, Compose message, Menu, Bookmark
3 **Sample 3**	Phonebook, Scheduler, Notepad

- When a template is imported, all Custom menu items are replaced.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 240 of 372

1 Press MENU 📖 the stand-by display.



- When start up menu of menu setting is set to "Custom", press MENU on the stand-by display.
- Sample 1 of the templates is already set in Custom menu. → P238
- Press 📖 on the Custom menu to switch to the normal menu.
- Press ● on the blank Custom menu to select screens for selecting items to store in Custom menu. When an item is selected, you can store persons, functions or groups. The following procedure is performed in the same way as storing items in "Creating custom menu" below.

2 Press MENU 7 PQRS 1 あ ./@ and 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.



A template is imported and placed in Custom menu.

- When Custom menu is already created, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the new Custom menu. Selecting "Yes" followed by pressing ● sets the selected template for Custom menu.

Creating custom menu

To create a Custom menu, read the template samples and add optional items; so, you can make an original menu.

- You can also exchange items, change icons and change group names. → P243
  Resetting the sample can delete all the items previously registered and register optional items. → P244

1 Read a template sample.

- Operation procedure → See above

2 Register the item.

■ Registering person

- If the Secret attribute is set for the phonebook, it is not displayed unless the Secret mode is set. → P201
- When PIM lock or Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook), you cannot register the person.
- When phonebook data that contains video/i-motion is registered in the Custom menu, a pre-registered character icon is displayed on menu screen instead of video/i-motion.

① **Press MENU 1 あ ./@ 1 あ ./@.**

Phonebook list is displayed.

- To search again in another search method, press MENU on Phonebook list.
- To search the UIM phonebook, press 📖 on Phonebook list.
- Phonebook operations → P120, P127

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 241 of 372

② **Select the person to save and press ●.**



The person is stored.

■ Registering functions

- In PIM lock ON, the functions for private information such as phonebook and user information cannot be selected.

① **Press MENU 1 あ 2 か.**



- The selecting functions menu is displayed in the format set in the normal menu (the sample screen is in the Tile display format). → P37

② **Select the item to store and press ▷.**



When "Inbox" is stored

The menu item is stored.

- A menu item without submenus can also be registered by selecting the item and pressing ● or by a shortcut operation.

■ Registering groups

① **Press MENU 1 あ 3 さ, enter the group name and press ●.**



- You can enter up to 9 two-byte or 18 one-byte characters.
- Groups cannot be recorded when the second level is displayed.

② **Press ▷.**

The group is stored.

■ Registering in a group

① **Select a group and press ●.**

The items in the group are displayed.

- When an empty group is selected, the item selection screen is displayed.

② **Add or replace to item.**

Operation procedure → P239, P241

- The custom menu can have up to 3 levels. When the second level has been displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 242 of 372

■ Registering the stored item

① Select the item for replacement and press (MENU) (2 か ABC).

The item selection screen is displayed.

- This function cannot be selected when there are no items to replace.

② Press (1 あ ./@) to (3 さ DEF), select the stored item and press ●.

- When replaced, all items in the group are deleted.

INFORMATION

- You can change the order of stored items. → P243
- You can change the icons of stored items. → P243
- Entering characters → P302

Using custom menu

Select a function or person stored in the custom menu.

- If a menu is set for the second level of group folder, the second-level menu is displayed in the display style according to the "Custom" setting of Menu settings.
- Shortcut operations are also available while customized menu is displayed. The method of selecting numbers for shortcut operations can be selected between the same method as the normal menu and use of dial keys corresponding to the positions of customized menu items. → P37

Selecting functions

1 Press (MENU) (📖) on the stand-by display.



- When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press (MENU) on the stand-by display.

2 Select a function, and press ●.



The selected function is performed.

- When a menu item that has submenus is selected, the menu items are displayed.
- To select a function from a group, select the group to display the functions in the group.

Selecting people

You make calls and send mail by selecting a person. When the phonebook data contains URL data, sites can be displayed. The phonebook detail screen can also be displayed.

- If the secret attribute (→ P142) is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as "✱✱✱" unless the Secret mode (→ P201) is set. The icon is indicated.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM is locked or Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). is indicated and the name of the person is displayed as "✱✱✱".
- When the secret attribute is set and the PIM lock is ON, the PIM lock icon is indicated and the phone behaves according to the PIM lock function. → P202

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 243 of 372

1 Press (MENU) (📖) on the stand-by display.



- When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press (MENU) on the stand-by display.

2 Select a person.

- To select a person from a group, select the group to display the persons in the group.

3 Use phonebook data.

■ To make a call

Press (📞).

The voice call is made.

- During dialing, the phone number is flashing; when the call is connected, the flashing stops.
- Press (📹) to make a video-phone call.
- When two or more phone numbers are stored, detail of the phonebook screen (phone number) is displayed. Select a phone number and press (●).
- Hold down (📞) (voice call) or (📹) (video-phone call) for over a second to make a call, you can listen to the caller through the speaker (speakerphone function). → P59, P86

■ To send i-mode Mail

Press (✉).



- When two or more mail addresses are stored, detail of the phonebook screen (mail address) is displayed. Select a mail address and press (✉) or (●).
- When no mail address has been stored, the Receiver field is left blank.
- Creating/sending i-mode Mail → "Application" manual P129

■ To send Short Messages (SMS)

Hold down (✉) for over a second.

The SMS creation screen is displayed.

- When two or more phone numbers are stored, detail of the phonebook screen (phone number) is displayed. Select a phone number and press (●) or (✉).
- When no phone number has been stored, Receiver field is left blank.
- Creating/sending Short messages (SMS) → "Application" manual P176

■ Connecting to the registered URL

Press (●) (5 JKL).

You are connected to the i-mode and a site or Internet web page is displayed.

- Site operations → "Application" manual P30

■ Displaying the phonebook detail screen

Press (●) (6 MNO).

The phonebook detail (TOP) screen is displayed. → P125

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 244 of 372

Editing a custom menu

The item arrangement and icons are changed and group names can be changed or deleted on custom menu. The default, in which no custom menu is registered, can be restored as well.

• To edit the items in a group, select a group and press ● to display a screen in the group.

Replacing items

You change the order of items displayed on the same screen.

1 Press MENU 4 on the stand-by display.

Custom Menu is displayed.

• When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press MENU on the stand-by display.

2 Select an item to move and press MENU 4 た GHI.



3 Select the destination item, press ● select "Yes" and press ●.

The item is moved.

Changing icons

1 Press MENU 4 on the stand-by display.

Custom Menu is displayed.

• When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press MENU on the stand-by display.

2 Select the icon to change and press MENU 5 な JKL.



• You can select from 32 types of icons.

• Press 4 to reset the icon.

3 Select the icon and press ●.

The icon is changed.

Changing group names

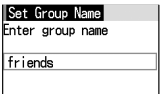
1 Press MENU 4 on the stand-by display.

Custom Menu is displayed.

• When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press MENU on the stand-by display.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 245 of 372

2 Select the group to change the name and press MENU 6 MNO.



3 Enter the group name, press ● and press 📖.

The name of the group is changed.

- You can enter up to 9 two-byte or 18 one-byte characters.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Deleting items

1 Press MENU 📖 on the stand-by display.

Custom Menu is displayed.

- When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press MENU on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to delete and press MENU 3 DEF.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The item is deleted.

- When the group is deleted, the items in the group are also deleted.

Resetting custom menu

Delete all the items for the registered contents and samples. This operation is performed when an optional function or phonebook data for all the items in the custom menu is registered.

1 Press MENU 📖 on the stand-by display.

Custom Menu is displayed.

- When "Custom" is set for "Default MENU" of "Menu Settings", press MENU on the stand-by display.

2 Press MENU 7 PQRS 2 ABC.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

3 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

4 Select "Yes" and press ●.

All items in the custom menu are deleted.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 246 of 372

Setting incoming light color and pattern <Incoming Alert Light>

Default	Flashing for all the cases/Ocean

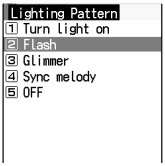
This function is used to change the incoming light pattern and color used when receiving voice calls, video-phone calls, mail or message R/F.

- You can select any of 27 colors.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.



2 Select the type of lighting pattern field to set and press ●.



- When ◁ ▷ are pressed to select a pattern, the incoming light lights/flashes in the selected pattern. Note that the incoming light flashes when "Sync melody" is selected.

3 Press 1 ./@ to 5 JKL.

Lightening pattern is set.

- The incoming light flashes as "Rainbow" if the "Melody" has been set for the ring tone or video-phone ring tone in Select ring tone or if 4 GHI is pressed in the lighting pattern field of other items to be set. Go to Step 6.
- The incoming light flashes in the selected color when 4 GHI is pressed if the "i-motion" has been set for the ring tone or video-phone ring tone in Select ring tone. Go to Step 6.

4 Select the item of lighting color field and press ●.



- The color selection screen has 3 pages. Press ◁ ▷ to switch the screens.
- When ◁ ▷ are pressed to select a color, the incoming light lights/flashes in the selected color.

5 Press 1 ./@ to 9 WXYZ.

Lightening color is set.

6 Press 📖.

Incoming Alert Light is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 247 of 372

Lighting colors (sub-display colors)

Ocean	Amethyst	Rose
Aqua	Grape	Peach
Melon	Olive	Mars
Apatite	Lavender	Coral
Turquoise	Sunrise	Lilac
Lime	Peridot	Lemon
Mint	Aquamarine	Moon
Sky	Soda	Opal
Ruby	Garnet	Rainbow

INFORMATION

- When a call or mail is received from a party in FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook, the operation depends on FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook setting. →P110, P112
- Depending on the file type of the downloaded melody file, it may not be linked (as of July 2004). In such case, ask the provider of the contents about the problem.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 248 of 372

Recording other party's or your voice <Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo>

This function allows you to record the voice of the other party during a voice call or video-phone (Talking Voice Memo).
When the date and time have been set, the recording date and time are automatically stored.

- A record message while talking/record message in stand-by can be up to 30 seconds long.
- Up to 4 record messages while talking/talking by video-phone/record voice memo in stand-by can be recorded in total.
- The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- It is recommended that you make a separate note of the content of a Talking Voice Memo in a notebook or the like.
  Data may be lost due to failure, repair or modifications of FOMA terminal.
  If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- If 4 voice memos have already been recorded, recording is not available. Delete the unnecessary voice memo.
  → P249
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

Recording the voice of the other party while talking

A Talking Voice Memo records only the voice of the other party. During a video-phone call, you can record Talking Voice Memo but cannot record image.

1 Hold down side key [▲] for over a second while talking.

Recording will start.



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

Voice memo during voice call



Voice memo during video-phone call

- When 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is also heard at the end of the recording, but not at the beginning.
- To cancel recording, hold down the side key [▲] over a second.
- Pressing TASK 6 MNO 6 MNO 2 ABC during a call does not record Voice memo.

Recording your own voice during stand-by

1 Press side key [▲] and press 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

After about 3 seconds, a beep sound occurs and recording starts.

- And when 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is heard at the start and end of the recording.
- To cancel recording, press .

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 249 of 372

Playing/Deleting voice memos <Play/Delete Voice memo>

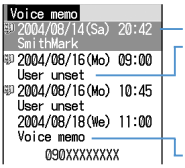
List messages screen is performed to play and delete recorded voice memos.

- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

Playing voice memos

1 Press side key [▲] and press 4 た GHI on the stand-by display.

The voice memo list shows both Talking and Stand-by voice memos.



Date and time of recording
Talking Voice Memo
- The phone number is displayed if notified. If not notified, the reason for hide caller ID is displayed.
  The name is displayed when the phone number of the other party matches an item in the phonebook.
  Name display while Privacy mode or Secret mode is ON → P102

"Voice memo" is indicated for Stand-by voice memo

2 Select the voice memo to play and press ●.

The voice memo will be played.



An approximate guide of the playing time is displayed.

- Press ● to stop playback of a voice memo.
- Press side keys [▲▼] or 📷 ✉ to adjust the volume. → P72
- You can hear a voice memo from the speaker by pressing 📞 during playback (a speakerphone function). By pressing 📞 again, you can hear the recorded voice memo from the earpiece.

3 Determine whether to delete the played voice memo.

- Select "Yes" and press ● to delete the voice memo.

INFORMATION

- For voice memos while talking, selecting a party from the list followed by pressing ☎ or 📹 makes a voice call or video-phone call respectively. Submenu can be used to make voice or video-phone calls by specifying Show/Hide caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate.
- To register phone numbers stored in a Talking voice memo to the phonebook → P118

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 250 of 372

Deleting

You can delete one at a time or all of the voice memo at once.

1 **Press side key [▲] and press 4 た GHI on the stand-by display.**

The voice memo list is displayed.

2 **Select a voice memo to delete and press MENU 2 か ABC 1 あ ./@.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

• Press MENU 2 か ABC 2 か ABC to delete all voice memos.

3 **Select "Yes" and press ○.**

The current voice memo is deleted.

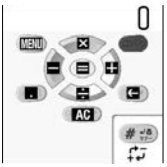
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 251 of 372

Using the calculator <Calculator>

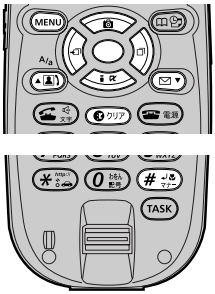
You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (＋ , － , × , ÷) calculation on your FOMA terminal.

- You can use the calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. →P220, P251, P321

1 Press MENU 6 MNO 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



Calculator screen



- The calculator screen is designed in such a way as to show the function of the corresponding terminal key.

2 Make a calculation.

Calculate using the dial keys (0 to 9) and ○ ○ ○ (×, ÷, −, +).

- To delete the last digit entered, press ▽.
- To enter a decimal point, press ▲.
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative, press #.

3 Press ○.

The calculation result is displayed.

- Press クリア to clear the calculation result.

INFORMATION

- You can enter a number of up to 8 digits.
- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. Press クリア to clear. When the number including a decimal point exceed 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.
- Press MENU 1 to copy displayed numbers. To paste the copied number, press MENU 2. Copied numbers are held until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and you can paste them in the entry fields of notes, mail creation screens, etc. any number of times.
- You can copy up to the first eight-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of the memo or mail creation screen, etc. and paste them on the Calculator screen. If you have copied the one-byte number of more than eight digits, the exceeded numbers are deleted.
- You cannot enter additional numbers following the pasted numbers. Also, you cannot paste two-byte numbers or a character other than a number.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 252 of 372

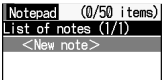
Creating notes <Notepad>

This function allows you to enter important information or notes in Notepad.

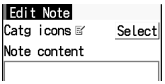
- You can record up to 50 notes.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.

Recording notes

1 Press MENU 6 MNO 5 JKL on the stand-by display.



2 Select "<New note>" and press ●.



3 Enter the note data in Note content field and press ●.

- You can enter up to 300 two-byte or 600 one-byte characters.

■ Inputting values calculated with Calculator

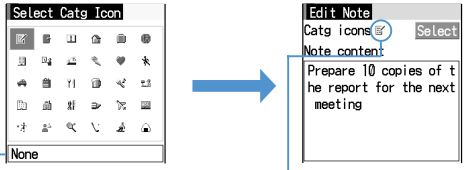
You can input results of calculation with Calculator.

① **Press MENU 8 TUV 2 ABC on the character entry screen.**
Calculator is displayed.

② **Make a calculation and, when "Insert" is displayed in the guide row, press ●.**
The value is input on the character entry screen.

- Calculator operation details → P250

4 Select "Select" in the Catg icons field, press ● select an icon and press ●.



- You can select any one of 30 icons.

5 Press 📖.

The note is recorded.

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 253 of 372

INFORMATION

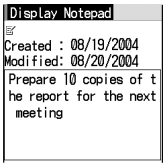
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of the Notepad. If you have a PC, you can use data link software (→ "Application" manual P358), the FOMA USB cable (optional) and attached desk-top holder to send the data to the PC.
- Entering characters → P302

Checking/editing notes

1 Press MENU 6 は MNO 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

The list of notes is displayed.

2 Select a note to check/edit and press ●.



- If the displayed note content contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URL Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
  → "Application" manual P48, P49
  If the fixed schedule phrases are contained, Data To function can be used. → P253
- Press 中文 to edit notes.

Deleting notes

You can delete one at a time or all of the notes at once.

1 Press MENU 6 は MNO 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

The list of notes is displayed.

2 Select a list of note to delete and press MENU 2 か ABC.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

- Press MENU 3 さ DEF and enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint to delete all registered notes.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The note is deleted.

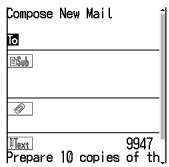
Creating mail from note

You use the content of a note to create i-mode Mail.

1 Press MENU 6 は MNO 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

The list of notes is displayed.

2 Select a note to use in the mail message and press MENU 4 た GHI.



- Creating/sending i-mode Mail
  → "Application" manual P129

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 254 of 372

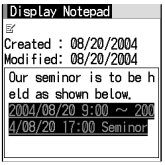
Saving schedule from Notes <Date To function>

When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

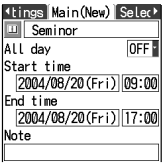
1 Press MENU 6 は MNO 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

The list of Notes is displayed.

2 Select Note written in Date To format and press ●.



3 Select a description in Date To format and press ●.



4 Save.

• Operation procedure → P219

Date To format

Date To is effective when Note has a string in the format below. All items are required.

(Example) 2004/08/20□9:00□～□2004/08/20□17:00□Workshop ↵

Start year / Start time / End year / End time / Contents / A line feed is regarded as an entry

* "□" represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.

- Only one-byte characters can be used for the underlined parts other than the contents.
- Separate the start year, month and day, start time, "～", end year, month and day, end time and contents with half-sized spaces.
- The contents can contain up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is Western calendar year and the time is in the 24-your format. If there is only one digit for month, day, hour or minute the preceding 0 is omissible.
- Using phrases simplifies saving to Notes of sentences in Date To format with the current dates. → P312

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 255 of 372

Checking settings <Confirm Settings>

This function allows you to confirm FOMA terminal settings.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 4 GHI 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

This confirms settings in the "Sound/Vibrator" menu.

2 Press ◁▷ to check the current settings.

Current screen



- When ▼ is indicated in the guide row, you can scroll the next setting screen. Press ▽ to check.
- Each time you press ▷, the menus are displayed in the following order: "Sound/Vibrator", "Display", "Security/Others", "Clock", "Send/Receive", "Call", "Video-phone", "Mail", "imode" and "iαppli". The screens are displayed in the reverse order when ◁ is pressed.

3 When finished, press ○.

The display information/reset menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 256 of 372

Resetting functions <Reset>

Default | All items are checked

This function resets functions to their default settings.

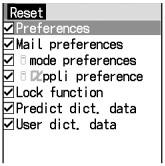
- For the functions returned to the default settings by reset, see the list of menu. →P326

  In addition, the following functions, though not mentioned in the list of menu, are reset to the default settings.
  - Silent mode (Be reset when the default setting is selected.)
  - Driving mode (Be reset when the default setting is selected.)
  - Predict dict. data
  - User dict. data (data recorded using Register word is deleted)

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 4 た GHI 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Select an item to reset and press ●.

- Select the selected item (☑) and press ● to cancel the selection (☐) .
- You can select (or cancel) all items by pressing MENU (the guide row differs depending on the selection conditions).

4 Press 📖.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to reset the setting.

5 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting is reset.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 257 of 372

Determining service provider <NW Search Method>

Default | Auto select NW

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to enter the service provider manually or using automatic search. Enter the service provider when automatic search is not to be used.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 5 JKL on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Search method	Sets how to retrieve a network. • If you select "Auto select NW", you cannot set "Manual select".
Manual select	Determines a service provider.

2 Select Search method, press ● and press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 1 あ ./@ and go to Step 4 to set Auto for Search method.

3 Select Manual select field, press ● and 1 あ ./@.

- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for Manual selection (as of July 2004).

4 Press ☎.

The service provider is set.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 258 of 372

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

By connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch (including stereo earphone set) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

For the connection of the earphone/microphone set with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the cover and insert the connection plug of the earphone/microphone set with switch. → P30

- Do not wrap the cord of the earphone/microphone set with switch around the FOMA terminal.
- Whenever the cord of the earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise will be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.
- The earphone/microphone set with switch cannot be used to make video-phone calls.

Using one-touch dialing

By assigning a phone number to phonebook number 0 of the Phonebook, it is possible to make a voice call to that number by pressing the switch on earphone/microphone set with switch instead of dialing the entire number or referring to the Phonebook.

- If more than one phone number has been assigned to phonebook number 0, the first phone number will be dialed.
- You cannot make calls when All lock, PIM lock or Self mode is activated, Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook) or Remote lock is ON. In this case, even if an emergency calls (110, 119, 118) is assigned to phonebook number 0 of the Phonebook, the call cannot be made by pressing the switch.
- If a call is already in progress, it is not possible to enter the number of a third party and initiate another call. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data in the miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.
- If a secret attribute has been set for phonebook number 0, Secret mode must be activated before making calls.

1 Connect the earphone/microphone set with switch.

Insert the connection plug of the earphone/microphone set with switch into the earphone/microphone jack.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps.

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number assigned to phonebook number 0 of the Phonebook.

3 To end a call, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep.

- You can also end calls by pressing (電源).

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

Connect the earphone/microphone set with switch in advance.

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps.

- The ring tone is emitted from the point indicated by the Headset Switch setting. → P258

2 To end a call, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep.

- You can also end calls by pressing (電源).

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 259 of 372

INFORMATION

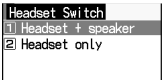
- If Auto Answer is set, you can receive an incoming call automatically without pressing the switch. → P259
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during a call by connecting an earphone/microphone with switch, the following operations take place:
  - If the setting is made to activate ring alert from the devices being connected, the call can be continued regardless of settings in Close Settings (→ P164) and the still image/Chara-den set in Image Settings:V-Phone (→ P98) is displayed on the terminal of the other party during a video phone call. If your image with a frame is being sent, the frame is released and the still image/Chara-den set in Image Settings:V-Phone (→ P98) is displayed on the terminal of the other party.

Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Headset Switch>

Default	Headset + speaker

By connecting an earphone/microphone set (headset) with switch (optional), you can set to hear the ring tone either through the earphone and the speaker or only through the earphone.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

Headset Switch is set.

INFORMATION

- When an earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of the setting.
- When you set to "Headset only", you will hear the ring tone through "Headset + speaker" 20 seconds after the ring tone begins to sound.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 260 of 372

Answering a call automatically with the earphone connected <Auto Answer>

Default | OFF

If you receive an incoming call when you connect the earphone/microphone set with switch (optional), you can answer the call automatically after the specified ringing time. When a call is received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone set with switch.

- When a video-phone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Substitute Image (→P98) of Image Settings:V-Phone is sent and a video-phone call is automatically started.
- When this function and the Answer machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- If an incoming call is received from the specified phone number or phone type when the Reject/Accept Call, Reject non-reg. Call, or Reject video-phone is set, this function is not available. →P155, P157
- This function is not available for incoming calls while talking.
- This function is not available in Driving mode.→P76

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 6 MNO 4 GHI on the stand-by display.



2 Select Auto Answer field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- Press 2 か ABC to cancel Auto Answer function and go to Step 4.

3 Enter the auto answering time and press ●.

- Enter the auto answering time between 0 and 120 seconds.

4 Press 📖.

Auto Answer is set.

INFORMATION

- The same time period cannot be set for both Delayed time for Auto Answer and Greeting Response Time. →P80

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 261 of 372

Services available for FOMA terminal

The following services are available

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile and carphones (charges apply). (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)

* When All lock is ON, emergency calls (110,119 and 118) cannot be made.

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of July 2004)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of July 2004)
- Note that calls to 110 or 119 from the FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile or carphone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- Customers who use "Call Forwarding" and "Voice Warp" from a general subscriber phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile or carphone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile or carphone is busy due to a setting, is outside the service area or the phone is turned OFF.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone to a FOMA terminal.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 262 of 372

Multiaccess

Multiaccess can be performed to use at the same time two communication functions: voice calls and packet communications (i-mode or i-mode Mail or data communications with PC or PDA and FOMA terminal). It can also handle Short Message Service (SMS) at the same time.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on task bar. → P34
- While executing the function, a new start menu or screen switching menu can be displayed by pressing (TASK) and you can start a new function or switch the screen.

Communication functions available at same time

As shown below, the FOMA terminal allows using 3 communication functions.

Function	No. of functions
Voice call	1
i-mode, i αppli, i-mode Mail communications	Either 1
Packet communication with connected PC, etc.	
Short Message Service (SMS)	1

INFORMATION

- During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.
- The Multiaccess function cannot be used during 64K data communications. However, the Short Message Service (SMS) can be received.
- Sending/receiving i-mode Mail is available during a voice call or i-mode operation.
- If many functions are being run simultaneously as messages are automatically received while a video or animation is playing or camera is being used, the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during playing.

Operations available during Multiaccess

Operations available during Multiaccess operation are listed below.

Current status	Available operation	Page
During voice call	Connecting to i-mode	P262
	Sending i-mode Mail	P262
	Receiving i-mode Mail	P263
	Performing packet communication	P263
During i-mode	Making a voice call	P263
	Receiving an incoming a voice call	P264
During packet communication	Making a voice call	P263
	Receiving an incoming a voice call	P264

INFORMATION

- For details on possible Multiaccess combinations → P341
- Multiaccess supports only a voice call and packet communication.
- Short Message Service (SMS) also available during a voice call, i-mode operation, 64K data communication or packet communications (reception only during 64K data communication).
- If a video-phone is received during i-mode, "Busy." is displayed on the caller's screen and the call cannot be received. The data is recorded in the received call history.
- Functions that can be run from the new start menu → P266

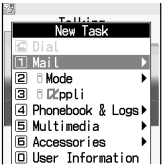
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 263 of 372

Connecting to i-mode during call

You can connect to i-mode to view sites during a voice call.

<Example> Connecting to a site while talking

1 Press (TASK) while talking.



The New Task menu is displayed.

2 Press (2 か ABC) (1 あ ./@).



- The phone stays connected. You can thus continue the call. If you are using the speakerphone function, view the screen while talking. → P59
- You can switch between talking and the site screens during operation. → P267
- To end site display, press (電源) in the site screen.
- To end the call, press (電源) on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

- Site operations → "Application" manual P27

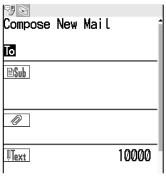
Sending i-mode Mail during call

This function allows you to send i-mode Mail during a voice call.

1 Press (TASK) while talking.

A New Task menu is displayed.

2 Press (1 あ ./@) (2 か ABC).



- The phone stays connected. You can thus continue the call. If you are using the speakerphone function, view the screen while talking. → P59
- You can perform the operation while switching between Talking and Compose message screens . → P267
- To finish composing a message, press (電源) on Compose message screen.
- To end a call, press (電源) on Talking screen.

3 Compose and send the i-mode Mail.

When the i-mode Mail has been sent, the call screen reappears.

- Operation procedure → "Application" manual P129

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 264 of 372

Receiving i-mode Mail during call

Receive i-mode Mail during a voice call.

1 Receive i-mode Mail during a voice call.



is displayed at the top of the display.

Performing packet communication during call

Perform packet communication during a voice call.

- The screen that is displayed during packet communication depends on the Priority Comm Mode. → P165

1 Send data from a PC while talking.



This action starts packet communications.

- The phone stays connected, so you can continue the call. If you switch the talking screen (→ P267) to use the speakerphone function (→ P59), you can view the screen while talking.
- Press 電源 on the talking screen to end the call.

Making call during i-mode/packet communication

You can make a voice call while viewing sites.

- Similarly, you can place calls while the terminal is connected to a PC and performing packet communication.

<Example> Making a call while a site is displayed

1 Press TASK during i-mode.

A New Task menu is displayed.

2 Press 文字.



- You can make calls from the phonebook, the received calls or Redials, as well. → P266

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 265 of 372

3 Enter a phone number.

The call is made.

- To end site display, press 電源 in the site screen.
- To end the call, press 電源 on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

- You can make video-phone calls during i-mode communication. In this case, i-mode communication is disconnected. → P341

Receiving call during i-mode/packet communication

Receive incoming voice call while viewing sites.

- Similarly, you can receive calls while the terminal is connected to a PC and performing packet communication.
- The screen that is displayed when a call is received depends on the Priority Comm Mode. → P165

<Example> When the Priority Comm Mode is in the default setting ("No Set Up") (Site being displayed)

1 A call is received.



The incoming call screen is displayed.

2 Press 文字.

The call is received.

- To end site display, press 電源 in the site screen.
- To end the call, press 電源 on the talking screen.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 266 of 372

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on task bar. → P34
- While executing the function, New Task menu or screen switching menu can be displayed to start a new function or switch the screen by pressing (TASK).

Executing new functions

You can execute another function during a call, communication or operations.

<Example> Displaying/registering a schedule during communication

1 Press (TASK) while talking.

A New Task menu is displayed.

2 Press (6 は MNO) (4 た GHI).



- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruptions. In this case, you can view the screen while talking by using the speakerphone function. → P59
- Depending on the function being executed, you may not be able to select certain functions. → P343

3 View/Record a schedule.

- Operation Procedure → P219, P232
- You can switch between the schedule and the talking screens during operation. → P267
- To end the Scheduler, press (電源) on the schedule screen.
- To end the call, press (電源) on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

- If many functions are being run at the same time as in automatic reception of a message while a video or animation is playing or camera is being used, the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during playing.
- Functions that can be run from New Task menu → P266
- During sending and receiving of infrared communication, operation by Multitask is invalid.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 267 of 372

New Task/menu list

The following functions available from New Task menu are given:

- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another. For details on possible Multitask combinations → P343
- Page in ■ refer to pages in "Application" manual.

Menu item			Description	Page
Grand menu	Mid-menu	Sub-menu		
Dial			Displays the dial up screen to make a call.	P58
1 Mail	1 Inbox		Displays received mail.	P151,183
	2 Compose message		Composes message.	P129
	3 Compose SMS		Composes Short Messages (SMS).	P176
	4 Unsent messages		Displays unsent mails.	P144,179
	5 Outbox		Displays mail to be sent.	P144,179
	6 Check new message	1 i mode message	Checks for mail or Message R/F at the i-mode Center.	P150
		2 SMS	Checks for Short Messages (SMS) at the Short Message Center.	P182
		3 receive option	Connects to i-mode Center, selects and receives mails.	P148
	7 UIM SMS	1 Received SMS	Displays received Short Messages in the UIM.	P187
		2 Sent SMS	Displays Short Messages transmitted from the UIM.	P187
	8 Read templates		Displays registered mail template.	P141
2 iMode	1 iMenu		Connects to i-mode and displays iMenu.	P27
	2 Bookmark		Displays sites and Web pages after selection of Bookmark.	P37
	3 Go to location	1 Enter URL	Displays Web page after entry of URL.	P35
		2 URL history	Displays Web page after selection of URL history.	P35
	4 Screen Memo		Displays a screen memo.	P42
	5 Message R&F	1 Message Request	Displays MessageR.	P117
		2 Message Free	Displays MessageF.	P117
	6 i mode message		Checks for mail or Message R/F at the i-mode Center.	P116,150
3 iαppli			Displays i αppli folder list.	P67
4 Phonebook & Logs	1 Phonebook		Displays phonebook.	P120,127
	2 Received calls		Displays received calls.	P70
	3 Redial		Displays redial.	P64
5 Multimedia	1 Image		The folder list of "Image" is displayed.	P243
	2 imotion		The folder list of "imotion" is displayed.	P267
	3 Melody		The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.	P285
	4 Chara-den		The folder list of "Chara-den" is displayed.	P23,97

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 268 of 372

Menu item			Description	Page
Grand menu	Mid-menu	Sub-menu		
6 Accessories	1 Camera		Captures still images.	P214
	2 Video Camera		Captures videos.	P224
	3 bar code reader		Reads barcode.	P240
	4 Scheduler		Displays Calendar. Records and checks schedule data.	P216
	5 Notepad		Records and checks notes.	P251
	6 Answer machine/ Voice memo	1 Record messages	Displays Record message list.	P82
		2 Record voice memo	Records voice memos.	P247
		3 Voice memos	Displays Voice memo list.	P248
	7 Calculator		Displays Calculator.	P250
0 User Information			Displays User information. Checks and edits your own phone number (Own number) and mail address.	P56,235

Switching screens

Press (TASK) when multiple functions are used to display the change screen menu. Select from the change screen menu to go to the desired screen and perform the required operation.

- If you press (MENU) in the change screen menu, a new start menu will be displayed.
- Function names displayed on the change screen menu. → P268

<Example> Switching from the screen during talking to the site screens

1 Press (TASK) while talking.



- Change screen menu lists the functions being run.

2 Select "mode" and press ●.



- To bring back "Talking" screen, press (TASK) again, select "Phone" from the change screen menu and press ●.
- You can start a new function by pressing (MENU) in the change screen menu to display the new start menu. Press (MENU) again to return to the change screen menu.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 269 of 372

Function names displayed in the switching screen menu

The item names displayed in the switching screen menu may differ from menu item names.

Item name	Corresponding function or screen
Phone	Voice call
Video-phone	Video-phone
64K data comm	64K data communication
AV Comm.	Video-phone using a personal computer
Dial input	Input of phone numbers
Mail	i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) (list screens, display screens, etc.)
Compose Mail	i-mode, Short Message (SMS) (creation screens)
Message R/F	Message R/F
Check new message	Check new message for i-mode Mail, Message R/F and Short Message (SMS)
imode	Site, Web page, Bookmark, Screen Memo
iαppli	i αppli (software list screen or run screens)
PPP data comm.	Packet communication when connected to a PC
imotion	i-motion
Melody	Melody
Image	Image
Camera	Camera or Video Camera
Phonebook	Phonebook (record screen, search screen, etc.)
Notepad	Notepad
Scheduler	Scheduler
Calculator	Calculator
Received calls	Received calls
Redial	Redial
miniSD card	miniSD card
Chara-den	Chara-den
Bar code reader	Bar code reader
Software Update	Software Update
Receive SMS	Reception screen of Short Message (SMS)
Receiving messages	Reception screen for i-mode Mail and message R/F
Notify (alarm)	Alarm screen displayed at the set time
Notify (schedule)	Alarm screen displayed at the scheduled date/time
User Information	User information
Answer machine	Answer machine
Voice memo	Voice memo

INFORMATION

- Screens cannot be switched for combinations other than allowable Multitask combinations.
→ P343

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 270 of 372

Ending all functions being executed

All functions are ended in Multitask at a time.

1 Press TASK in Multitask.

A confirmation screen asking whether to end all functions is displayed.



2 Select "Yes" and press .

All functions in Multitask are ended and the stand-by display reappears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 271 of 372

Using Network Service

DoCoMo Network Service 272

For more detailed information about the network services, contact the following (Be sure to dial the correct number.):

For inquiries (in English)
0120-005-250 (toll-free)
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

For inquiries (in Japanese only)
No prefix 151 (toll-free)
Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

0120-800-000 (toll-free)

You can apply for "Voice Mail Service", "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" , "Call Forwarding Service", "Nuisance Call Barring Service" and "i-mode" at DoCoMo e-site.

● **From i-mode (packet communication charge free)**
iMenu ▶ ⑨ お知らせ＆ヘルプ (News & Help) ▶ ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site)

● **From PCs**

Access from the DoCoMo e-site! → http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/
Then, go to Online orders/inquiry service and DoCoMo e-site.

Access e-site directly! → http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

* You need your network PIN that you specified at the time of application to use e-site via i-mode.
No packet transmission charge apply to access e-site from i-mode. However, part of the charge may apply in some cases.
* You need a user ID and password to access e-site via your PC.
* If you do not have and forget network PIN, user ID and password, contact to the above-mertioned numbers.
* There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 273 of 372

Network services available using FOMA terminal

The following convenient network services are available:

Service	Description	Monthly fee required	Application required
Voice Mail Service	Stores messages when FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is turned OFF. → P273	Charged	Required
Call Waiting Service	You can put the current call on hold and answer a call from a third party. → P278	Charged	Required
Call Forwarding Service	Automatically transfers incoming calls when FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is turned OFF. → P281	Free	Required
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Allows you to register the phone number of certain parties and then block incoming calls from the registered phone number. In such a case, a guidance automatically plays informing the caller that calls from that number are rejected. → P285	Charged	Required
Caller ID Notification Service	Notifies the other party of your phone number. → P287	Free	Not required
Caller ID Request Service	Plays a guidance informing the caller that caller ID information is required, then automatically disconnects the call. → P289	Free	Not required
Driving mode	Plays a guidance automatically when an incoming call is received informing the caller that the call cannot be answered because you are driving. → P76	Free	Not required
Dual Network Service	Allows you to use a single phone number for both FOMA terminal and the mova. → P291	Charged	Required
English Guidance Service	Allows you to hear the guidance in English. → P292	Free	Not required
Service Dialing Number	Calls DoCoMo for inquiries or for repairs. → P293	Free	Not required
Short Message Service (SMS)	Allows you to exchange text messages between FOMA terminals. → "Application" manual P127	Free	Not required
i-mode	Allows you to send and receive i-mode Mail and access IP (Information Service Provider) site (Program) and Internet Web pages. → "Application" manual P20	Charged	Required

Using network services

Of the available network services, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Services, Dual Network Service and i-mode are optional services that require subscription before use. Subscription contact information is as follows:

■ **For inquiries (in English)**

0120-005-250 (toll-free)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

■ **For inquiries (in Japanese only)**

No prefix 151 (toll-free)

Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

0120-800-000 (toll-free)

Can be called from general subscriber phones

• To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 274 of 372

Using Voice Mail Service <Voice mail>

Callers hear a recording and then leave a message.

- You can access your voice message from anywhere in Japan.
- Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned OFF or is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.
- You must apply to use Voice Mail Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Voice Mail Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

- Up to 20 Voice messages, each 3 minutes long can be recorded.
- Voice messages are stored up to 72 hours.
- Includes a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- When Voice Mail Service is active you are still able to make and receive calls.
- You can answer calls while the terminal is ringing (i.e., Voice Mail Service has not yet picked up the call). You can also change the length of time the phone rings before Voice Mail Service picks up the call (ring time). → P274
- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. An icon indicated on the stand-by display and received calls screens alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.
- Note that, though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Call Forwarding Service OFF, Voice Mail Service is not automatically activated.)
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center. → P68
  You can also forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center while on the phone. → P294
- Voice Mail Service can be accessed from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Activate the remote control beforehand. → P296
- When a call without caller ID is received while Caller ID Request Service is ON, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID.
- When a video-phone call is received, the call is not transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, even if Voice Mail Service is set. The call is received as a normal video-phone call.
- During a call, the call waiting ring tone (ring alert during packet communication) notifies you of a new call that arrives.

For details of operation, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step1 Record your response message (default setting 1 4 1 6)

↓

Step2 Activate the service

↓

Step3 The caller leaves a message*

↓

Step4 Play back the voice message

*: The caller when in a hurry can press # on their telephone to skip hearing the response and proceed directly to recording mode.

About Voice Mail Service fees

Use of Voice Mail Service requires communication fees for hearing voice messages, in addition to the monthly charge. For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 275 of 372

Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service

You activate and deactivate Voice Mail Service. You also easily confirm the current settings.

Activating Voice Mail Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to activate Voice Mail Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the voice mail ringing time.

3 Select "Yes", press ●.



- Select "No" and press ● to activate Voice Mail Service by dedault ringing time (10 seconds) without ringing time setting.

4 Enter the desired ring time and press ●.

Voice Mail Service is activated.

- Enter a ringing time between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the number by pressing ▲ ▼.

5 Press ●.

Voice Mail Service menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- You can set only the ring time by pressing MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 2 ABC on the stand-by display.
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (using packet communication), you can choose to transfer the call to Voice mail.
  To manually forward the incoming call → P68
- If Ringing Time setting has been changed, the setting is retained.

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to deactivate Voice Mail Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Voice Mail Service is deactivated.

3 Press ●.

Voice Mail Service menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 276 of 372

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.



INFORMATION

- You can change the setting to select from the submenu.
  - To activate Voice mail Service: MENU 1
  - To deactivate Voice mail Service: MENU 2
  - To set Ringing Time: MENU 3

Hearing voice messages

When there are voice messages, the icon and the number of voice messages are displayed on the stand-by display (1 indicates the number of voice messages).

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play the voice message.

2 Select "Yes", press ● and follow the voice prompts.

The voice message is played.

INFORMATION

- New voice messages can also be played quickly from the stand-by display (Focus mode). → P42
- If you press side keys [▲▼] with FOMA terminal folded, ☎ is indicated on the sub-display. → P35
- The number displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include saved voice messages.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 277 of 372

Using voice prompts to set up Voice Mail Service

You set up Voice Mail Service by following voice prompts.

1 **Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set Voice Mail Service.

2 **Select "Yes", press ● and follow the voice prompts.**

Voice Mail Service is set.

- To check if there is a new voice message or listen to a voice message, hang up the phone first.

Checking for new voice messages

You check for new voice messages at Voice Mail Service Center.

1 **Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check messages.

2 **Select "Yes" and press ●.**



3 **Press ●.**

When new voice messages arrive, the existence and the number of voice messages are displayed on the stand-by display.

- If Ring/Vibrate Msg. Alert setting is ON, the notification melody will sound and the terminal will vibrate when a new voice message arrives.

Setting ring tone to sound when a new voice mail arrives <Ring/Vibrate Msg.Alert>

Default	Voicemail alert:ON Notification melody: 着信音 1 (Tone 1)

After an incoming call, you can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or the number of voice messages has increased when you access Voice Mail Service Center to check for new voice mails.

- If any message is found as a result of Check messages, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator setting.
- Messages left after performing "Check Messages" may not apply to this function.
- This function is unavailable in PIM lock ON.
- When All lock, PIM lock, Driving mode or alarm sound is active, alert tone does not sound and the vibrator is not activated.

1 **Press MENU 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.**



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 278 of 372

2 **Select Voicemail alert field, press ● and 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.**

- Press 2 か ABC and go to Step 5 to disable the alert tone.

3 **Select Notification melody field and press ●.**

The folder list of "melody" is displayed.

4 **Select the folder, press ●, select a melody from the melody list and press ●.**

The melody is set and Ring/Vibrate Msg. Alert screen reappears.

- The melody list → "Application" manual P285
- You can play the melody by selecting a melody from the melody list and pressing 📖. During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing side keys [▲▼], ◁ ▷ and play the previous or next melody by pressing 📷 ✉. Press ● to set the melody.

5 **Press 📖.**

Ring/Vibrate Msg. Alert is set.

INFORMATION

- Even when Vibrator is set to "OFF", if Silent mode is active, the vibrator is activated in "pattern B" if any message is found as a result of Check messages (Vibrator set to "ON" for Custom Silent Mode).

Erasing icon of voice message

You can erase the icon and the number of voice messages displayed on the stand-by display (📞 1 indicates the number of voice messages).

1 **Press MENU 9 ら WXYZ 1 あ ./@ 9 ら WXYZ on the stand-by display.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the icon.

2 **Select "Yes" and press ●.**

The icon of voice message is erased from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- You can also erase the icon and the number of voice messages temporally by selecting the icon on the stand-by display and holding down C クリア for over a second.
- The icon and the number of voice messages once erased will reappear if the power is turned OFF and ON or reception of new voice message is notified.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 279 of 372

Using Call Waiting Service <Call Waiting>

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

- You can also place the current call on hold and call another party.
- You must apply to use Call Waiting Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Call Waiting Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- When a call without Caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, a guidance is played requesting to notify the Caller ID and Call Waiting Service cannot be used. → P289
- Call Waiting Service does not operate under the following conditions:
  - When dialing 104, 110, 117, 118 and 119
  - When you are dialing or calling another party
  - While you are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center as a user of the service, e.g. for replaying messages
  - When you make a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, including 1411 (activating Voice Mail service) and 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding service)
  - During a video-phone call (the call is stored as missed call in the received call list)
  - When a video-phone call is received during a voice call (the call is stored as missed call in the received call list)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- You cannot make a video-phone call during a call.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting Service

You activate and deactivate Call Waiting Service. You also confirm the current setting.

Activating Call Waiting Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 2 ABC 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to activate Call Waiting Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Call Waiting Service is activated.

3 Press ●.

Call Waiting Service menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- To use Call Waiting Service, set Incoming Call Manipulation to "Answer". → P294
  In other settings, Call Waiting Service cannot be used even if it is activated.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 280 of 372

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 2 ABC 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to deactivate Call Waiting Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Call Waiting Service is deactivated.

3 Press ●.

Call Waiting Service menu is displayed.

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 2 ABC 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting content is displayed.

3 Press ●.

Call Waiting Service menu is displayed.

Putting current call on hold to talk to another caller

1 Press 文字 while talking.

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- Press ▷ to switch between the other party.
- When "Hold" is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing ●. Press ● again to release on hold.

2 Press 電源 when you finish talking to the other party.

This ends the call and the ring tone sounds.

- Press 文字 to switch back to the other party on hold.

Answering incoming call after finishing current call

1 Press 電源 while talking.

A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

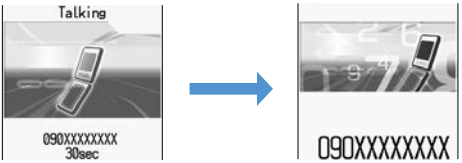
2 Press 文字.

You are connected to the new party.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 281 of 372

Holding current call and making another call

1 Press MENU 8 while talking and dial the phone number.



- Press MENU 1 to call back from the received call list or press MENU 2 to make a call from the redial list. If you make a call to the other party registered in the Phonebook, press MENU 3, select the other party on the Phonebook and then press 文字.

2 Press 文字.

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- Press 四方 to switch between the other party.
- When "Hold" is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing ○.

3 Press 電源 when you finish talking to the other party.

The call ends.

- Press 文字 to switch back to the other party on hold.

Finishing call on hold

1 Press MENU 7 during Multi-connection.

The call on hold ends.

INFORMATION

- During Multi-connection, you cannot receive incoming calls. The call is stored as missed call in the received call list.

Catch Phone is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 282 of 372

Using Call Forwarding Service <Call Forwarding>

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, is turned OFF or you cannot answer the call.

- The service is available anywhere within the FOMA service area nationwide.
- You must apply to use Call Forwarding Service. No monthly fee is required.
- Call Forwarding Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

- Only one forwarding destination can be set.
- When Call Forwarding Service is ON, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination.
- You can change the length of time the phone rings before a call is forwarded (ring time). → P282
- You can forward incoming calls. → P68
  You can also forward incoming calls while you are on the phone. → P294
- Note that though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Voice Mail Service OFF, Call Forwarding Service is not automatically activated.)
- When a call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is ON, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID and Call Forwarding Service cannot be used.
- Call Forwarding Service can be operated from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set the remote control beforehand. → P296
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard (→ P84) even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings. The video-phone caller cannot hear the guidance.
- During a call, the call waiting ring tone (ring alert during packet communication) notifies you of a new call that arrives.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step1 Set the forwarding destination phone number

↓

Step2 Activate Call Forwarding Service

↓

Step3 Call comes in to FOMA terminal

↓

Step4 Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination

About Call Forwarding Service fees

No monthly charge + Call charge

Caller ⟷ Party who subscribes to Call Forwarding Service ⟷ Forwarding destination

Charged to caller.

Charged to Call Forwarding Service subscriber.

* When a call is forwarded from a Call Forwarding Service subscriber phone, from the forwarding source to the destination will be charged to the Call Forwarding Service subscriber.

* There is no call charge for setting the forwarding destination, activating and deactivating the service, and setting the ring time.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 283 of 372

Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

You activate and deactivate Call Forwarding Service. You also check settings such as the phone number of the forwarding destination.

- When Call Forwarding is activated (forwarding), collect calls (with payment to be made by the receiver) cannot be answered.

Activating Call Forwarding Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to activate Call Forwarding Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the forwarding phone number.

3 Select "Yes" and press .



4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number, press .

- Toll-free and 3-digit numbers such as 110 cannot be specified as forwarding destinations.
- Up to 26 digits can be entered.
- "#" and "＊" can be entered.

To set forwarding destination phone number from phonebook entries

① Press MENU while 📖 is indicated in the guide row.

- The search result screen used for the previous call is displayed. Note that, phonebook data for which the secret attribute has been set is displayed only in Secret mode. → P201
- Press MENU to search again by changing the search method.
- Press 📖 to select from the phonebook in a UIM.
- When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, the phone number 1 is automatically entered.

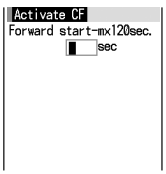
② Select the forwarding destination phone number and press .

The phone number is entered and the forwarding phone number setting screen reappears.

5 Press 📖.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the forwarding ringing time.

6 Select "Yes" and press .



- Select "No" and press to activate Call Forwarding Service by default ringing time (7 seconds) without ringing time setting.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 284 of 372

7 Enter the ringing time and press ●.

Call Forwarding Service is activated.

- You can set a ringing time of between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the number by pressing 📷 ｽﾋﾟｰｶ.

8 Press ●.

Call Forwarding Service menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If you are outside of service area or the power is OFF, calls are automatically transferred without the ring tone sounding. Also in this case, Call Forwarding Service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to destination.
- Transfer may be suspended if the forwarding destination so requests and DoCoMo determines this to be necessary.
- Note that specifying a PBX, beeper* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause misunderstanding by callers.
  * : From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (using packet communication), you can choose to forward the call to the forward phone number.
  To manually forward the incoming call → P68
- If Ringing Time setting has been changed, the setting is retained.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.

3 Press ●.

Call Forwarding Service menu is displayed.

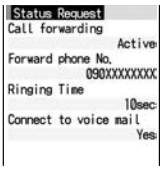
Checking current setting

You check service activation/deactivation and the forwarding destination phone number.

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.



The specified settings are displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 285 of 372

Changing forwarding destination

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

The forwarding phone number setting screen is displayed.

2 Enter the forwarding destination number, press ● and press ●.

- Operation procedure → P282

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The forwarding destination phone number is changed.

4 Press ●.

Call Forwarding Service menu is displayed.

Setting Voice Mail Service to handle calls when forwarding destination is busy

You set Voice Mail Service to handle calls when the forwarding destination is busy.

- You must apply to use Voice Mail Service.

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to the Voice Mail Service Center.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

FOMA terminal is set so that Voice Mail Service handles calls when the forwarding destination is busy.

- Select "No" and press ● to deactivate Voice Mail Service not to handle calls.

3 Press ●.

Call Forwarding Service menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 286 of 372

Using Nuisance Call Barring Service <Nuisance Call Barring>

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- FOMA terminal can register up to 30 nuisance phone numbers.
- You must apply to use Nuisance Call Barring Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Nuisance Call Barring Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- If a video-phone call is received from the phone number for which Reject call is set, the video-phone call is disconnected without the call rejection guidance.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Registering phone number of last call

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 4 GHI 1 ./@ on the stand-by display after disconnecting a nuisance call.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to register the phone number.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

The phone number of the latest call is registered in the nuisance call list and is rejected in future. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls, etc. cannot be stored.

3 Press .

Nuisance Call Barring menu is displayed.

When 30 phone numbers have already been registered

A screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number on the list. Select "Yes" and press to delete the oldest phone number from the list and allows you to register a new phone number.

Storing specified phone number

1 Press 1 ./@ 4 GHI 4 GHI on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

The specified phone number is registered.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 287 of 372

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls to be rejected by Nuisance Call Barring Service and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls to be rejected by Nuisance Call Barring Service
Voice mail Service	Call rejection recording is played. No message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Call rejection recording is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	Call rejection recording is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Call rejection recording is played. The Caller ID Request Service guidance is not played.
Driving mode	Call rejection recording is played. The Driving mode recording is not played.

- You can register "User unset" on the nuisance call list.
- You cannot check for or inquire about phone numbers registered on the nuisance call list. It is recommended that you make a note of the phone numbers registered in the call rejection recording.
- International phone calls cannot be registered on the nuisance call list.
- When there is an incoming call from a number on the nuisance call list, no ring tone sounds. The call is not recorded in the received calls.

Deleting registered phone numbers

You can delete phone numbers one-by-one, beginning with the most recently registered. You can also delete all phone numbers at once.

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 4 GHI 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the phone number.

• Press MENU 9 WXYZ 4 GHI 2 ABC to delete all phone numbers.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The most recently registered phone number is deleted.

3 Press ●.

Nuisance Call Barring menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 288 of 372

Notifying your phone number to other party's <Caller ID Notification>

When you make phone calls, you set FOMA terminal to display your number (Caller ID) on the other party's terminal.

- Caller ID information is important. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when you make a call.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the phone of the other party has the ability to display the caller ID such as digital mobile phones.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Notification Service. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

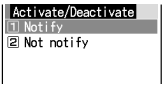
For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Notify or Do-not-notify caller ID information

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 5 JKL 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

The network security code entry screen is displayed.

2 Enter the network security code (4 digits) and press ●.



3 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

Caller ID Notification is set.

4 Press ●.

Caller ID Notification menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If you hear a guidance message requesting your caller ID, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- If the caller sends the caller ID, the other party's phone number is displayed on the screen. (When the other party's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed.)
  Displaying names → P102
  When the caller ID for an incoming call is not displayed, the reason is displayed as follows:

Display	Status
User unset	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone.*1
Not supported	The call was made from a line that does not support the send caller ID function.*2

*1: Includes calls from NTT payphones and DoCoMo public carphones.
*2: Includes calls from overseas or from general subscriber phones via various forwarding services. Caller IDs may be notified depending on connecting phone companies.

- Network security code → P188

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 289 of 372

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 5 JKL 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

The settings are displayed.

3 Press .

Caller ID Notification menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 290 of 372

Using Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Request Service>

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID information. This helps you avoid problems caused by nuisance calls, etc.

- You cannot use the Caller ID Request Service over the video-phone.
- Caller ID Request Service operates when no caller ID is notified because "User unset" is set. This service does not operate when no caller ID is notified because of "Not supported" or "Payphone".
- The caller is charged for calls while the guidance requesting the caller ID information plays.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Request Service. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Request Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 6 MNO 1 .@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to activate Caller ID Request.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Call ID Request Service is activated.

3 Press ●.

Caller ID Request menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Caller ID Request Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls with caller ID unsent
Voice mail Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. No message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played.
Nuisance Call Barring Service	If the call originates from a number on the nuisance call list, the call rejection guidance is played. The Caller ID Request Service guidance is not played.
Driving mode	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. The Driving mode guidance is not played.

- When there is an incoming call with User unsent while Caller ID Request Service is activated, no ring tone sounds. The call is not recorded in the received calls.
- Caller ID Request Service can be started/canceled only with FOMA terminal with your own UIM attached. Remote control is not available (→P296). Operation for starting/canceling the service does not require call charge.
- If Anonymous caller of FOMA terminal is set as well as this service, this service is given priority.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 291 of 372

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 6 MNO 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to deactivate Caller ID Request Service.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

Caller ID Request Service is deactivated.

3 Press .

Caller ID Request menu is displayed.

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 6 MNO 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

The setting is displayed.

3 Press .

Caller ID Request Service menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 292 of 372

Using Dual Network Service <Dual Network>

Dual Network Service allows you to use the mova with the same phone number on FOMA terminal.

Even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can communicate with others by switching FOMA terminal to the mova.

- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- You must apply to use Dual Network Service. A monthly fee is required.
- You cannot switch between FOMA terminal and the mova from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Activating FOMA terminal

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 5 JKL 1 .@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to switch the mova.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The network security code entry screen is displayed.

3 Enter the network security code (4 digits) and press ●.

Switching network takes place.

4 Press ●.

Dual Network menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- Network security code → P188

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 5 JKL 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting is displayed.

3 Press ●.

Dual Network menu is displayed.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal is still available for the current FOMA i-mode service. While the mova is available for i-mode service with some exceptions. Moreover, when using i-mode or various network services, FOMA terminals and mova are subject to their respective restrictions and precautions for network facilities. For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 293 of 372

Switching language for guidance <English Guidance>

You can switch the language used for the guidance the other party will hear when the phone is outside range or FOMA terminal is turned OFF, etc. You can switch both the guidance you hear (language used when making a call) and the guidance that other parties hear (language used when receiving a call).

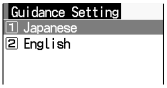
- Guidance in "Japanese" and "English" are provided.
- You do not need to apply to use English Guidance. No monthly fee is required.
- You cannot switch the language used for guidance from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- You cannot use English Guidance when you make or receive a video-phone call.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.

For details of operation, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 4 GHI 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the language to use when making a call.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

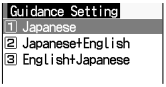


Item	Description
Japanese	Sets the guidance to Japanese for you to hear at the time of calling.
English	Sets the guidance to English for you to hear at the time of calling.

3 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to set the language used while receiving a call.

4 Select "Yes" and press ●.



Item	Description
Japanese	Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.
Japanese+ English	Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.
English+ Japanese	Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.

5 Press 1 ./@ to 3 DEF.

The voice prompt is switched.

6 Press ●.

English Guidance menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 294 of 372

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 4 GHI 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

The setting content is displayed.

3 Press .

English Guidance menu is displayed.

Using Service Dialing Number <Service Dialing Number>

Calls are made to DoCoMo for repairs or for inquiries.

- Use of Service Dialing Number does not require a separate application or monthly fee.
- Service Dialing Number cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate in a location where good signal quality is obtained.
- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for repairs and DoCoMo for inquiries may differ depending on the UIM types.

For operation details, see "FOMA Network Operations Guide".

Calling DoCoMo for repairs

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 6 MNO 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a call.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

Call is made to DoCoMo for repairs.

Calling DoCoMo for inquiries

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 6 MNO 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a call.

2 Select "Yes" and press .

Call is made to DoCoMo for inquiries.

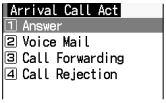
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 295 of 372

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while on phone <Arrival Call Act>

During a voice call or 64K data communications, you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services.
- You can perform this operation from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during a call, and 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during 64K data communication are rejected (handled according to "Call rejection").

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.



Menu	Description
1 **Answer**	You can answer or disconnect the second call received during a call or a 64K data communication (Call Waiting Service must be subscribed and activated).
2 **Voice Mail**	Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by the Voice Mail Service.
3 **Call Forwarding**	The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is forwarded to the set forwarding destination.
4 **Call Rejection**	The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is rejected and no ringing tone sound.

2 Press 1 あ ./@ to 4 た GHI.

Arrival Call Act is selected.

- Set Arrival Act is not activated even when you have selected a method for handling incoming calls. You must also activate Set Arrival Act. → P295
- If you set this function to "Voice Mail", the Voice Mail service is automatically set to activate and operates even while it is set to OFF.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 296 of 372

Activating/Deactivating Arrival Act <Set Arrival Act>

You activate or deactivate the response method selected by Arrival Call Act. In addition, you also check the settings.

- Arrival Call Act cannot be set from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

Activating/Deactivating Set Arrival Act

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 あ ./@ or 2 か ABC.

- To activate, press 1 あ ./@.
- To deactivate, press 2 か ABC.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Set Arrival Act is activated/deactivated.

4 Press ●.

Set Arrival Act menu is displayed.

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 7 PQRS 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting content is displayed.

3 Press ●.

Set Arrival Act menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 297 of 372

Setting remote control <Remote Control>

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones.

- You cannot set Remote control from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- When operating a fixed-line answering machine from the FOMA terminal, there may be a case that the machine would not receive the call depending on the equipment.

For operation details, see "FOMA Network Operations Guide".

Activating/Deactivating Remote

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



2 Press 1 ./@ or 2 ABC.

- To activate, press 1 ./@.
- To deactivate, press 2 ABC.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

Remote control is activated/deactivated.

4 Press ●.

Remote menu is displayed.

Checking current setting

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to check the setting.

2 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The setting content is displayed.

3 Press ●.

Remote menu is displayed.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 298 of 372

Using to register new services <Added service (Register USSD)>

When a new Network Service is introduced, you use the service by registering it in the menu.

- Up to 10 services can be stored.

Registering/Changing services

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 1 .@ on the stand-by display.



- The USSD registering screen has 2 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch screens.

2 Select the number to record the service and press .



- You can change previously registered contents by selecting a field that is already in use.

3 Select the USSD code field, enter the USSD code and press .

- Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in USSD code field. Service code is the code used to make settings for the network service. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.

4 Select the Name (service name) field, enter the name (service name) and press .

- The name (service name) can contain up to a maximum of 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

5 Press .

The service is registered/changed.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 299 of 372

Using registered service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 1 ./@ on the stand-by display.



- The USSD registering screen has 2 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch screens.

2 Press 1 ./@ to 8 TUV.

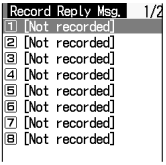
The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center.

Registering/Changing answering message

You can register messages corresponding to a code returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. The reply message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 2 ABC on the stand-by display.



- The answering message registering screen has 2 pages. Press ◁▷ to switch screens.

2 Press 1 ./@ to 8 TUV.



- You can change previously registered contents by selecting a field that is already in use.

3 Select USSD code field, enter the USSD code and press ●.

• Enter the USSD code provided by DoCoMo.

4 Select Answer message field, enter the answer message and press ●.

• The reply message can contain up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

5 Press 📖.

The reply message is registered/changed.

INFORMATION

- Entering characters → P302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 300 of 372

Deleting registered service

1 Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 1 .@ on the stand-by display.



- Press MENU 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ 2 ABC to delete the answer message.
- The USSD registering screen has 2 pages. Press ◁ ▷ to switch screens.

2 Select the service to delete and press MENU 1 .@.

- Press MENU 2 ABC to delete all services.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The service is deleted.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 301 of 372

Entering Characters

Entering characters 302

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 303 of 372

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering character.

- There are two methods for entering characters: "5-touch input method" and "Slot input method".
  In 5-touch input method, several characters are assigned to each key and the character produced depends on how many times a key is pressed. For details on dial key and character assignment, refer to "List of dial keys and character assignments". → P305
  In Slot input method, use  to select characters from the upper and lower input bars. → P322
- There are 2 font types: "two-byte characters" and "one-byte characters".
  1 two-byte character is counted as 2 one-byte characters. Voiced sound and semi-voiced sound one-byte characters are also counted as one character.
- Use code input to enter characters whose readings you do not know. → P317
- A total of 6355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a simplified form.

Font type

○ : Available × :Unavailable — :No character

Input method / Font type	5-touch input method		Slot input method	
	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte
Hiragana/kanji	○	—	○	—
Katakana	○	○	×	○
Alphabet	○	○	×	○
Numeric	○	○	×	○
Symbol	○	○	○	○
Pictogram	○	—	○	—

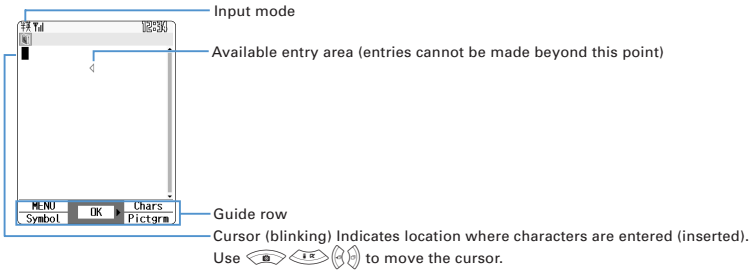
Character entry screen

There are two types of character entry fields: full-screen entry mode in which the screen is switched to the entering screen and in-line entry mode in which text can be directly entered into the entry field without switching screens.

- Some entry fields may only be able to use one character entry type.

Full-screen entry

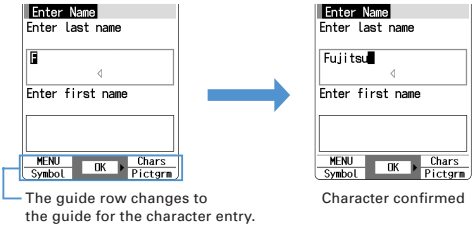
Select the entry field and press  to display the full-screen entry area.



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 304 of 372

In-line entry

Select the entry field and press 0 to 9, *, #, to enable character entry directly into the entry field.



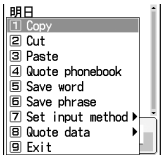
INFORMATION

- Some entry fields indicate entered characters as "✳". Characters are changed to "✳" either or when they are entered or after editing.

Character entry screen submenu

Press MENU while entering characters.

- The items that are displayed depend on the entry field.



When entering by slot input display

Item	Description	Page
1 **Copy**	Copies characters.	P316
2 **Cut**	Cuts characters.	P316
3 **Paste**	Pastes copied/cut characters.	P317
4 **Quote phonebook**	Quotes entries of the phonebook data.	P320
5 **Save word**	Saves the entered characters as a word.	P318
6 **Save phrase**	Saves the entered characters as a phrase.	P315
7 **Set input method**	Sets an input method.	P324
8 **Quote data**	Quotes User Information, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by the barcode reader on the URL entry screen or i-mode entry screen. * Items displayed depend on the entry field.	P320, 321
9 **Exit**	Ends character entry. This is displayed only when characters are entered in the slot input method.	—

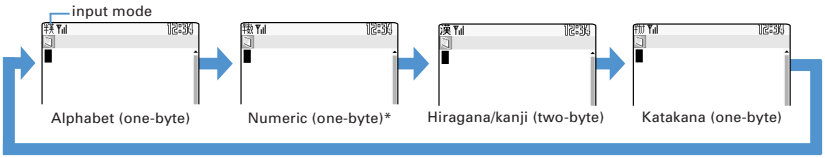
Note: In case of mail text entry field, submenu items can be displayed while characters in entry window (appears when any characters entered) are confirmed.

Changing input modes

There are 2 methods for switching input modes; the available input modes are different depending on the entry screen.

Using to change modes

The input modes change each time is pressed.



*: This is not display by slot input method.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 305 of 372

Using input mode list to change modes

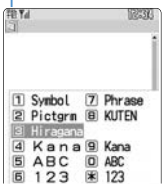
You can select the following input mode from the displayed input mode list by pressing (m) while entering characters.

Item	Mode		Item	Mode	
Hiragana*	Hiragana/kanji characters	漢	Kana*	One-byte katakana characters	ｶﾅ
Ｋａｎａ	Two-byte katakana characters	カナ	ABC*	One-byte alphabet characters	ｱｱ
ＡＢＣ	Two-byte alphabet characters	ａａ	123	One-byte numbers	ｱｱ
１２３	Two-byte numbers	０１			

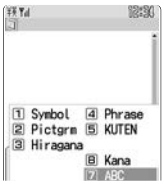
*: Item displayed on the entry mode list of Use Slot input.

* ぁ is displayed when only hiragana can be entered.

Input mode



<5-touch>



<slot>

- Press (c) (R) (L) (R) or supporting dial keys to select input mode.
- The following operations can also be performed by making selections from the input mode list.
  "Symbol" : enters symbols → P309
  "Pictgrm" : enters pictograms → P309
  "Phrase" : enters fixed phrases → P311
  "KUTEN" : uses code input to enter characters → P317

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 306 of 372

Entering characters using 5-touch input method <5-touch input method>

List of dial keys and character assignments

In 5-touch input method, characters are assigned to the dial keys as shown in the table below.

In the kana, alphabet and numeric modes, one-byte or two-byte characters are entered according to the selected input mode.

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte) *1	Kana mode (two-byte or one-byte)	Alphabet mode (two-byte or one-byte)	Numeric mode (two-byte or one-byte)*3
1 あ ,/@	あ い う え お 1	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. / @ ~ *2 — ： ＿ [¥] ^ ` { | } 1	1
2 か ABC	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3 さ DEF	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4 た GHI	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5 な JKL	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6 は MNO	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7 ま PQRS	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8 や TUV	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9 ら WXYZ	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0 わ 記号	わ を ん ー 、 。 ・ ？ ！ 「 」 □ 0	ワ ヲ ン ー 、 。 ・ ？ ！ 「 」 □ 0	！ ” # $ % & ’ ( ) ＊ ＋ , ； ＜ ＝ ＞ ？ □ 0	0 ＋ *4
＊ 濁点	゛ ゜	゛ ゜	*The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character. @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	＊ P *4
# 改行	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed # T *4
▽	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	
▲	Changes upper/ lower case	Changes upper/ lower case	Changes upper/ lower case	

□ : Indicates blank space.

■ : Press ▲ (A/a) after entering a character to toggle between upper and lower case.

*1 : Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 : This character is entered as "~" in the one-byte alphabet mode.

*3 : In numeric mode, "＊", "#", "P", "T" and "+" numeric mode characters can only be entered in an entry field that supports them.

*4 : Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

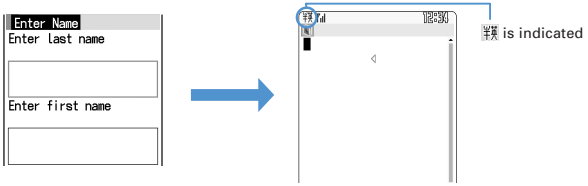
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 307 of 372

- To enter small hiragana or katakana or upper-case alphabetical characters, press (A/a) after entering a character. Small/upper case and large/lower-case alternates every time (A/a) is pressed.
- Pressing immediately after entering a character brings back the previous character. The order of character switching is reversed every time is pressed. (Ex.: ... → 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 → ...)
- To successively enter characters assigned to the same key, press after entering the first character to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character. To successively enter characters assigned to different keys such as " あか ", press 1 あ to enter " あ " followed by 2 か to enter " か ".
- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the Automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right.
  - Hiragana/kanji, - Two-byte/one-byte katakana, - Two-byte/one-byte alphabet
- You can perform the following operations after the Automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right by pressing , and .
  - : adding voiced sound/semi-voiced sound (Hiragana and two-byte/one-byte katakana)
  - : toggling between upper case/lower case (Hiragana, two-byte/one-byte katakana and two-byte/one-byte alphabet)
  - : return to the previous character
- You can change the time before the cursor moves automatically. You can also disable the Automatic cursor function. → P324

Entering characters <Kana/kanji conversion>

<Example> Entering " 鈴木 " in the phonebook

1 Select the Enter last name field in the phonebook registering screen and press .



2 Press two times to switch the input mode to hiragana/kanji mode and enter " すずき ".



「す」→ press 3 さ three times.
Press to move the cursor one position to the right.
「ず」→ press 3 さ three times and press .
「き」→ press 2 か twice.

- Press クリア to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- Enter the character and press to enter " ゛ " and " ゜ ".
  <Example> After entering " ほ " each pressing of , changes the character as follows: " ぼ " → " ぽ " → " ほ ".
  For characters that do not accept " ゛ " or " ゜ " are entered as two-byte characters.
- Pressing MENU changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 308 of 372

3 Press 📖.



- When the desired character is not displayed, press 📷 ｷｸ or 📖. A list of conversion options is displayed. Select the desired character.
- Press ｷｸ to convert text to kana/kanji when a predict conversion option is not displayed. Predict conversion →P308
- Press クリア to restore the entry before conversion.

4 Press ●.

The character is set.

■ To display the list of conversion options

When one pressing of 📖 fails to produce the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing 📷 ｷｸ or 📖. If the conversion option list has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing 📖 and MENU, respectively. Press 📷 ｷｸ, select conversion options and press ● (or press the key for the number of the option).



■ Setting hiragana without conversion

Press ● after entering the hiragana.

■ Inserting characters

Press 📷 ｷｸ ◁▷ to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

■ Deleting characters

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
  - Press クリア to delete the character at cursor position.
  - Hold down クリア for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all other characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
  - Press クリア to delete the character to the left of the cursor position.
  - Hold down クリア for over a second to delete all entered characters.

■ Entering line feed

Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press #.

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press ●.

Character entry is exited and the phonebook registering screen reappears.

- Delete all characters and press クリア to discard entered characters and exit character entry.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 309 of 372

INFORMATION

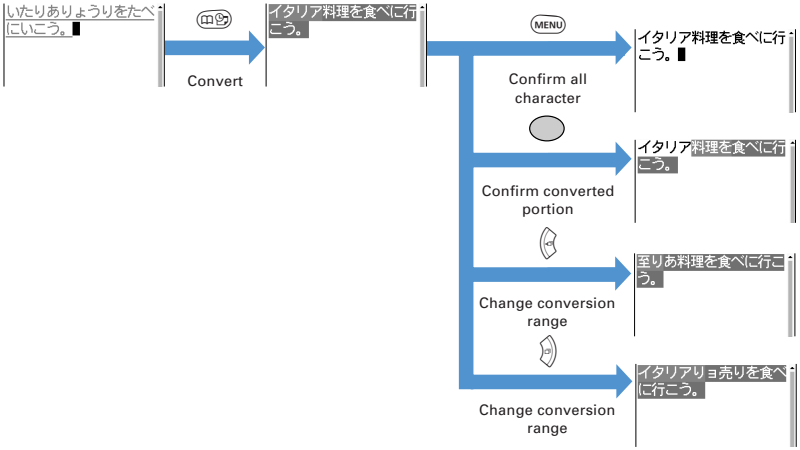
- On the i-mode Mail text editing screen, icons (■A.) are indicated at the top of the screen and "Decorate mail" is displayed in the guide row. Press ✉ to select an icon with ◁ ▷ or press MENU 1 to select a desired item for composing mail with decorated characters (DECOmail). → "Application" manual P132

Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be block converted to simplify text entries.

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

<Example> "イタリア料理を食べに行こう。" is converted as shown below.



INFORMATION

- You can enter symbols, pictograms, alphabetic, Greek characters, etc. by entering the readings in hiragana. For relationships between the readings and characters, see "List of entries and conversion of special symbols" and "List of pictogram entries and conversion" in Appendix. → P338, P340

Using predict conversion function

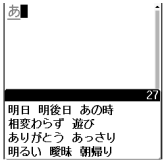
When characters are entered, the predict conversion function displays a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading, from which you can select the desired characters. Predict conversion function automatically registers previously entered characters; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
  - Standard words - Words entered for kana-kanji conversion - Character strings registered as words
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
  - During in-line entry (direct insertion of text into entry fields)
  - Slot input method → P322
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. → P324

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 310 of 372

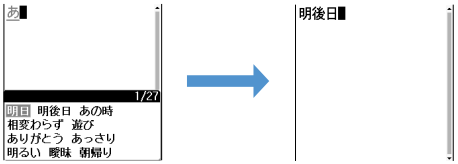
1 Enter characters.

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.



- The options are gradually narrowed down as more characters are entered.
- Press (メール) to convert text to kanji.
- Press ( ) to set the text unchanged as hiragana.
- Press (MENU) to change characters to two-byte katakana.

2 Press (i モード) to select an option and press ( ).



- When there are no appropriate words, press (メール) to convert text to kana-kanji conversion and list of the words vanish.
- The options are narrowed down as more characters are entered. When the options have been narrowed down, press (i モード) again to select from the options.

INFORMATION

- Words and strings that are registered using the predict conversion function (predict dictionary data) are deleted when "Reset" is executed. → P255

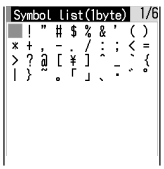
Entering symbols and pictograms

Symbols and pictograms can be entered from lists.

- Only supported characters are listed.
- Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.
- Pictograms contained in mail sent to the other party other than i-mode terminal may not be displayed correctly.
- Pictogram 2 (the pictograms list after dashed lines → P310) used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.
- For details on the reading (entries) of pictogram, see "List of pictogram entries and conversion" in Appendix. → P340

<Example> Entering symbols

1 Press (▲) on the character entry screen.



- Press (✉) to enter pictograms.
- Pict cannot be selected for entry fields where pictograms or symbols are not available.
- You can also display the symbol list by pressing (メール) (1 あ /@) and also display the pictogram list by pressing (メール) (2 か ABC).
- There are 6 symbol list pages, 3 pictogram list pages. Press (▲) or (✉) to switch the lists.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 311 of 372

2 Select a symbol and press ⬭.

The symbol is entered.

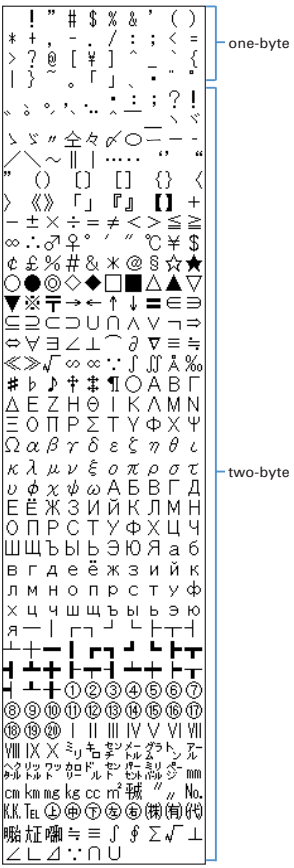
- When the left element [( ] in the following brackets is selected, the right element [)] is also automatically selected.

() [ ] {} 「」 ( ) 〔 〕 [ ] { } ＜ ＞ 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】

Pictogram list



Symbol list



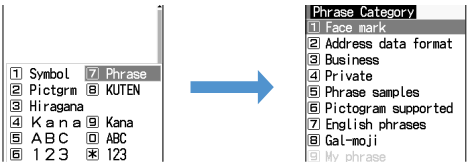
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 312 of 372

Entering fixed phrases

Fixed phrases entered from lists.

- The selected phrase is inserted at the cursor position.
- When the entered phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, excessive characters are ignored.

1 Press (メール) (7 まPQRS) on the character entry screen.



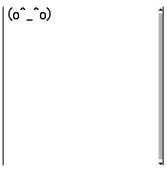
2 Press (1 あ./@) to (8 やTUV).



When selecting 1 Face mark

- When a phrase has been created/registered, you can select a phrase type by pressing (9 らWXYZ).

3 Press (1 あ./@) to (8 やTUV).



The fixed phrase is entered.

- If there is more than one page, press (左) (右) to switch between pages.
- Select a fixed phrase and press (メール) to check it. The fixed phrase is displayed. Press (決定) to enter the fixed phrase.

List of fixed phrases

- Face mark (51 items)

(o^_^o)	(−'`−;)	_¢(。。;)	(◯`ε´◯)
(^ー^)	(;¬_¬)	<(`^´)>	(*¯ε¯*)
(^0^)v	(°0°;)	(¯^¯)	o(°ー°)=◯
(*^▽^*)	Σ(¯□¯|||)	(´ー`)	0(>;)(;>)0
ヽ(▽^ヽ)(ノ^▽)ノ	(;_;)	ヽ(´ー`)ノ	...ρ(..)イジイジ
ヾ(@^▽^@)ノわーい	(;o;)	(°_°)(。_。)(°_°)(。_。)	(・・、)ヾ(^^)ヨシヨシ
ヽ(´▽`)/	(T_T)	('◇')ゞ	(。。)ヾ(^^)いこいこ
(x_x;)	(T-T)	∠(°-°)	(/-＼)イヤン
(^o^;)	(TOT)	(-_-)zzz･･	(^¬^)
(^_^;)	(T^T)	(_ _).oO	(. . ?)
(^^ゞ	(>_<。)	(^0^)(-.-)(_ _)	{{(>_<)}}
(¯▽¯;)	_ρ(。。)	(^0^)/~~	m(_)m
(−。−;)	(._.)φ	(^_^)／~~~	

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 313 of 372

• Address data format (11 items)

http://www.
http://
@docomo.ne.jp
.net
.com
.ne.jp
.co.jp
.or.jp
.go.jp
.ac.jp
XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX ～ XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX Schedule*↵

* : "XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX" indicates the current date and time. Schedules using the Date to function can be entered. → P253

• Business (14 items)

いつもお世話になっております。○○の○○です。
本日はお忙しいところお時間をいただき、誠にありがとうございました。今後ともよろしくお願いいたします。
本日の会議は○○のため中止となりました。ご周知ください。
本日の会議は○○のため○○に延期となりました。ご確認ください。
只今会議中のため、電話に出ることができません。○○後に折り返しご連絡いたします。
只今移動中のため、電話に出ることができません。○○後に折り返しご連絡いたします。
今、○○です。これから帰社します。帰社予定時刻は○○頃です。
今、○○です。このまま帰宅します。
これから出社します。○○頃になります。
これからお伺いさせていただきます。本日の待ち合わせ時間は○○で変更ございませんでしょうか。
只今○○へ出張中です。会社に戻るのは○○の予定です。
○○の件につき、PC にメールを入れておきました。ご確認の程、よろしくお願いいたします。
○○の件につき、至急確認したいことがございます。ご連絡ください。
本日、○○のため、欠勤させていただいております。

• Private (14 items)

今日は一日お疲れ様でした。明日もお互い頑張りましょう。
今日は一日ありがとう。とても楽しかったです。
○○で○○といういいお店を見つけました。今度一緒に行きませんか？
今日、○○という映画を観てきました。とても良かったです。今度是非観てみてください。
今日のデートはどこに行きたい？○○なんてどうかな？
○月○日にみんなで○○へ行く計画をしています。ご一緒にいかがですか？
アドレスを変更しました。新アドレスは@docomo.ne.jp です。電話帳の登録変更をお願いいたします。
○○で○○時に待ち合わせしましょう。よろしくね。
○月○日、飲みに行きませんか？久しぶりにみんなと楽しく飲みたいです。
○月○日、○○へ遊びに行きませんか？久しぶりにみんなと会いたいです。
○月○日の予定はいかがですか？一緒に○○なんてどうかなと思って。
明日はいよいよ、待ちに待った○○です。今日はゆっくり休んで明日に備えましょう。
体調はどうですか？無理しないでゆっくり休んでくださいね。早く良くなりますように。
本日、○○時から○○チャンネルのテレビ番組のビデオ録画をお願いいたします。

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 314 of 372

• Phrase sample (16 items)

【寒中見舞】寒さ厳しき折、お変わりございませんか。御身ご大切になさいますようお祈り申し上げます。
【暑中見舞】暑中お見舞い申し上げます。時節柄、ご健康には十分ご留意のうえご活躍くださいますよう心から祈念いたしております。盛夏
【御礼】時下益々ご盛栄のこととお慶び申し上げます。この度は丁寧なお心遣いをいただき、厚く御礼申し上げます。
【残暑見舞】残暑お見舞い申し上げます。残暑ことのほか厳しい折柄、皆様のご健康をお祈り申し上げます。盛夏
【結婚祝】時下益々ご清栄のこととお慶び申し上げます。この度はご結婚おめでとうございます。お二人の門出を心より祝福申し上げます。
【出産祝】時下益々ご清祥のこととお慶び申し上げます。この度はご出産おめでとうございます。お子様の壮健なご成長を祈念いたします。
【入学祝】ご入学おめでとうございます。充実した学生生活を送り、さらに大きく飛躍されることをお祈りいたします。
【卒業祝】ご卒業おめでとうございます。新しい人生の門出を心よりお祝い申し上げます。
【就職祝】ご就職おめでとうございます。健康に留意され、ご活躍されることを心よりお祈り申し上げます。
【病気見舞】お体の具合はいかがでしょうか。一日も早いご回復を祈念し、心よりお見舞い申し上げます。
【転居案内】転居のご案内を申し上げます。住所、電話番号などは追ってお知らせいたします。取り急ぎご連絡まで。
【詫状】この度は多大なご迷惑をおかけし、誠に申し訳ありません。何卒ご寛容の上、引続きご愛顧賜りますようお願い申し上げます。
【誕生日祝】心から○○様のお誕生日をお祝いいたしますとともに、今後のご健康と御繁栄を祈念いたします。
【成功祝】ご成功の報に接し、心よりお祝い申し上げますとともに、今後の益々のご活躍を祈念いたします。
【就任祝】この度のご就任、心からお喜び申し上げます。今後ますますのご健勝とご隆盛をお祈りいたします。
【人事異動通知】この度弊社の人事異動により○○へ移動となりました。今後ともご指導ご鞭撻の程、宜しくお願いいたします。

• Pictogram supported (22 items)

おはよう☀今日も一日頑張ろう!!
おやすみ✧˖°また明日ね(-_-) z z z …
おやすみ✧˖°いい夢見てねzzz
ありがとう!!今日はとても楽しかったです✋また連絡してね📱
m(__)mごめんなさい。遅れます🚃💨
□＼(__)深く反省してます🤳
もう少し待ってください☁
今、終わりました✋これから帰ります🏠
さようなら👋〜また会える日を楽しみにしてます!!
(o^_^o)はじめまして!ちゃんとメール届いてる✉？
お久しぶりです!元気!?
最近の調子はどう👀👂✋
今日の都合はどう!?
お腹すいたな。食事に行きませんか🍴？
旅行でも行きませんか🚙？
今日何時に終わる♈？
あとで連絡します📱✉
連絡ください✍📱📇
今日は外食します🍴
了解しました✋じゃあね(^o^)/~~
あなたにお任せします🙇
すぐに戻ります👀🚃

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 315 of 372

• English phrases (46 items)

【おはよう】Good morning. Good luck for today.
【こんにちは】HELLO
【おやすみ①】Good night. See you tomorrow.
【おやすみ②】Good night. Sweet dreams.
【ありがとう①】Thank you. I had a great fun today. Call me again.
【ありがとう②】Thank You
【おめでとう】☆Congratulations☆
【ごめん】SORRY ▪ ▪ ▪
【遅れます】Sorry, I'm late.
【反省】I am terribly sorry.
【もう少し待って】Please wait a little longer.
【さようなら①】Good bye. Looking forward to seeing you again.
【さようなら②】BYE BYE
【またね】SEE YOU
【お久しぶり】Long time no hear. How are you?
【最近どう？】What's up?
【後で連絡します】I will call you later.
【連絡ください】Call me, please.
【メール届いた？】Hello, did you get my mail?
【大丈夫？】ARE YOU OK⁉
【もうダメ】GIVE UP Ψ Ψ
【あきらめるな①】NEVER GIVE UP
【あきらめるな②】NEVER DON'T STOP
【君ならできるよ】YOU CAN DO IT
【がんばれ】FIGHT‼
【さぁ】COME ON‼
【乗って】GET ON
【起きろ】GET UP‼ ‼
【起きて】WAKE UP‼
【お先に】GO AHEAD
【今から帰宅】I have just finished. I am going home now.
【会社に戻ります】I'll return to the office.
【今日の予定は？】What is your plan today?
【何時に終わる？】What time are you going to be done today?
【食事のお誘い】I'm hungry. Shall we go eat?
【旅行のお誘い】Let's go on a trip!
【外食します】I eat out today.
【了解】Sure. See you.
【任せます】It's up to you.
【ようこそ】WELCOME
【幸せ】HAPPY ＼（*^ε^*）Chu ッ
【誕生日】HAPPY BIRTHDAY
【謹賀新年】NEW HAPPY NEW YEAR NEW
【クリスマス①】Merry Christmas
【クリスマス②】Merry X'mas
【バレンタイン】HAPPY VALENTINE

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 316 of 372

• Gal-moji (New school character) (9 items)

【今、どこ？】今、└⊂〃⊇？
【ごめん、遅れる】⊇〃めω、遅я ёゑ
【おはよう！】ぉレ£∋ぅ！
【おやすみ！】ぉゃ£ゐ！
【たのしい！】たこσUレヽ！
【ありがとう！】ぁレ)カゞ└⊂ぅ！
【ごめんなさい！】⊇〃めωナょ土レヽ！
【だいすきっ！】たこ〃レヽ£(≠ッ！
【がんばって！】カゞωレ£〃ッて！

• My phrase (up to 50 items)
The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

INFORMATION

- Mail using face mark may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display or due to the fonts used on the other terminal.
- Some face marks are displayed in conversion candidates for "かお (face)".

Registering fixed phrase

Each fixed phrase is registered. Fixed phrases are registered in "My phrase".

- Up to 50 fixed phrases can be registered.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 9 ら WXYZ 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.



2 Select "<New phrase>" and press ●.



- To the fixed phrase already registered, select it and press ●.
- To check a fixed phrase already registered, select it and press 📖. You can edit it by pressing ●.

3 Enter fixed phrases and press ●.

- You can enter up to 64 two-byte or 128 one-byte characters.

4 Press 📖.

The fixed phrase is registered.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes" and press ● to replace. Select "No" and press ● to cancel the operation.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 317 of 372

Deleting fixed phrases

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

The fixed phrase registration screen is displayed.

2 Select the fixed phrase to delete and press MENU.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete.

3 Select "Yes" and press ●.

The fixed phrase is deleted.

Registering during character entry

Entered characters are selected and registered as a fixed phrase.

1 Press MENU 6 MNO on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press ●.

- Press MENU to select the whole sentence.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press ●.

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- Press MENU to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning.
- Press 📖 to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end.

4 Press 📖.

The fixed phrase is registered.

INFORMATION

- A character string selected above that contains blank spaces is processed as follows (When operating from the character entry screen for message text, the blank spaces are valid):
  - Blank spaces only: no data (a character string consisting of blank spaces only cannot be registered as a fixed phrase)
  - Blank spaces before and after a character string: only character string data
  - Blank spaces between characters: the blank spaces are also valid
- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing MENU and selecting "Save" → "Save phrase".
- When there are no stored characters, press MENU 6 MNO to display the fixed phrase edit screen.
- When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, you cannot register a new one.

Copying/Cutting and pasting characters

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere.
In addition, they can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be stored. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 318 of 372

Copying/Cutting

Select an entered character (string) to copy/cut.

<Example> Copying characters

1 Press MENU 1 あ ./@ on the character entry screen.

- Press MENU 2 か ABC to cut the characters.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press ●.

- Press MENU to select the whole sentence.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press ●.

The characters in the selected range is copied.

- Press MENU to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning.
- Press 📖 to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing MENU and selecting "Copy"/"Cut".

Pasting

You can paste the cut or copied characters into a character entry screen.

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, excessive characters are ignored.

1 Press MENU 3 さ DEF on the character entry screen.

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing MENU and selecting "Paste".
- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is disabled.
  For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using code

Characters, numbers and symbols on the code list are entered using 4-digit code.

<Example> Entering "〒" (code number 0209)

1 Press 📖 8 や TUV on the character entry screen.

2 Enter the 4-digit code (0 わを 記号 2 か ABC 0 わを 記号 9 ら WXYZ in this case) and press ●.

"〒" is entered.

- The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
- Entry characters, numbers and symbols without their related code is disabled.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 319 of 372

INFORMATION

- Code input list → P334

Registering frequently used words <Save word>

Storing frequently used words makes it easy to produce them during character conversion.

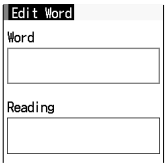
- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 9 ら WXYZ 1 あ ./@ on the stand-by display.



2 Select "<New word>" and press ●.

A screen for editing words is displayed.



- Select it and press ● to change the registered word.
- Select it and press 📖 to check a word. The registered word is displayed. You can edit it by pressing ●.

3 Select the Word field, enter the word to register and press ●.

- You can enter up to 12 two-byte or 24 one-byte characters.
- The following character types can be registered:
  - Hiragana/kanji
  - Two-byte/one-byte katakana
  - Two-byte/one-byte alphabet
  - Two-byte/one-byte numeric
  - Two-byte/one-byte symbol
  - Pictogram

4 Select the Reading field, enter the reading and press ●.

- You can enter up to 16 two-byte characters.
- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press 📖.

The word is registered .

■ Editing registered words

A confirmation screen is displayed.

- Select "Overwrite" and press ● to replace the original word.
- Select "New" and press ● to register the edited word as a new word. The original word is left intact.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 320 of 372

To delete words

① **Select the word to delete from the list and press (MENU).**
The selection screen for deleting procedure is displayed.

② **Select "Delete" and press ●.**
The selected word is deleted.
- Select "Delete all" and press ● to delete all registered words.

INFORMATION

- Only words with a reading can be registered.
- Readings that contain characters other than prolonged sound, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.
- It cannot register, when the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading.
- Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words.
- Words that are registered using the predict conversion function (predict dictionary data) are deleted when "Reset" is executed. →P255

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

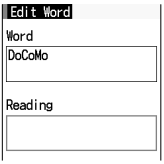
1 Press (MENU) (5 な JKL) on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press ●.

- Press (MENU) to select the whole sentence.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press ●.

The characters in the selected range is selected.



- Press (MENU) to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning.
- Press (📖) to select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end.

4 Enter the reading and register it.

- Operation procedure →P318

INFORMATION

- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing (MENU) and selecting "Save" → "Save word".
- Readings that contain characters other than long vowels, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.
- When there are no entered characters, press (MENU) (5 な JKL) to display the word edit screen.
- When 200 words have already been registered , the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this screen or edit a registered word.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 321 of 372

Quoting data to enter characters

Entries of Phonebook data or user information can be quoted to make entries. You can also enter by quoting the result of calculation with the calculator or string information of the data scanned with the barcode reader.

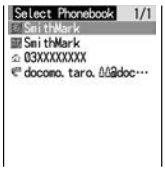
Quoting Phonebook data entry

- This function is unavailable while Privacy mode is ON ("Need auth. to use" is set for Phonebook). → P204
- Make a switch from the character entry screen to full-screen entry (→ P302).
- When "Quote phonebook" in the full-screen entry's submenu is displayed in gray, etc., operation is not possible.

1 **Press MENU 4 た GHI on the character entry screen.**

Phone No. search screen is displayed.

2 **Select Phonebook data to quote and press ●.**



3 **Select the entry to quote and press ●.**

The quoted entry is entered.

Quoting User Information entry

1 **Press MENU 8 や TUV 1 あ ./@ on the character entry screen.**

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint is displayed.

2 **Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.**



3 **Select the user information entry to quote and press ●.**

The quoted entry is entered.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 322 of 372

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- This function is unavailable on the URL entry screen or entry screen during i-mode when "bar code reader" is displayed instead of "Calculator".

1 **Press MENU 8 や TUV 2 か ABC on the character entry screen.**

Calculator screen is displayed.

2 **Make calculation.**

- Operation procedure → P250

3 **Press ○.**

The result is entered.

Quoting data scanned with bar code reader

- This function is unavailable when "Calculator" is displayed instead of "bar code reader" depending on a screen.

1 **Press MENU 8 や TUV 2 か ABC on the character entry screen.**

Camera switches to close-up mode.



2 **Scan a JAN code or QR code.**

The string of the scanned data is entered.

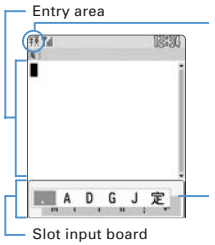
- Operation procedure → "Application" manual P241

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 323 of 372

Entering characters using slot input method <Slot input method>

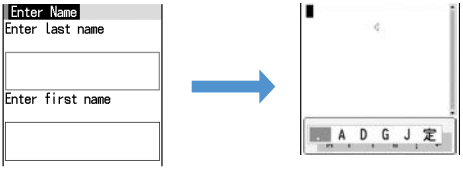
In the slot input method, you use [camera] [clear] [◁] [▷] to select characters displayed in slot input boards.

- The slot input method must be set up before use. → P324



<Example> Entering "鈴木" in the phonebook

1 Select the Enter last name field and press [●].



- Press [✉] and move the cursor by [camera] [clear] [◁] [▷] in the entry area. Press [✉] again to activate the slot input board.

2 Press [文字] twice and enter "すずき".



"す" → press [▷] twice, press [clear] twice and press [●].
"ず" → press [●], press [▷] three times and press [●].
"き" → press [◁] four times, press [clear] once and press [●].

- Press [▲] to replace the upper or lower slot of the input bar with each other.
- Press [文字] to set the characters and switch to the katakana mode (one-byte).

3 Press [辞書].

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in the 5-touch input method. → P305
- The predict conversion function cannot be used.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion, press [クリア].
- Press [MENU] to set the characters as hiragana. The slot input board becomes active at the same time as set.

4 Press [●].

The character is set.

- New characters can be added.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 324 of 372

5 Press ✉ and ⬭.

Character entry is exited and the phonebook registering screen is displayed.

List of characters assigned to input bar

Input bar		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)
Upper slot	あ	あ い う え お ぁ ぃ ぅ ぇ ぉ 1
	か	か き く け こ 2
	さ	さ し す せ そ 3
	た	た ち つ て と っ 4
	な	な に ぬ ね の 5
	゛゜*	゛ ゜
Lower slot	は	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6
	ま	ま み む め も 7
	や	や ゆ よ ゃ ゅ ょ 8
	ら	ら り る れ ろ 9
	わ	わ を ん ー 、。？ ！「」 two-byte space 0
	↵	Line feed

Input bar		Katakana (one-byte)
Upper slot	ｱ	ｱ ｲ ｳ ｴ ｵ ｧ ｨ ｩ ｪ ｫ 1
	ｶ	ｶ ｷ ｸ ｹ ｺ 2
	ｻ	ｻ ｼ ｽ ｾ ｿ 3
	ﾀ	ﾀ ﾁ ﾂ ﾃ ﾄ ｯ 4
	ﾅ	ﾅ ﾆ ﾇ ﾈ ﾉ 5
	ﾞ	ﾞ ﾟ
Lower slot	ﾊ	ﾊ ﾋ ﾌ ﾍ ﾎ 6
	ﾏ	ﾏ ﾐ ﾑ ﾒ ﾓ 7
	ﾔ	ﾔ ﾕ ﾖ ｬ ｭ ｮ 8
	ﾗ	ﾗ ﾘ ﾙ ﾚ ﾛ 9
	ﾜ	ﾜ ﾝ ｰ 、。？！「」one-byte space 0
	↵	Line feed

Input bar		Alphanumeric (one-byte)
Upper slot	・	. / @ ˜ ‒ : _ [\ ] ^ ` { | } 1
	A	A B C a b c 2
	D	D E F d e f 3
	G	G H I g h i 4
	J	J K L j k l 5
	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	M	M N O m n o 6
	P	P Q R S p q r s 7
	T	T U V t u v 8
	W	W X Y Z w x y z 9
	!	! ’’ # $ % & ’ ( ) ｡ ｢ ｣ , ; < = > ? one-byte space 0
	↵	Line feed

*: Symbol displayed switches between "゛" and "゜" with every press of ⬭.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 325 of 372

INFORMATION

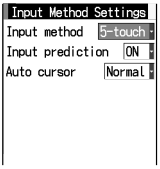
- The predict conversion function cannot be used with the slot input method.
- The character entry submenus → P303

Determining the input method <Input Method Settings>

Default	Input method:5-touch	Input prediction:ON	Auto cursor:Normal

Determines the input method to enter characters.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 3 DEF on the stand-by display.



Item	Description
Input method	Specifies "5-touch" or "slot input" method. • When "Slot" is set, "Input prediction" and "Auto cursor" are disabled.
Input prediction	Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.
Auto cursor	Sets the time period before the cursor to move automatically. • Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor. • Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds. • Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in about 1 second. • Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

2 Select the items to set, press ● and set the desired values.

3 Press 📖.

The setting is recorded.

Changing settings during character entry

1 Press MENU 7 PQRS on the character entry screen.

Set input method options are displayed.

2 Press 1 あ ./@ to 3 さ DEF.

- To switch between "Use 5-touch" and "Use Slot input", press 1 あ ./@.
- To switch between "Prediction ON" and "Prediction OFF", press 2 か ABC.
- To specify the time period before the cursor automatically moves, press 3 さ DEF and set the time by pressing 1 あ ./@ to 4 た GHI.
- When the "Use Slot input" input method is selected, input prediction and Automatic cursor cannot be selected.
- Input method or input prediction is not available during in-line entry (direct insertion of text into entry fields).

INFORMATION

- Reset operation (→P255) restores the default Predict dict. Data for input prediction.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 326 of 372

Appendix

Appendix 326

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 327 of 372

Menu list

The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu settings).
For details on Menu settings → P37

- Page in ■ refer to pages in "Application" manual.

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
1 Mail			
1 Inbox	MENU 1 1 / ✉ 1	———	P151, 183
2 Compose message	MENU 1 2 / ✉ 2 / Hold down ✉ for over a second	———	P129
3 Compose SMS	MENU 1 3 / ✉ 3	———	P176
4 Unsent messages	MENU 1 4 / ✉ 4	———	P144, 179
5 Outbox	MENU 1 5 / ✉ 5	———	P144, 179
6 Check new message			
1 S!mode message	MENU 1 6 1 / ✉ 6 1 / Hold down side key [▼] for over a second	———	P150
2 SMS	MENU 1 6 2 / ✉ 6 2	———	P182
3 receive option	MENU 1 6 3 / ✉ 6 3	———	P148
7 UIM SMS			
1 Received SMS	MENU 1 7 1 / ✉ 7 1	———	P187
2 Sent SMS	MENU 1 7 2 / ✉ 7 2	———	P187
8 Read templates	MENU 1 8 / ✉ 8	Template by default*	P141
9 Mail setting			
1 Incoming Msg. Settings	MENU 1 9 1 / ✉ 9 1	Select mail ring tone: ON, 着信音 1 (Tone 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash, Ocean Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P203
2 Sort messages	MENU 1 9 2 / ✉ 9 2	ON*	P204
3 Signature	MENU 1 9 3 / ✉ 9 3	Yes	P208
4 Reply format	MENU 1 9 4 / ✉ 9 4	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P209
5 Receive option setting	MENU 1 9 5 / ✉ 9 5	OFF	P149

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 328 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
1 Mail			
9 Mail setting			
6 Incoming Msg. Attach.	MENU 1 9 6 / ✉ 9 6	Image: Receive Melody: Receive	P164
7 SMS settings	MENU 1 9 7 / ✉ 9 7	Font type: Japanese Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P210
8 Message Retrieval	MENU 1 9 8 / ✉ 9 8	Select All	P150
9 Display settings			
1 List of messages	MENU 1 9 9 1 / ✉ 9 9 1	Display 2 rows	P195
2 Message attachment	MENU 1 9 9 2 / ✉ 9 9 2	Auto play	P164
2 i-mode			
1 i-Menu	MENU 2 1 / i-α 1	—	P27
2 Bookmark	MENU 2 2 / i-α 2	—	P37
3 Go to location			
1 Enter URL	MENU 2 3 1 / i-α 3 1	—	P35
2 URL history	MENU 2 3 2 / i-α 3 2	—	P35
4 Screen Memo	MENU 2 4 / i-α 4	—	P42
5 Message R&F			
1 Message Request	MENU 2 5 1 / i-α 5 1	—	P117
2 Message Free	MENU 2 5 2 / i-α 5 2	—	P117
6 i-mode message	MENU 2 6 / i-α 6 / Hold down side key [▼] for over a second	—	P116, 150
7 i-mode setting			
1 i-mode shortcuts	MENU 2 7 1 / i-α 7 1	—	P41
2 Connection timeout	MENU 2 7 2 / i-α 7 2	60 seconds	P56
3 Host selection	MENU 2 7 3 / i-α 7 3	HOST: i-mode (FOMA Card)	P56
4 Set certificate	MENU 2 7 4 / i-α 7 4	—	P58
5 Certificate Download	MENU 2 7 5 / i-α 7 5	—	P59

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 329 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
2 mode			
7 mode setting			
6 Certificate Host selection	MENU 2 7 6 / i 7 6	HOST: DoCoMo*	P61
8 Display settings			
1 Image & Effect Settings	MENU 2 8 1 / i 8 1	Image: Display Animation: Display Set lighting: Always ON Sound effect setting: ON	P54
2 Display color	MENU 2 8 2 / i 8 2	Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default	P55
3 motion settings	MENU 2 8 3 / i 8 3	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON motion type setting: Normal type	P112
9 Message settings			
1 Auto display	MENU 2 9 1 / i 9 1	MessageR first	P114
2 Message retrieval	MENU 2 9 2 / i 9 2	Select All	P150
3 Message attachment	MENU 2 9 3 / i 9 3	Auto play	P164
4 Incoming msg. alert	MENU 2 9 4 ☆ / i 9 4	Select ring alert: ON, 着信音 1 (Tone 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash, Ocean Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P115
3 αppli			
1 Software list	MENU 3 1 / Hold down i for over a second	———	P67
2 αppli settings			
1 Software Sort	MENU 3 2 1	By download time	P86
2 Auto start	MENU 3 2 2	ON	P80
3 Software info display	MENU 3 2 3	OFF	P66
4 Light settings	MENU 3 2 4	Use phone setting	P85
5 Vibrate settings	MENU 3 2 5	ON	P85
6 αppli shortcut	MENU 3 2 6	———	P77
3 Display history	MENU 3 3	———	P69, 81, 84
4 Phonebook & Logs			
1 Phonebook	MENU 4 1 /	———	P103
2 Received calls	MENU 4 2 /	———	P70
3 Redial	MENU 4 3 /	———	P64
4 Call logs settings	MENU 4 4	ON	P208
5 Multimedia			
1 Image	MENU 5 1	———	P243
2 motion	MENU 5 2	———	P267
3 Melody	MENU 5 3	———	P285
4 Chara-den	MENU 5 4	———	P97

* : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

☆ : Setting used for messageR and messageF individually.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 330 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
6 Accessories			
1 Camera	MENU 6 MNO 1 あ ./@ / ●	———	P214
2 Video Camera	MENU 6 MNO 2 か ABC / Hold down ● for over a second	———	P224
3 bar code reader	MENU 6 MNO 3 さ DEF	———	P240
4 Scheduler	MENU 6 MNO 4 た GHI / Hold down m for over a second	———	P216
5 Notepad	MENU 6 MNO 5 な JKL	———	P251
6 Ans. machine/Voice memo			
1 Ans. machine settings	MENU 6 MNO 6 は MNO 1 あ ./@ / Side key [▲] 1 あ ./@	Response time: 8 seconds* Set Greeting: Preinstalled*	P78, 80, 81
2 Record messages	MENU 6 MNO 6 は MNO 2 か ABC / Side key [▲] 2 か ABC	———	P82
3 Record voice memo	MENU 6 MNO 6 は MNO 3 さ DEF / Side key [▲] 3 さ DEF	———	P247
4 Voice memos	MENU 6 MNO 6 は MNO 4 た GHI / Side key [▲] 4 た GHI	———	P248
7 Alarm clock	MENU 6 MNO 7 ま PQRS	OFF*	P211
8 Calculator	MENU 6 MNO 8 や TUV	———	P250
7 Data transfer			
1 Send Use Info	MENU 7 ま PQRS 1 あ ./@	———	P301
2 Send all Ir data			
1 Phonebook	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 1 あ ./@	———	P302
2 Schedule	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 2 か ABC	———	P302
3 Received mail	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 3 さ DEF	———	P302
4 Sent mail	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 4 た GHI	———	P302
5 Unsent mail	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 5 な JKL	———	P302
6 Notes	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 6 は MNO	———	P302
7 Bookmarks	MENU 7 ま PQRS 2 か ABC 7 ま PQRS	———	P302
3 Receive Ir data	MENU 7 ま PQRS 3 さ DEF	———	P299
4 Receive all Ir data	MENU 7 ま PQRS 4 た GHI	———	P300
5 Data transfer settings	MENU 7 ま PQRS 5 な JKL	End alert: OFF* Auto Authentication: OFF* Confirmation at saving: ON* Ph.book image sending: ON*	P304
6 miniSDcard	MENU 7 ま PQRS 6 は MNO	———	P308
7 ＩＣ card software list	MENU 7 ま PQRS 7 ま PQRS	———	P94
8 ＩＣ card lock	MENU 7 ま PQRS 8 や TUV	———	P95
8 Settings			
1 Sounds/Vibrate			
1 Select ring tone	MENU 8 や TUV 1 あ ./@ 1 あ ./@	Phone: Melody/着信音1 (Tone 1) Mail, Message R/F: ON, 着信音1 (Tone 1) On-hold tone: On-hold tone (ENTERTAINER) Video-phone: Melody/ハープ (Harp)	P168
2 Ring volume	MENU 8 や TUV 1 あ ./@ 2 か ABC	Level4	P73

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 331 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
1 Sounds/Vibrate			
3 Volume	MENU 8 1 3	Level4	P72
4 Keypad sound	MENU 8 1 4	Electronic	P171
5 Low battery alert	MENU 8 1 5	ON	P53
6 Custom silent mode	MENU 8 1 6	General	P149, 151
7 Vibrator	MENU 8 1 7	All OFF	P152
8 Ring alert delay	MENU 8 1 8	OFF	P154
9 Charge alert	MENU 8 1 9	ON	P171
2 Display			
1 Stand-by display	MENU 8 2 1	Standard image: WaterView	P172
2 Transaction image			
1 Call image	MENU 8 2 2 1	Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image	P180
2 Outgoing msg. image	MENU 8 2 2 2	Standard image	P180
3 Incoming msg. image	MENU 8 2 2 3	Standard image	P180
4 Retrieving image	MENU 8 2 2 4	Standard image	P180
3 Color sheme	MENU 8 2 3	AquaBlue	P181
4 Battery icon	MENU 8 2 4	→ →	P182
5 Display light	MENU 8 2 5	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P183
6 Sub-Display			
1 Sub-display Info	MENU 8 2 6 1	Show callers' info	P184
2 Sub-display format	MENU 8 2 6 2	Stand-by image: Standard image1 Calling image: Standard image Incoming mail img: Standard image Clock display: Japanese large Clock display format: 24 hour	P184
7 Fonts	MENU 8 2 7	Standard	P186
8 Select language	MENU 8 2 8	Use UIM Setting*	P54
3 Security			
1 All lock	MENU 8 3 1	————	P200
2 Secret mode	MENU 8 3 2	Not set	P201
3 PIM lock	MENU 8 3 3	OFF*	P202
4 Keypad dial lock	MENU 8 3 4	OFF	P203
5 UIM	MENU 8 3 5	PIN1 code: 0000* PIN2 code: 0000* PIN code ON/OFF: OFF*	P191 P192 P190
6 Change security code	MENU 8 3 6	0000*	P189
7 Fingerprint settings	MENU 8 3 7	————	P196
8 Privacy mode settings	MENU 8 3 8	Phonebook: General mode* Mail: General mode* i αppli: General mode* Auto start: OFF*	P204

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 332 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
3 Security			
9 Remote lock	MENU 8 3 9	Remote lock: OFF Monitoring period: 3 minutes Receiving calls: 5 times Sender1-3: Not recorded	P206
4 Info/Reset			
1 Call duration	MENU 8 4 1	*	P166
2 Confirm settings	MENU 8 4 2	————	P254
3 Battery level	MENU 8 4 3	————	P52
4 Reset call duration	MENU 8 4 4	————	P167
5 Reset	MENU 8 4 5	Select the check box of all item	P255
5 Clock			
1 Set date and time	MENU 8 5 1	*	P55
2 Auto power ON	MENU 8 5 2	OFF	P209
3 Auto power OFF	MENU 8 5 3	OFF	P210
4 Clock display format	MENU 8 5 4	Clock size: Large Time format: 24 hour Day: Japanese	P187
5 Alarm auto power ON	MENU 8 5 5	OFF	P211
6 Send/Receive			
1 Incoming alert light	MENU 8 6 1	All Flash/Ocean	P245
2 Anonymous caller	MENU 8 6 2	All settings Cancel	P158
3 Headset switch	MENU 8 6 3	Headset + speaker	P258
4 Auto answer	MENU 8 6 4	OFF	P259
5 Reject/Accept call	MENU 8 6 5	Cancel settings	P155
6 Memory reject call	MENU 8 6 6	OFF	P157
7 Status message	MENU 8 6 7	Standard	P163
8 Any key answer	MENU 8 6 8	ON	P164
9 Priority comm mode	MENU 8 6 9	No Set Up	P165
7 Call			
1 Noise reduction	MENU 8 7 1	ON	P160
2 Reconnect alarm	MENU 8 7 2	High alarm	P161
3 On-hold tone	MENU 8 7 3	On-hold tone (ENTERTAINER)	P162
4 Quality alarm	MENU 8 7 4	High alarm	P161
5 Prefix dialing	MENU 8 7 5	009130010	P159
6 Sub address	MENU 8 7 6	ON	P160
7 Close setting	MENU 8 7 7	End the call	P164
8 Video-phone			
1 Video-phone settings	MENU 8 8 1	Voice call auto switch: OFF Display image: Both (Other, Me) Child window: Me Main screen size: Large Send out portrait: ON Moving image quality: Normal Display light: Always ON (Normal)	P97

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 333 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
8 Video-phone			
2 Video-phone image	MENU 8 8 2	Substitute image: Std. Chara-den Answer machine image: Standard image Response hold image: Standard image On-hold image: Standard image	P98
3 Device Settings	MENU 8 8 3	Terminal*	P100
9 Others			
1 Save word	MENU 8 9 1	————	P318
2 Save phrase	MENU 8 9 2	————	P315
3 Text input method	MENU 8 9 3	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P324
4 Self mode	MENU 8 9 4 / Hold down クリア for over a second	OFF	P205
5 NW search method	MENU 8 9 5	Auto select NW*	P256
6 Software Update	MENU 8 9 6	————	P350
9 NW Services			
1 Voice mail			
1 Activate Voice mail	MENU 9 1 1	Yes*	P274
2 Set Ringing Time	MENU 9 1 2	Yes* Ringing time: - - sec*	P274
3 Deactivate Voice mail	MENU 9 1 3	Yes*	P274
4 Voice mail Status Request	MENU 9 1 4	Yes*	P275
5 Play Messages	MENU 9 1 5	Yes*	P275
6 Voice mail Settings	MENU 9 1 6	Yes*	P276
7 Check Messages	MENU 9 1 7	Yes*	P276
8 Ring/Vibrate Msg. Alert	MENU 9 1 8	Voicemail alert: ON Nortification melody: 着信音 1 (Tone 1)	P276
9 Erase Voice Mail Icon	MENU 9 1 9	No*	P277
2 Call Waiting			
1 Activate Call Waiting	MENU 9 2 1	Yes*	P278
2 Deactivate Call Waiting	MENU 9 2 2	Yes*	P279
3 Call Waiting Status Request	MENU 9 2 3	Yes*	P279
3 Call Forwarding			
1 Activate Call Forwarding	MENU 9 3 1	Yes*	P282
2 Deactivate Call Forwarding	MENU 9 3 2	Yes*	P283
3 Register The Forwarding Number	MENU 9 3 3		P284
4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy	MENU 9 3 4	Yes*	P284
5 Call Forwarding Status Request	MENU 9 3 5	Yes*	P283
4 Nuisance Call Barring			
1 Register Nuisance Caller	MENU 9 4 1	Yes*	P285
2 Delete All Entries	MENU 9 4 2	No*	P286
3 Delete Most Recent Entry	MENU 9 4 3	No*	P286
5 Caller ID Notification			
1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification	MENU 9 5 1	————	P287

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 334 of 372

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
9 NW Services			
5 Caller ID Notification			
2 Caller ID Notification Status Request	MENU 9 5 2	Yes*	P288
6 Caller ID Request			
1 Activate Caller ID Request	MENU 9 6 1	Yes*	P289
2 Deactivate Caller ID Request	MENU 9 6 2	Yes*	P290
3 Caller ID Request Status Request	MENU 9 6 3	Yes*	P290
7 Set Arrival Act			
1 Activate Arrival Act	MENU 9 7 1	Yes*	P295
2 Deactivate Arrival Act	MENU 9 7 2	Yes*	P295
3 Arrival Act Status Request	MENU 9 7 3	Yes*	P295
8 Arrival Call Act	MENU 9 8	Answer*	P294
9 Other Network Services			
1 Register USSD	MENU 9 9 1	————	P297
2 Record reply message	MENU 9 9 2	————	P298
3 Remote Control			
1 Activate Remote Control	MENU 9 9 3 1	Yes*	P296
2 Deactivate Remote Control	MENU 9 9 3 2	Yes*	P296
3 Remote Control Status Request	MENU 9 9 3 3	Yes*	P296
4 English Guidance			
1 Guidance Setting	MENU 9 9 4 1	Yes*	P292
2 Guidance Setting Status Request	MENU 9 9 4 2	Yes*	P293
5 Dual Network			
1 Dual Network Switching	MENU 9 9 5 1	Yes*	P291
2 Dual Network Status Request	MENU 9 9 5 2	Yes*	P291
6 Service Dialing Number			
1 ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	MENU 9 9 6 1	Yes*	P293
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for Inquiries)	MENU 9 9 6 2	Yes*	P293
0 User Information	MENU 0	————	P56

*: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by reset. → P255

INFORMATION

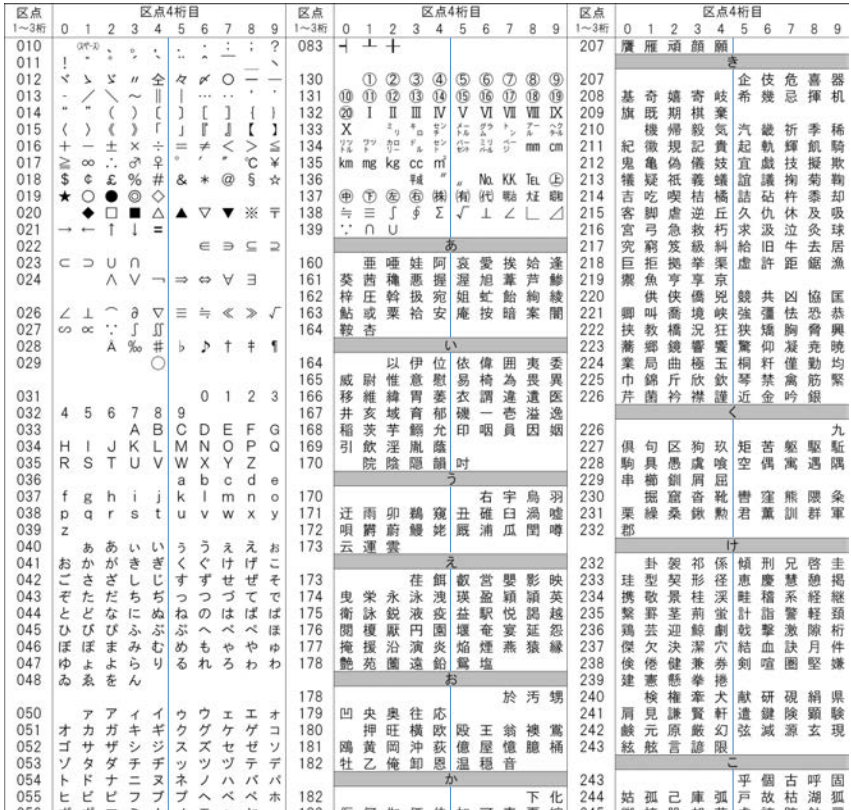
- Two-byte and one-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those above.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 335 of 372

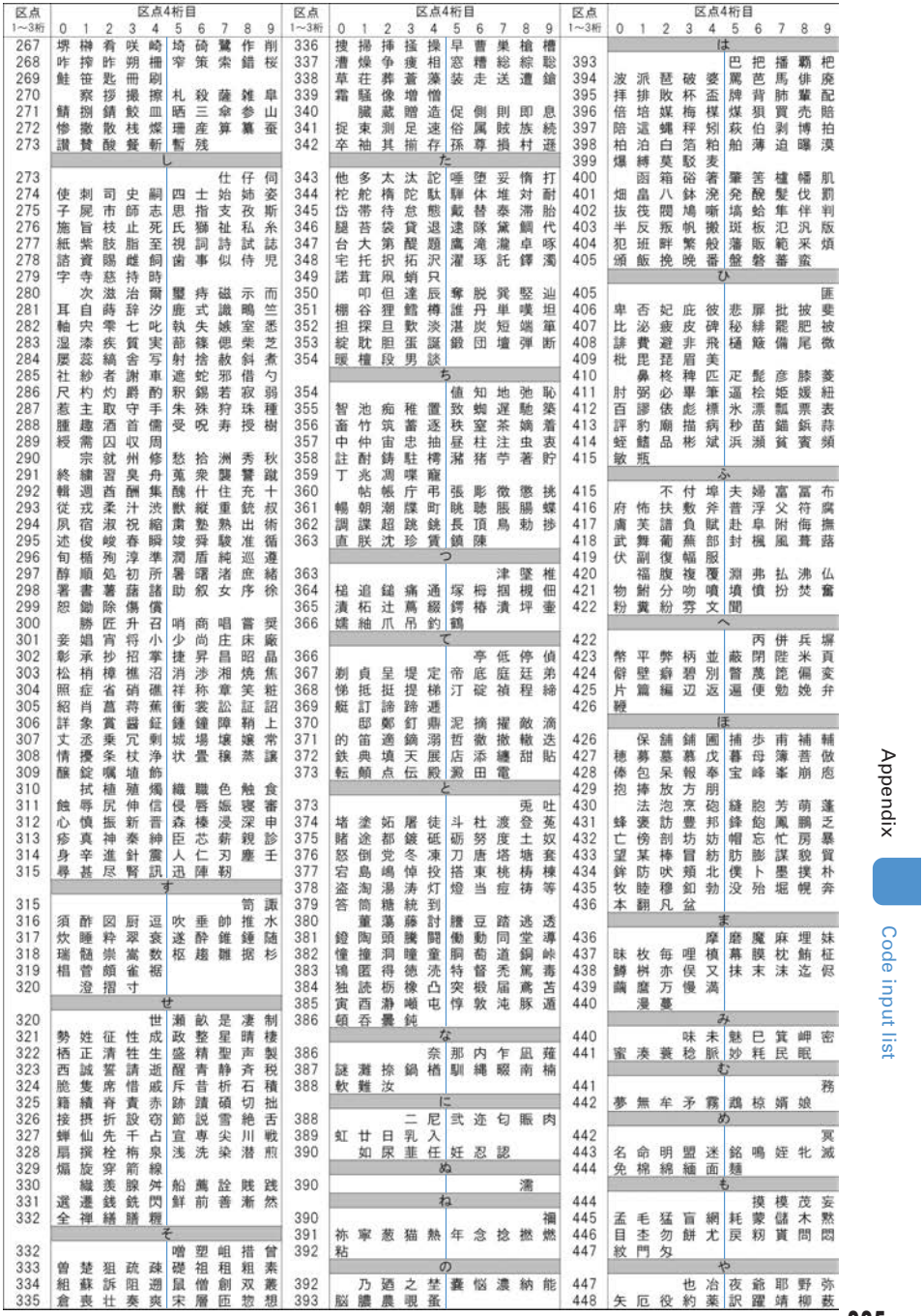
Code input list

*** For details on how to enter codes → P317**

*** Note that the characters in the code input list may look different.**



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 336 of 372



区点1〜3桁 | 区点4桁目 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

267 堺 榊 搾 咲 崎 梱 埼 宰 綺 削
268 咋 樟 笹 朔 冊 刷 策 作 錯 桜
269 鮭 拶 匙 掛 撮 擦 皿 燦 斬 雛
270 察 捌 錆 散 酸 殺 三 産 残
271 錆 惨 讃 賛 札 晒 璃 暫
272 仕 始 支 社 詩 似 仔 姉 孜 私 試 侍
273 磁 識 嫉 偲 邪 寂 珠 授
274 秀 鷲 住 重 熟 駿 純 渚 女 祖 巡 庶 序
275 洲 襲 充 就 出 准 循 遵 緒 徐
276 捨 蛇 錫 殊 呪 拾 衆 什 縦 塾 舜 盾 曙 叙 恕
277 斜 借 寂 珠 授
278 煮 勺 弱 種 樹
279 而 竺 墨 芝
280 迎 坦 箪 断
281 緊 嘆 端 弾
282 竪 嘆 端 弾
283 遅 単 短 壇
284 恥 団
285 恥 地 馳 嬬 虫 著 衷 貯
286 恥 地 馳 嬬 虫 著
287 挑 蝶 捗
288 懲 腸 勅
289 鳥
290 秋 蹴 十 叔 術 循 遵 緒 徐
291 柔 淑 峻 殉 処 著 除 匠 宵 抄 樟 省 蒸 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
292 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
293 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
294 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
295 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
296 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
297 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
298 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
299 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
300 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
301 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
302 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
303 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
304 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
305 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
306 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
307 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
308 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
309 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
310 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
311 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
312 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
313 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
314 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
315 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
316 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
317 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
318 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
319 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
320 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
321 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
322 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
323 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
324 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
325 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
326 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
327 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
328 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
329 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
330 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
331 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
332 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
333 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
334 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋
335 酬 汁 祝 春 淳 初 藷 傷 升 将 招 樵 硝 蒋 醤 冗 灯 証 剰 冴 飾 燭 信 晋 紳 震 訊 尋

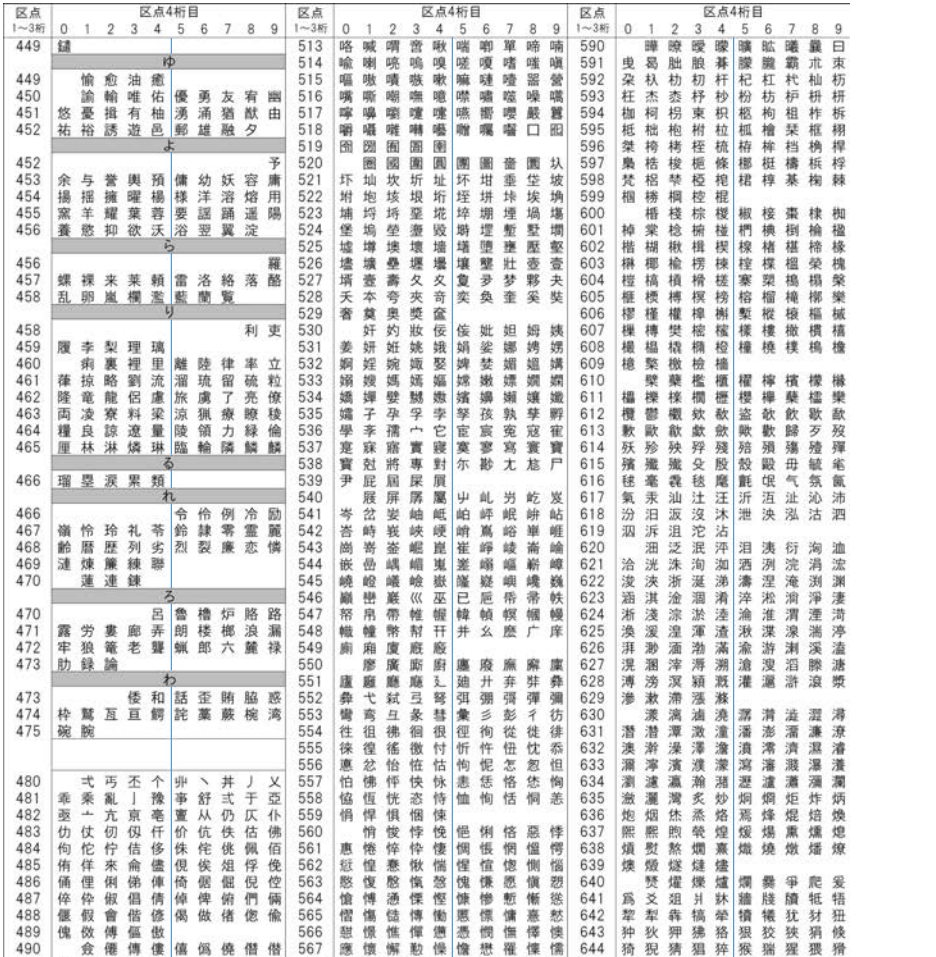
区点1〜3桁 | 区点4桁目 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

336 捜 掃 挿 掻 操 早 曹 巣 槍 槽
337 漕 燥 荘 捜 相 窓 槽 総 綜 聡
338 草 装 痩 藻 増 走 送 遭
339 霜 僧 贈 造 速 倉 側 属 尊
340 促 則 賊 損
341 捉 束 袖 其 揃 存 孫
342 卒
343 他 多 太 汰 詑 唾 堕 妥 惰 打
344 柁 舵 帯 陀 意 体 堆 対 耐
345 岱 苔 大 托 貸 替 隊 滞 胎
346 腿 台 宅 拓 遠 滝 鷹 鯛 代
347 諾 戴 沢 銷 退 瀧 琢 卓 啄
348 耳 只 蛸 題 託 鐸 濁
349 奪 辰 樽 淡 誕 談
350 脱 丹 炭 団 巽 竪 噴 端 迅
351 誰 湛 鍛 単 短 壇 弾 坦 箪 断
352 担
353 綻 堪 非 眉 稗 畢 彪 描 彬
354 暖 檀 段 恥 美 匹 筆 偏
355 値 知 地 弛 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
356 置 痴 稚 蓄 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
357 智 池 竹 畜 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
358 中 仲 酎 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
359 注 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
360 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
361 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
362 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
363 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
364 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
365 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
366 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
367 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
368 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
369 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
370 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
371 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
372 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
373 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
374 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
375 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
376 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
377 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
378 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
379 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
380 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
381 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
382 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
383 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
384 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
385 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
386 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
387 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
388 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
389 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
390 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
391 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
392 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥
393 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥 恥

区点1〜3桁 | 区点4桁目 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

399 は
400 巴 把 播 覇 杷
401 罵 俳 肺 買 売 博 曝 廃 配
402 派 琶 敗 背 狽 伯 薄 舶 迫 漠
403 排 培 媒 梅 賠 煤 萩 剝 爆 箱
404 倍 陪 箔 伴 畔 板 版 搬 盤 範
405 筏 飯 晩 般 番 販 磐 蕃 蛮
406 ひ
407 匪 斐 批 披 肥 尾 備
408 否 妃 泌 費 避 琵 枇 飛 美 匹 筆 彦 膝 菱
409 悲 秘 碑 飛 匹 筆 彦 膝 菱
410 彼 碑 飛 匹 筆 彦 膝 菱
411 肘 妃 庇 皮 非 眉 稗 畢 彪 描 彬 髭 桧 姫 媛 紐
412 百 評 膠 豹 鰭 品 必 俵 廟 秒 浜 逼 氷 秒 浜 漂 苗 瀕 瓢 票 鋲 表 辞
413 蛭 貔 貅 必 俵 廟 秒 浜 氷 秒 浜 漂 苗 瀕 瓢 票 鋲 表 辞
414 敏 瓶 必 俵 廟 秒 浜 氷 秒 浜 漂 苗 瀕 瓢 票 鋲 表 辞
415 ふ
416 不 付 埠 婦 富 冨 布
417 扶 賦 浮 阜 楓 父 附 風 阿 侮 蕪 撫
418 府 怖 芙 舞 副 福 負 斧 赴 封 附 風 阿 侮 蕪 葡
419 伏 腹 複 吻 雰 文 附 風 阿 侮 蕪 葡
420 へ
421 物 鮒 糞 弗 憤 払 沸 焚 仏 富
422 粉 分 紛 聞 塀
423 丙 併 兵 米 編 娩
424 幣 平 壁 篇 弊 柄 並 別 返 閉 陛 陛 勉 蔽 瞥 遍 便 勉 娩 変
425 片 編 辺 蔽 瞥 遍 便 勉 娩 弁
426 鞭
427 ほ
428 保 舗 鋪 圃 戊 奉 朋 補 甫 輔
429 抱 捧 法 放 泡 訪 剖 砲 邦 妨 帽 防 倣 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
430 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 盆 乏 妄 暴 豊 坊 訪 剖 棒 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
431 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 盆 乏 妄 暴 豊 坊 訪 剖 棒 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
432 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
433 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
434 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
435 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
436 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
437 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
438 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
439 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
440 縫 鋒 蜂 亡 褒 傍 某 防 睦 吠 穆 凡 坊 冒 頬 釦 北 勃 没 胞 飽 忘 膨 卜 殆 萌 鵬 芳 鳳 忙 謀 墨 堀 蓬
441 ま
442 摩 磨 魔 麻 埋 妹
443 槙 枚 毎 哩 侯 慢 満 枕 沫 迄 柾 俣
444 牧 桝 麿 万 蔓 末 抹 幕 膜 鰻 毎 哩 侯 慢 満 枕 沫 迄 柾 俣
445 本 漫 幕 膜 鰻 毎 哩 侯 慢 満 枕 沫 迄 柾 俣
446 み
447 味 稔 未 魅 巳 箕 岬 密
448 蜜 実 養 脈 妙 民 耗 眠

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 337 of 372



Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 338 of 372

区点 1~3桁	区点4桁目 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
667	砌	砒	磔	礦	礬	礪	礫	礎	磨	硼
668	碵	碌	碼	碵	磊	磆	磑	磅	磋	磔
669	碾				磐	磴	磯	磽	磾	磧
670					磚	磠	磡	磧	磺	礑
671	礫	礙	礒	礌	礎	礏	礐	礒	礑	礒
672	礙	礒	礌	礐	礒	礑	礐	礒	礑	礐
673	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
674	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
675	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
676	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
677	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
678	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
679										
680	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
681	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
682	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
683	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
684	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
685	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
686	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
687	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
688	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
689										
690	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
691	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
692	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
693	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
694	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
695	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
696	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
697	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
698	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
699										
700	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
701	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
702	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
703	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
704	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
705	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
706	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
707	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
708	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
709										
710	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
711	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
712	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
713	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
714	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
715	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
716	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
717	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
718	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
719	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
720	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
721	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
722	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
723	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
724	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
725	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
726	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
727	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
728	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
729	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
730	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
731	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
732	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
733	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
734	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
735	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
736	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
737	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
738	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
739	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
740	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
741	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
742	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦
743	禀	禁	禍	禎	禄	禅	禊	禍	禁	禦

区点 1~3桁	区点4桁目 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
744	魴	魯	魏	魑	魘	魃	魄	魁	魂	鬻
745	相	袍	袱	袤	裾	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
746	裟	裼	裰	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲
747	裸	裡	裰	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲
748	裡	裰	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
749	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
750	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
751	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
752	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
753	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
754	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
755	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
756										
757	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
758	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
759	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
760	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
761	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
762	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
763	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
764	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
765	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
766										
767	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
768	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
769	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
770	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
771	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
772	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
773	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
774	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
775	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
776										
777	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
778	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
779	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
780	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
781	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
782	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
783	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
784	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
785	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
786	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
787	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
788	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
789	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
790	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
791	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
792	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
793	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
794	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
795	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
796										
797	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
798	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
799	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
800	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
801	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
802	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
803	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
804	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
805	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
806										
807	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
808	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
809	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
810	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
811	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
812	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
813	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
814	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
815	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
816										
817	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
818	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
819	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
820	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸

区点 1~3桁	区点4桁目 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
821	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
822	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
823	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
824	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
825	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
826	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
827	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
828	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
829	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
830	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
831	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
832	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
833	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
834	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
835	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
836	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
837	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
838	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
839	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸
840	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸	裰	裬	裨	裲	裸

List of entries and conversion of special symbols

Enter the reading in hiragana/kanji mode before conversion. → P306

Reading	Symbol
あーる	R r (アール)
あい	Ⅰ i
あるふぁ	α A
あんだーばー	_
あんど	&
いー	E e
いーた	H η
いこーる	＝
いおた	I ι
いち	① I
いぷしろん	E ε
えっくす	X x
えっち	H h
えー	A a
えい	A a
えいち	H h
えす	S s
えぬ	N n
えふ	F f
えむ	M m
える	L l
えん	¥
おー	O o
おう	O o
おす	♂
おみくろん	O o
おめが	Ω ω
おんぐすとろーむ	Å
おんぷ	♪
かっこ	「」【】『』 《》〈〉｛｝ 〔〕［］（）
かっぱ	K κ
かい	X χ
かける	×
かぶ	㈱
かぶしきがいしゃ	㈱ KK.
から	～
かろりー	カロリー
がんま	γ Γ

Reading	Symbol
きゅー	Q q
きゅう	⑨ IX
きごう	〃々@×
	÷∴／＼
	∞∈∋⊆
	⊇⊂⊃∪
	∩⊿Σ∮
	„〞∟≧
	√∽∝∵
	∫∬Å≫
	‰†‡∨
	¶§≦＞
	＜≠≪∧
	¬∀∃∠
	⊥⌒∂∇
	≡ ±
きろ	キロ
きろぐらむ	kg
きろめーとる	km
く	⑨ IX
くさい	Ξ ξ
ぐらむ	グラム
けー	K k
けい	K k
こめ	※
こめじるし	※
ころん	：
ご	⑤ V
さん	③ III
さんかく	△▲▽▼
し	④ IV
しゃーぷ	#
しょうわ	昭和
しー	c
しーしー	c c
しーた	θ Θ
しかく	□■◇◆
しぐま	Σ σ
しち	⑦ VII
しめ	〆

Reading	Symbol
じぇー	J j
じぇい	J j
じゅう	⑩ X
じゅういち	⑪
じゅうく	⑲
じゅうご	⑮
じゅうさん	⑬
じゅうし	⑭
じゅうしち	⑰
じゅうに	⑫
じゅうはち	⑱
じゅうよん	⑭
じゅうろく	⑯
じー	G g
すらっしゅ	／
せくしょん	§
せみころん	;
せんち	センチ cm
せんちめーとる	cm
せんと	セント ¢
ぜーた	Z ζ
ぜっと	Z z
たいしょう	大正
たう	T τ
たす	＋
だい	㈹
だいひょう	㈹
だぶりゅ	W w
だぶりゅー	W w
てぃー	T t
てー	T t
てん	‘ ゝ 、 ゞ ¨ ` ‥‥ 、 ゛ ´ ヽ ” “ ’ 、
てんてん	‥…
でぃー	D d
でるた	Δ δ
でんわ	TEL
とん	トン

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 340 of 372

Reading	Symbol
どう	々〃
どしー	℃
どる	ドル $
なな	⑦ Ⅶ
なみ	～
なんばー	No.
に	② Ⅱ
にゅー	N ν
にじゅう	⑳
のま	々
はいふん	―
はち	⑧ Ⅷ
はてな	?
ぱい	Π π
ばつ	×
ぱーせんと	% パーセント
ひく	―
ひしがた	◇◆
びっくり	!
びー	B b
ぴー	P p
ふぁい	Φ φ
ふらっと	♭
ぶい	V ν
ぷさい	Ψ ψ
ぷらす	＋
へいせい	平成
へいほうめーとる	m^2
へくたーる	ヘクタール
べーた	β B
ぺーじ	ページ
ほし	☆★
まいなす	―

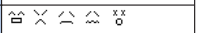
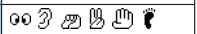
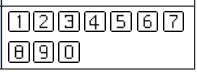
Reading	Symbol
まる	①②③④ ⑤⑥⑦⑧ ⑨⑩⑪⑫ ⑬⑭⑮⑯ ⑰⑱⑲⑳ ㊤㊥㊦㊧ ㊨○◎● ⬭ 。
みゅー	M μ
みり	mm ミリ
みりぐらむ	mg
みりばーる	ミリバール
みりめーとる	mm
めーとる	メートル
めいじ	明治
めす	♀
やじるし	↑↓→ ←⇔⇒
ゆー	U u
ゆう	㈲
ゆうげんがいしゃ	㈲
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆぷしろん	υ Y
よん	④ Ⅳ
らむだ	λ Λ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ Ⅵ
わっと	ワット
わい	Y y
わる	÷

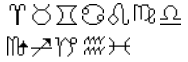
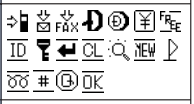
* Note that the special symbols may look different.
* Special symbols can consist of either one-byte characters only, two-byte characters only or of both two-byte and one-byte characters.

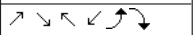
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 341 of 372

List of pictogram entries and conversion

Enter the readings ("Entry" below) in hiragana/kanji mode and convert character.
→ P306

Entry	Conversion
えもじ	
おんぷ	
かお	
からだ	
すうじ	

Entry	Conversion
すぽーつ	
せいざ	
そのた	
ちず	
つき	

Entry	Conversion
てんき	
とらんぷ	
のりもの	
はーと	
やじるし	

INFORMATION

- , , , , , , , , and in Pictogram 1 and pictograms in Pictogram 2 (below dashed lines of the pictogram list → P310) cannot be converted in the kanji mode. Input methods → P309
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to an another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 (below dashed lines of the pictogram list → P310) used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 342 of 372

Combination of functions during Multiaccess

Availability of operations of processes generated or to be performed for each operation currently in progress is as shown below:

Current status \ Processes that occur or are performed	While voice call		Video-phone call		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	①	②	×	× *6	○	○	○ *1
During a video-phone call	×	× *6	×	× *6	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	○ *4	× *6	–	○	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	○ *4	× *6	○	○ *5	○ *5
During Short Message (SMS) reception/transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○ *5	○ *5
During 64K data communication	×	③	×	× *6	×	×	×
During packet communication	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	–	×	–	×	×	–
During i αppli operation	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	×	○	○
During FeliCa-compatible i αppli operation	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	×	○	○
SD card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	–	×	–	×	×	–
SD card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	×	×	○
Updating software	×	○	×	× *6	×	×	×

Current status \ Processes that occur or are performed	Short Message (SMS)		64K data communication		Packet communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○ *1	×	× *6	○	○	×	×
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○ *5	○ *5	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
During Short Message (SMS) reception/transmission	○ *5	○ *5	○	○	○ *3	○ *3	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○ *1	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
During packet communication	×	○ *1	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	–	×	–	×	–	×	×
During i αppli operation	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
During FeliCa-compatible i αppli operation	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×
SD card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	–	×	–	×	–	×	×
SD card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Updating software	×	×	×	× *6	×	×	×	×

○ : New data can be sent while maintaining current communications.
× : Sending and receiving are not possible.
– : Combination of the status and the process is not possible.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 343 of 372

① : Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can make a call to another party during a call.
② : Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can receive a call from another party during a call.
Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
③ : Voice call (Receive) and 64K data communication cannot be used simultaneously. Subscribes to Call Waiting Service can end the current communication to take the call or reject the incoming call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

* 1 : The ring tone does not sound.
* 2 : Melody of i αppli is stopped.
When i αppli is using i-mode communication the followings occur:
- i-mode communication is disconnected when a video-phone call is made.
- Incoming video-phone calls are rejected.
* 3 : Reception and sending cannot be performed while Short Messages (SMS) are sent.
* 4 : i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
* 5 : Sending or receiving by both operations cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
* 6 : When the Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the call is stored as missed call in the received call list. However, in case a call of video-phone or data communication is received during the software update, it will be registered as missed calls regardless of the contract of Call Waiting Service.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 344 of 372

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in the new start menu can be combined with the currently run function is described in the following table.

- When multiple functions are being run simultaneously, "○" indicates that selection is possible for all currently run functions.

○ : selection possible　× : cannot be selected

New start menu item / Executing functions	Dial	1 Mail												2 i-mode							
		1 Inbox	2 Compose message	3 Compose SMS	4 Unsent messages	5 Outbox	6 Check new message			7 UIM SMS		8 Read templates	1 iMenu	2 Bookmark	3 Go to location		4 Screen Memo	5 Message R&F		6 Message retrieval
							1 i-mode message	2 SMS	3 Receive option	1 Received SMS	2 Sent SMS				1 Enter URL	2 URL history		1 Message Request	2 Message Free	
Phone	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dial input	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×
64K data comm.	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Outbox	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Unsent messages	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Inbox	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose message	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose SMS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read templates	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Sent SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message Request	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○
Message Free	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○
Check new message (Mail)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Check new message (SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○
Enter URL	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
URL history	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
Bookmark	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
Screen Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○
Software list	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
i-motion	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Image	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received calls	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Redial	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
User Information	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i αppli	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
i αppli download	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
Received i-mode Mail	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Received SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
PPP data comm.	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
bar code reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Record message/Voice memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Video-phone by external device	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Not inserted UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
During terminal link	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
PUK is blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
Self mode is set	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
In PIM lock ON	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
In Keypad dial lock ON	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Call logs setting "OFF"	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 345 of 372

New start menu item / Executing functions	3 i αppli	4 Phonebook & Logs			5 Multimedia				6 Accessories									0 User information
		1 Phonebook	2 Received calls	3 Redial	1 Image	2 i motion	3 Melody	4 Chara-den	1 Camera	2 Video Camera	3 bar code reader	4 Scheduler	5 Notepad	6 Answer machine/ Voice memo: 1 Record messages	6 Answer machine/ Voice memo: 2 Record voice memo	6 Answer machine/ Voice memo: 3 Voice memos	7 Calculator	
Phone	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dial input	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○
64K data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Outbox	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Unsent messages	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Inbox	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose message	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read templates	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received SMS (UIM)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Sent SMS (UIM)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message Request	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message Free	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check new message (Mail)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check new message (SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Enter URL	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
URL history	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Bookmark	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Software list	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-motion	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Image	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video camera	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○
Phonebook	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○
Received calls	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Redial	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
User information	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
i αppli	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i αppli download	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received i-mode Mail	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PPP data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
bar code reader	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Record message/Voice memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○
Video-phone by external device	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Not inserted UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
During terminal link	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PUK is blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Self mode is set	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
In PIM lock ON	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
In Keypad dial lock ON	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Call logs setting "OFF"	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

* Some operations cannot be performed depending on the conditions of FOMA terminal even if there are selectable functions.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 346 of 372

Options and related devices

Combining the FOMA terminal with optional devices supports a wide variety uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact our sales office. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

Optional parts

When you are going out

- Carrying case F05

To charge the terminal

- AC adapter F03
- Desktop holder F05

To connect to a personal computer

- FOMA USB cable

Spare battery

- Battery pack F05

To use the terminal in a car

- DC adapter F01
- In-car holder F05

Other parts

- Earphone/microphone with switch P001*/P002*
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with a switch P01/P02
- Stereo earphone set with flat switch P01
- Earphone terminal P001*
- Stereo earphone set P001*

* Without the earphone jack converter adapter P001, you cannot use these optional parts.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 347 of 372

Troubleshooting

If you experience any problems, first check the following before contacting our service station:

Symptom	Check
FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON (the terminal cannot be used).	• Is the battery pack connected properly? → P47 • Is the battery depleted? → P53 • When the mova terminal is ON in a dual network service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is ON.
A message "Insert UIM." is displayed when the FOMA terminal is powered on.	• The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. → P43
Even pressing the keys, the display screen does not change.	• Turn the power OFF, then ON. If using (電源) is unable, remove the battery pack, then attach it.
Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.	• Is All lock ON? → P200 • Is Keypad dial lock ON? → P203 • Is Remote lock ON? → P206
is indicated on the display.	• The side key cannot be used because Key guard is ON. Cancel Side key guard. → P206
After dialing a number, you hear a busy tone and cannot establish your call.	• Have you dialed the area code? → P58 • Did you hear the dial tone before dialing? • Is "圏外" indicated? → P51
圏外 (outside area) is indicated on the display and you hear a busy tone.	• You are outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength. → P51
"Remote locked." is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.	• Remote lock is set. Cancel the Remote lock. → P206
"All locked." is displayed on the display.	• All lock is set. Cancel the All lock. → P200
The top of the display blinks and a rapid beep alarm is heard.	• The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. → P46
"Please wait." is displayed on the display and does not go out.	 • The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
"Card not recognized." is displayed on the display.	• The UIM is either not correctly installed or is damaged. → P43
Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.	• Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. → P45
When the Auto power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON at the specified time.	• When turning the power OFF other than normal operation or the Auto power OFF function, (battery pack is free from the unit etc.), this function does not operate.
When the Alarm clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm clock does not operate at the specified time even if the power is turned OFF.	• If the power is turned off in a manner other than the normal power-off operation or Auto power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated. • Set Alarm Auto Power ON to "ON". → P211

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 348 of 372

<table>
<tr><th>Symptom</th><th>Check</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mail reception is announced by other than the set ring tone.</td><td>• Have you set separate incoming call handling procedures for each phonebook? Mail received from another party recorded in a phonebook or group with separate incoming call handling procedures is not announced by the set mail ring tone, but by the ring tone set in the phonebook or group. → P112</td></tr>
<tr><td>"Damaged data. Return to factory default settings?" is displayed.</td><td>• The data was corrupted by an unforeseen operation. Select "Yes" and press ◯ to delete data and return to the default settings.
Received mail, sent mail, unsent mail, mail template, Message R/F, schedule, phrase</td></tr>
<tr><td>At the time of authenticating or registering fingerprint, a message "Scan failed." or "Finger slid too slowly." is displayed even if your finger is not in contact with the sensor.</td><td>• The surface of the sensor may be wet or dew may have condensed on the surface. Wipe the water off with a soft cloth before use.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A battery level icon not shown in the instruction manual is displayed.
The number of possible settings in the Screen has increased.
The number of operations possible during melody play has increased.
The number of icon designs in Menu settings has increased.
i-motion is fast-forwarded differently.</td><td>• A secret function has been activated. To activate or cancel this function, set "SUMMER" to the group name in the custom menu. → P243
- Press 2 ABC or 8 TUV to change tone, press 4 GHI or 6 MNO to change tempo, press 5 JKL to set/cancel reverberation. To return to the normal play, press 0.
- If you press 1 to 9 WXYZ while playing the video of 900 seconds or more that is created on an external device such as a PC (ASF file), you can fast-forward the video to 10 to 90 seconds later in a range that does not exceed 10% of the total playing time. When you press 0, you can fast-forward the video to 10% of the entire playback time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The charging Light flashes during charging.</td><td>• End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the AC adapter (or desktop holder) from FOMA terminal and the DC adapter. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. → P48, 49, 50
If the problem still persists, contact our sales outlet.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Names or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the Phonebook</td><td>• The number or mail address of the other party does not match that in registered in the Phonebook. Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the Phonebook. → P103
The conditions on which names and ring tone will work are as follows:
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Registered phonebook information \ Other party's mail address</th><th>Phone number</th><th>Phone number @…</th><th>Character strings other than phone number</th><th>Character strings@… other than phone number</th></tr>
<tr><td>Phone number field of Phonebook</td><td>Phone number</td><td>○</td><td>–</td><td>–</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Mail address field of Phonebook</td><td>Phone number</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Phone number@…</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Character strings other than phone number</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td></tr>
<tr><td>Character strings@… other than phone number</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>×</td><td>○</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>FeliCa function cannot be used.</td><td>• In case the battery pack is not connected properly, or the battery pack is removed, IC card lock is set, which disables FeliCa function. Make sure that the battery pack is connected properly and turn the power OFF, then ON. → P47</td></tr>
</table>

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 349 of 372

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the "shop name/date" you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.

After-Sales Service

◎ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section "Troubleshooting". → P346
If the problem still persists, contact one of the numbers below.

Contacts (DoCoMo Group companies)

For inquiries (in Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll-free)
* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, or PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll-free)
* Can be called from general subscriber phones.

• To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.
For further information, please refer to the list of service stations supplied with your FOMA terminal.

◎ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a service center designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the service center before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

◎ In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

◎ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

◎ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 350 of 372

◎Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact the service center listed in "After sales service". →P348

◎Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal, the UIM or its accessories.
  - Fire, injury or damage may result.
  - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
  - If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
  - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to the FOMA. The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The ON/OFF function settings and stored data may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted during a repair or inspection. DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a phone terminal by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible, to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability whatsoever for changes of data, loss of data or failure to transfer data.
- If the handset becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the handset to our repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the handset.

◆Phonebook, downloaded data and ＩＣ card data◆

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted when changing the model or repairing mobile phone or carphone. DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile carphone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible, to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 351 of 372

Software update

This function checks for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet transmission* to update the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted in "お知らせ＆ヘルプ（Notice & Help）" on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

* : Packet transmission for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following two methods.
  - Immediate update : update on the spot as desired. → P351
  - Reserved update : specify the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot. → P353
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - In All lock ON
  - When date and time are not set
  - When the battery is not fully charged
  - While talking
  - When 圏外 is indicated
  - In PIM lock ON
  - In Self mode ON
  - While using other functions
  - When UIM is not inserted
  - When PIN1 code is being entered
  - When PIN1 is blocked
  - In ＩＣ card lock ON
  - The power is OFF
- At the time of software update, the unique information (such as model and serial number) of your terminal will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for software update operated by the company). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

- Software update is available even if the Host selection setting is other than "i-mode".
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when "ON" is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN1 code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in Received calls.
- Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate for "Certificate Setting". Configured as valid by default. → "Application" manual P58
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ( ).
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, three bars of the antenna icon ( ) are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
- A displayed icon of "message stored at i-mode Center" disappears after software update. If Receive option is set to "ON" and e-mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of e-mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed. → "Application" manual P150
- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail. If update fails, operations other than turning the power ON/OFF are disabled. Contact our repair office.
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in the FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak).

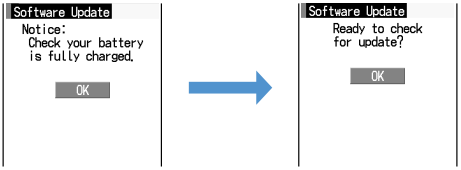
Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 352 of 372

Starting software update <Software Update>

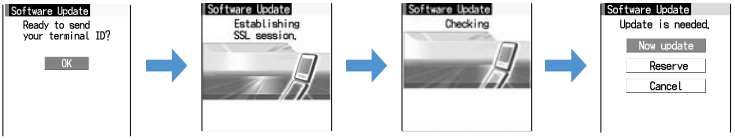
1 Press MENU 8 や TUV 9 ら WXYZ 6 は MNO on the stand-by display.



2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint, check the notice and press ●.



3 Confirm whether software update is required by pressing ● twice.



- Pressing ● on the terminal ID send confirmation screen makes connection to the server and the terminal ID (handset model, serial number, etc.) is sent.

■ When updating is not necessary



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press ● to use FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

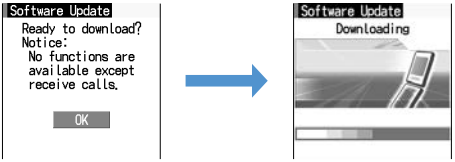
1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

- Operation procedure → See above

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 353 of 372

2 Select "Now update", press ○ twice.

Downloading is started and the incoming light flashes.



- To cancel downloading, press ○. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.

■ When the server is busy



Select "Reserve" and press ○, then reserve a date for update.
→ P353

3 After completion of downloading, software is updated automatically.

As downloading completes, software updating is automatically started. During updating, the incoming light flashes.



- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update.

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



5 Press ○.

Update is completed and the stand-by display appears.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 354 of 372

Updating software at pre-specified time <Reserved update>

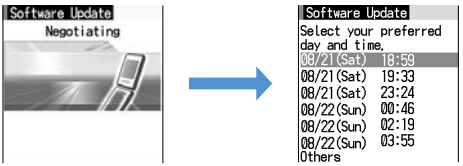
When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

- Operation procedure → P351

2 Select "Reserve" and press ○.

Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



- Available dates for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time-slot.

■ Selecting from the options displayed

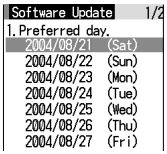
Select the preferred date and time-slot, press ○, select "Yes" and press ○.



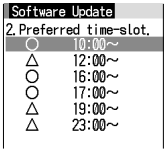
- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time-slot, press ◁▷ to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

■ Selecting from other than options displayed

① Select "Others" and press ○.



② Select preferred day and press ○.



Availability for reservation at each time period will be shown:
○: available △: barely available ×: no vacancy

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day, press ◁▷ to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 355 of 372

③ **Select preferred time-slot and press ●.**
Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.
- If there are more than one option page for preferred day, press ◁▷ to switch to the next or previous page respectively.
- Press ⊡ to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ **Select preferred day and time-slot, press ●, select "Yes" and press ●.**
The reservation complete screen is displayed.
- If there are more than one option page, press ◁▷ to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

4 Press ●.

Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.
When the reserved time arrives, the handset automatically starts software update. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the stand-by display.
- is shown on the stand-by display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

The day and time-slot reserved for software update can be checked.

1 Press MENU 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

The terminal security code entry/fingerprint authentication screen is displayed.

2 Enter the terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) or authenticate your fingerprint.



3 Check the contents.

- Select "OK" and press ● to stop checking.

■ Changing reservation

Select "Change", press ● twice.
Option selection screen is displayed.
- The operations to follow are the same as Step 2 and following steps for reserved update. → P353
- Pressing ● on the terminal ID send confirmation screen makes connection to the server and the terminal ID (handset model, serial number, etc.) is sent.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 356 of 372

■ Canceling reservation

① Select "Cancel", press ◯, select "Yes" and press ◯.

The terminal ID send confirmation screen is displayed.

② Press ◯ twice.

The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing ◯ on the terminal ID send confirmation screen makes connection to the server and the terminal ID (handset model, serial number, etc.) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives



- When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown on the left is displayed and downloading is automatically started. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.
- To cancel the software update, press 電源, select "Yes" and press ◯.

INFORMATION

- Please be informed that update may not be started while other functions are used even if the reserved time arrives.
- If software update is executed when "ON" is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN1 code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If alarm, etc. is set for the same time, alarm, etc. take precedence and the software update may not be activated.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 357 of 372

Specifications

Product name	FOMA F900iC
Size	104 (H) × 51 (W) × 26 (D) mm (folded)
Weight	128 g (battery pack attached)
Continuous stand-by time	Stationary : Approx. 450 H Moving : Approx. 340 H
Continuous call time	Voice call : Approx. 160 min. Video-phone call : Approx. 100 min.
Battery pack composition	Li-ion battery
Battery power supply	850 mAh
Charging time with AC adapter F03	Approx. 140 min.
Charging time with DC adapter F01	Approx. 150 min.
Number of pixels for camera	In-camera : Approx. 110,000 effective pixels (Number of recording pixels: Approx. 100,000) Out-camera : Approx. 1,280,000 effective pixels (Number of recording pixels: Approx. 1,230,000)
Digital zoom	In-camera : Max 2x Out-camera : Max 16x

- Continuous call time indicates the approximate call time that FOMA terminal can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time indicates the approximate time that FOMA terminal can receive signals normally. The call and stand-by times may be about half depending on factors such as the battery charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, and signal condition in the area of use (whether the signal is weak or absent).
- The continuous call (communication) or continuous stand-by time will be less when performing i-mode communication. Even when not making calls or performing i-mode communication, the continuous call (communication) or continuous stand-by time will be less when creating i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i αppli software or the i αppli stand-by display.
- Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive signals normally remains stationary.
- Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive signals normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving", and "out of the service area" status.
- Charging time indicates the approximate time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON will require longer time.

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 358 of 372

INDEX

A

AC adapter 48
Added service
(Register USSD) 297
  Deleting 299
  Registering/Changing 297
  Registering/Changing
  answering message 298
  Using 298
After-Sales Service 348
Alarm Auto Power ON 211
All lock 200
Anonymous Caller 158
  Not support 158
  Payphone 158
  User unset 158
Answer Machine 78
  Canceling 78
  Deleting 83
  Greeting Response Time 80
  List 82
  Playing 82
  Quick record message 79
  Set Greeting 81
  Setting 78
Any Key Answer 69
  Setting 164
Arrival Call Act 294
Auto Answer 259
Auto power OFF 210
Auto power ON 209

B

Battery
  Battery Icon 182
  Battery Level 52
  Charging 46
  Low Battery Alert 53
  Operation time 46
  Remaining battery level 52
  When battery is almost
  exhausted 53
Battery pack
  Attaching 47
  Removing 47
Bilingual 54

C

Calculator 250
Calendar 216
  Calendar View Mode 216
  Set day off 218
  Move to the date 217
Call duration 166
Caller ID Notification Service
..... 61, 287
  Settings 287
  Checking current setting
  288
Caller ID Request Service ... 289
  Activating 289
  Checking current setting ... 290
  Deactivating 290
Caller ID Settings 138
Call Forwarding Service 281
  Activating 282
  Changing forwarding
  destination 284
  Checking current setting ... 283
  Deactivating 283
  Setting when forwarding
  destination is busy 284
Call Image 180
  Call Image 180
  Incoming Mail image 180
  Outgoing Mail image 180
  Retrieving image 180
Call Logs Settings 208
Call Waiting Service 278
  Activating 278
  Checking current setting ... 279
  Deactivating 279
Chaku-motion 110, 169
Changing security code 189
Characters entry 302
  5-touch input method 305
  Changing input modes 303
  Character entry screen 302
  Copying 317
  Cutting 317
  Entering characters using
  code 317
  Entering fixed phrases 311
  Entering pictograms 309
  Entering symbols 309
  Face mark 311
  Full-screen entry 302
  In-line entry 303
  Input Method Settings 324
  Kana/kanji conversion 306
  List of dial keys and
  character assignments 305
  Pasting 317
  Predict conversion function
  308
  Quoting (barcode reader) 321
  Quoting (Calculator) 321
  Quoting (phonebook) 320
  Quoting (user information) ... 320
  Registering fixed phrase ... 315
  Save word 318
  Slot input method 322
Chara-den 86
Charge Alert Setting 171
Charging terminals 29
Charging
  AC adapter 48
  DC adapter 50
  Desktop holder 49
Charging Light 30
Charging time 46
Checking number of registered
phonebook entries 148
Checking
  Purchased product 26
Check new messages 276
Clock Display Format 187
Close Settings 164
Code input list 334
Color Scheme 181
Confirm Settings 254
Copying
  Characters 316
  Phonebook 146
  Schedule 231
Custom Menu 238
  Creating 239
  Deleting 244
  Editing 243
  Resetting 244
  Templates 238
  Using 241
Custom Silent Mode 151
Custom stand-by display 176
Cutting 316

D

Date To function 253
DC adapter 50
Deleting phonebook
entries 141
Desktop holder 49
Device Settings 100
Display 28
  Bilingual 54
  Displaying name 102
  Display light 183
  Guide row 33
  List screen 34
  Reading 32
  Reading sub-display 35
  Color Scheme 181

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 359 of 372

Stand-by display settings 172
Task bar 33
Displaying call frequency ranks 123
Displaying function description 37, 40
Displaying name 102
Display light 183
DoCoMo for inquires 293
DoCoMo for repairs 293
Driving mode 76
Dual Network Service 291
Checking current setting ... 291
Switching 291

E

Earphone/microphone jack 30
Earpiece 28
English Guidance 292
Checking current setting 293
Entering characters using code 317
Entering symbols 309
Erasing icon of voice message 277
External connection terminal 29

F

Face mark 311
Fingerprint authentication ... 194
Authentication 198
Changing registration name 197
Deleting 197
Registering 196
Setting for use 196
Fingerprint sensor 29
Fixed phrase
Entering 311
Registering 315
Focus mode 42
Font Settings 186
Full-screen entry 302

G

Group search
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 127
UIM phonebook 121
Group settings 130
Guidance Setting 292
Checking current setting ... 293

H

Headset Switch 258
Hearing voice message 275
Hold
On-hold 63
Response hold 75

I

i αppli stand-by display 174
Image Settings: V-Phone 98
i-mode password 188
In-camera 28
In-car handsfree 74
Incoming Alert Light 245
Incoming Light 30
Incoming/outgoing Call/Mail Image 180
In-line entry 303
Input Method Settings 324
International calls 65
Dialing 66

K

Kana/kanji conversion 306
Keypad dial lock 203
Keypad sound 171

L

List of dial keys and character assignments 305
List of entries and conversion of special symbols 338
List of pictogram entries and conversion 340

M

Mail frequency ranks 123
Making calls 58
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 120
On-hold 63
Operation while talking voice calls 59
Pause/timed pause/+ 60
Prefix 66, 159
Speakerphone function 59
Sub address 60
Tone signals (DTMF) sending 60, 96
UIM phonebook 127
Member list 227
Menu
Displaying function description 37, 40
Display style 37
List 326
Menu settings 37
Selecting functions from menu 39
Selecting functions from submenu 41
Selecting menu items (3D display) 38
Selecting menu items (List) 38
Selecting menu items (Tile display) 38
Shortcut operations 40
Message (Notification) ... 87, 346
Microphone 29
miniSD memory card slot 30
Missed calls 71
Movie ringtone 110, 169
Multiaccess 261
Combination of functions 341
Multi-cursor key 29
Multitask 265
Switching screens 267
Combination of functions 343
Executing new functions ... 265
My phone number 56

N

Names and functions of parts 28
Name Search 128
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 122
UIM phonebook 128
Network security code 188
Network Service 272
Added service (Register USSD) 297
Arrival Call Act 294
Call Forwarding 281
Caller ID Notification 287
Caller ID Request Service 289
Call Waiting 278
Dual Network 291
English Guidance 292
Nuisance Call Barring 285
Remote control 296
Service Dialing Number ... 293
Set Arrival Act 295
Voice mail 273
Noise reduction 160
Notepad 251
Checking 252
Creating mail 252
Date to function 253

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 360 of 372

Deleting 252
Editing 252
Recording 251
Nuisance Call Barring Service 285
Deleting 286
Registering 285
NW Search Method 256

O

One-touch Light 30
On-hold 63
On-hold Tone 162
Operation time 46
Options and related devices 345
Out-camera 30

P

Pasting
Characters 317
Schedule 231
Pause 60
Phonebook (FOMA Terminal) 103
Caller ID Settings 138
Changing order of mail addresses 136
Changing order of phone numbers 136
Checking number of registered entries 148
Copying 134
Copying to UIM 146
Creating mail 133
Deleting 141
Detailed display 125
Displaying name 102
Displaying sites 134
Editing 136
Group Search 121
Group settings 130
Name Search 122
Phonebook No. Search 124
Phone No. Search 124
Quick dial 144
Quick mail 145
Registering 103
Registering phone numbers from redial list 118
Reject/Accept Call 155
Rocket Search 121
Search by Frequency 122
Secret attribute setting 142
Secrecy Search 143
Set Secret code 140
Specifying call type 132
Switching phonebook numbers. 137
Video-Phone Settings 139
Phonebook (UIM) 115
Checking number of registered entries 148
Copying 134
Copying to FOMA terminal 147
Creating mail 133
Deleting 141
Detailed display 129
Displaying name 102
Editing 136
Group Search 127
Group settings 130
Making calls by specifying a call type 132
Name Search 128
Phone No. Search 128
Registering 115
Rocket search 127
Phone number search
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 124
UIM phonebook 128
Pictogram conversion list ... 340
Pictogram entries 309
PIM lock 202
PIN1 code 44, 188
Changing 191
Entering 191
PIN1 code ON/OFF 190
PIN2 code 44, 188
Changing 192
Play messages 275
Power
Turning ON/OFF 51
Predict conversion function 308
Predict dictionary data 255, 309
Prefix
Making calls 66, 132
Setting 159
Priority Comm Mode 165
Privacy mode 204
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) 44, 193

Q

Quality alarm 161
Quick dial 144
Quick mail 145
Quick record message 79
Quick Reference Manual 364
Quick schedule 226

R

Reason for hiding caller ID 62
Received calls 70
Deleting 71
Making calls 71
Missed calls 71
Receiving calls 67
Any key answering 69
Call waiting ring tone 68
On-hold 63
Operations possible while receiving calls 68
Reconnect alarm 161
Record Reply Msg. 298
Redial 64
Deleting 64
Reject/Accept Call 155
Reject non-Reg. caller 157
Remote Control 296
Activating 296
Checking current setting ... 296
Deactivating 296
Remote lock 206
Reset 255
Resetting
Call duration 167
Custom menu 244
Number of call 123
Number of mail 123
Settings 255
Stand-by display 179
User information 237
Resetting functions 255
Response hold 75
Response hold guide 163
Retrieving image 180
Ring Alert Delay 154
Ring tone
Melody list 170
Priority order 169
Setting 168
Ring/Vibrate Msg. Alert 276
Ring volume 73
Rocket search
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 121
UIM phonebook 127

S

Save word 318
Scheduler
Calendar 216
Changing 232
Checking 232
Check No. Of Items 233

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 361 of 372

Copying 231
Creating mail 234
Deleting 229
Display by type 233
Making a call to member ... 227
Member list 227
Pasting 231
Quick schedule 226
Saving 219
Secret attribute setting 230
Send i-mode Mail to member 228
Site display of member 228
Search by Frequency 122
Search method
FOMA terminal (Terminal) phonebook 120
UIM phonebook 127
Secrecy
Phonebook 142
Scheduler 230
Secrecy Search 143
Secret mode 201
Security code 188
Changing 189
Selecting functions from submenu 41
Select Language 54
Self mode 205
Service code 297
Service Dialing Number 293
Services available for FOMA terminal 260
Set alarm 211
Set Arrival Act 295
Activating 295
Checking current setting ... 295
Deactivating 295
Set date and time 55
Set Secret Code 140
Set voice mail ringing time 274
Side key 30
Guard 206
Main operations 31
Silent Mode 149
Slot input method 322
Software Update
Canceling reservation 354
Changing reservation 354
Checking reservation 354
Immediate update 351
Reserved update 353
Starting 351
Speaker 28, 30
Speakerphone function
Video-phone 86
Voice call 59
Specifications 356
Stand-by display 172
Stand-by Voice Memo 247
Deleting 249
Playing 248
Recording 247
Status Massage 163
Sub address
Making calls 60, 160
Setting 160
Sub-display 30
Displaying detail information 36
Reading 35
Sub Display Info 184
Sub-display stand-by image 184
Switching display 35
Switching
Mail address 136
Phonebook number 137
Phone number 136

T

Talking Voice Memo 247
Deleting 249
Playing 248
Recording 247
TASK key 29
Terminal security code 188
Changing 189
Text information 87, 346
Timed pause 60
Tone signals (DTMF) sending 60, 96
Total calls duration 166
Troubleshooting 346

U

UIM (FOMA card)
Functional differences 45
Inserting 43
Operation Restrictions 45
Removing 43
Security codes 44
UIM phonebook 115
Unblocking PIN 44, 193
User Information 56, 235
Displaying information 56
Displaying user information details 236
Editing 237
Recording 235
Resetting 237
USSD code 297

V

Vibrator 152
Video-phone 84
Brightness/Density 92
Camera effects 92
Chara-den settings 98
Child window 94, 97
Close-up mode 93
Device Settings 100
Display image 94, 97
Display light 94, 97
File sending 95
Image Settings: V-Phone 98
Main screen size 91
Making a call 85
Message (text information) 87
One-touch light 92
Operation possible while receiving calls 89
Quality of outgoing image 93, 97
Reading display 84
Receive quality 94
Receiving calls 88
Select frame 95
Select images 96
Send out portrait 97
Speakerphone function 86
Specifying the connection speed 85
Switching between main screen and child window 91
Switching cameras 91
Switching outgoing images 90
Total calls duration 166
Transmitting tone signals (DTMF) 96
Video-phone camera settings 92
Video-Phone Settings during stand-by 97
Video-phone Settings during video-phone calls 94
Voice call auto switch 97
Zoom 90
Video-phone image 98
Video-phone Settings 97
Voice Mail Service 273
Activating 274
Checking current setting ... 275
Checking for new voice messages 276
Deactivating 274

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 362 of 372

Erasing icon (Voice Mail mark) 277
Playing voice messages ... 275
Ring/Vibrate message Alert 276
Using voice prompts to set up 276
Voice memo
Deleting 249
List 248
Playing 248
Recording 247
Volume 72

W

Warranty 348
WORLD CALL 65
Dialing 66
WORLD WING 45

NUMBERS, SYMBOLS

184 61
186 61
5-touch input method 305
#31# 61
✳31# 61
+ 60

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 363 of 372

MEMO

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 364 of 372

MEMO

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 365 of 372

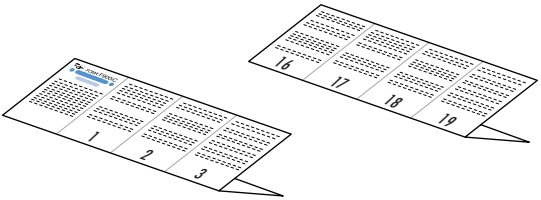
Quick Reference Manual

How to use Quick Reference Manual

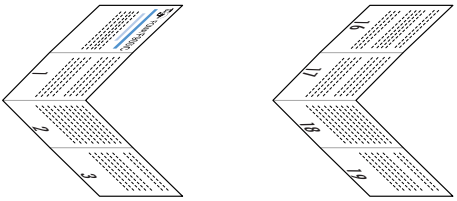
1 **Cut along the dotted line. (Two sheets)**

∗Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

2 **Fold once vertically.**

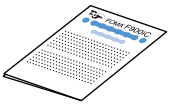


3 **Fold once horizontally.**



4 **Fold once horizontally again.**





Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 366 of 372

FOMA® F900iC

Quick Reference Manual

For inquiries

For more detailed information about the F900iC Manual, contact us at the following number:

<In English>	<In Japanese>	<From general subscriber phones>
0120-005-250 (toll-free)	No prefix151 (toll-free)	0120-800-000 (toll-free)
	Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

If you experience any problems, contact us at the following number:

<In Japanese>	<From general subscriber phones>
No prefix113 (toll-free)	0120-800-000 (toll-free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, or PHSs.	Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

- **To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.**

Phonebook entry

Into Terminal phonebook

1. (MENU) (4 GHI) (1 .,/@) (1 .,/@) on the stand-by display



2. Select Enter last name field → Enter last name → ●
3. Select Enter first name field → Enter first name → ●
4. (ｍｅｍｏ) → Set each item



- Setting other items (Ring alert, etc.): ▲/▼
- Shooting: (MENU) (still image)/(▲) (video) on New screen
  Shooting procedure → P8

5. (ｍｅｍｏ)
6. Enter phonebook number (0-699) → ●

Into UIM phonebook

1. (MENU) (4 GHI) (1 .,/@) (ｍｅｍｏ) (1 .,/@) on the stand-by display
2. Enter name → ●
3. (ｍｅｍｏ)
4. Set each item → (ｍｅｍｏ)

From redial list or received call list

1. ▲ or ▼ on the stand-by display
2. Select an entry to register → (MENU) (1 .,/@)
   - Add to the registered entry: (MENU) (2 ABC)
3. (1 .,/@) (Add to Terminal phonebook) or (2 ABC) (Add to UIM phonebook)
4. Set each item → (ｍｅｍｏ)
   - In case of Terminal phonebook setting, go to Step 5
5. Enter phonebook number (0-699) → ●

Editing phonebook entries

1. (ｍｅｍｏ) on the stand-by display
   - Switching phonebook: (ｍｅｍｏ)
2. Select entry to edit → (MENU) (3 DEF)
3. Edit

Searching phonebook data

1. (MENU) (4 GHI) (1 .,/@) on the stand-by display
   - Switching phonebook: (ｍｅｍｏ)
2. (2 ABC) to (7 PQRS)
   - In case of UIM phonebook search, (2 ABC) to (4 GHI)

Entering characters

Switching input method (5-touch/Slot)

- **During character entry**
  (MENU) (7 PQRS) (1 .,/@)
- **During the stand-by**
  (MENU) (8 TUV) (9 WXYZ) (3 DEF) → Select Input method field → (1 .,/@) (5-touch) or (2 ABC) (Slot)

Changing input modes

(C) repeatedly during character entry
- Or press (ｍｅｍｏ) and select input mode from list

Entering/converting characters (5-touch input method)

<Ex.> Entering "鈴木"

1. In hiragana/kanji mode
   「す」: (3 DEF) three times → ▶ (to move cursor one position to the right)
   「ず」: (3 DEF) three times → (＊ ^ ゛)
   「き」: (2 ABC) twice
   - Inserting characters: Move cursor to inserting point → Enter character
   - Available operation before setting entered characters
     (MENU) : Converting to 2-byte katakana
     (ｸﾘｱ) : Canceling entered character
     (▲) : Switching A/a
     (✉) repeatedly: Reversing order of character switching (Ex.: ... → 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→1→ ...)
     (＊ ^ ゛) repeatedly: Adding voiced sound "゛"/semi-voiced sound "゜" (Ex.: ... →ほ→ぼ→ぱ→ほ→ ...)

2. (ｍｅｍｏ)
   - Conversion options: ◀/▶/(ｍｅｍｏ)
   - Restoring entry before conversion: (ｸﾘｱ)
3. ●

Deleting characters

- **When cursor is inside entered character string**
  (ｸﾘｱ): Deleting character at cursor position
  (ｸﾘｱ) for over a second:
  Deleting characters at cursor position and the following all characters
- **When cursor is at the end of entered character string**
  (ｸﾘｱ): Deleting a character at the left of cursor position
  (ｸﾘｱ) for over a second:
  Deleting all characters entered

Symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

- **Entering symbols**
  (▲) during entering characters
  → Select symbol → ●
  - Or (ｍｅｍｏ) (1 .,/@) during entering characters
- **Entering pictograms**
  (✉) during entering characters
  → Select pictogram → ●
  - Or (ｍｅｍｏ) (2 ABC) during entering characters
- **Entering fixed phrases**
  (ｍｅｍｏ) (7 PQRS) during entering characters
  → Select fixed phrase → ●
  - Or (ｍｅｍｏ) (MENU) during entering characters

Entering characters using code

(ｍｅｍｏ) (8 TUV) during entering characters
→ Enter four-digit code → ●

Cutoff line

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 367 of 372

Camera function

Still image/Video

• Shooting still images

1. [camera] on the stand-by display
2. Point the camera at the subject and [●]
3. [●]

• Shooting with Auto Focus

1. [camera] on the stand-by display
2. Point the camera at the subject and press Side key [AF ▲] halfway
3. When camera is in focus fully press [AF ▲]

• Recording videos

1. [camera] for over a second on the stand-by display
2. Point the camera at the subject and [●]
3. [▷]
4. [●]

Displaying image/playing video

• Displaying shot still images

1. [MENU] [5 JKL] [1 .@/-] on the stand-by display
2. Select "Camera" folder → [●]
3. Select image to display → [●]
   - Displaying other image in the folder: [camera]/[▲▼]

• Playing recorded videos

1. [MENU] [5 JKL] [2 ABC] on the stand-by display
2. Select "Camera" folder → [●]
3. Select video to display → [●]
   - Available operation during playing video
     [camera]/[▲▼](or side key [▲▼]): Adjust volume
     [1]: Play at fast speed
     [●]: Pause/Restart
     [▷]: Stop
     [クリア]: Return to the video list

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

1. Enter phone number on the stand-by display
2. [▲]
   - Specifying data rate: [MENU] [5 JKL] (64K) / [MENU] [6 MNO] (32K)
3. You can talk to the other party
   - Placing the call on hold: [●]
   - Switching to speakerphone call: [ハンズフリー]
   - Switching sending image: [▲]
4. [電話] when you finish your call

Receiving video-phone calls

1. FOMA terminal receives a call
   - Holding your answer: [電話]
2. [▲]
   - Operations while talking is same as Step 3 of "Making video-phone calls"
3. [電話] when you finish your call

i-mode Mail

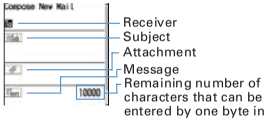
Number of characters sent/receive

Item	2-byte character	1-byte character
Subject	15	30
Mail address	—	50
Message	5,000	10,000

Creating and sending i-mode Mail

Up to 200 messages can be saved for each of Unsent message and Sent message

1. [mail] for over a second on the stand-by display



2. Select [To] → [●] → Enter receiver's mail address → [●]
   - Entering mail address from phonebook: Select [To] → [▲]
3. Select [Sub] → [●] → Enter subject → [●]
4. Select [Text] → [●] → Enter message → [●]
   - Creating Deco mail: [mail] on Compose message screen → Select decoration method → Enter characters
5. [▷]
   - Saving mail: [MENU] [2 ABC]

Attachment

1. [mail] for over a second on the stand-by display
2. Select [📎] → [●]
3. Select type of file to attached → [●]
4. Select folder → [●]
5. Select file → [●]
   - Canceling attachments: [mail] → Select "Yes"
6. [▷]

Editing/sending i-mode Mail sent/saved

<Ex> Editing unsent message

1. [mail] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display
   - Editing sent message: [mail] [5 JKL] on the stand-by display
2. Select folder → [●]
3. Select message → [●]
4. Edit → [▷]

Receiving i-mode Mail

Up to 1000 received messages can be saved.

1. Receive message
   Incoming mail tone sounds, Incoming alert light is lit/flashed and the reception result screen is displayed.
2. [●] or [1 .@/-]
3. Select folder → [●]
4. Select message → [●]

Checking i-mode message

Side key [▼] for over a second on the stand-by display

Cutoff line

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 368 of 372

Menu list

• Enter a number for each item after pressing (MENU) on the stand-by display.

<Example> Activating a camera:

(MENU) → (6 MNO) → (1)

- 1 Mail
  - 1 Inbox
  - 2 Compose message
  - 3 Compose SMS
  - 4 Unsent messages
  - 5 Outbox
  - 6 Check new message
    - 1 i-mode message
    - 2 SMS
    - 3 receive option
  - 7 UIM SMS
    - 1 Received SMS
    - 2 Sent SMS
  - 8 Read templates
  - 9 Mail setting
    - 1 Incoming msg settings
    - 2 Sort messages
    - 3 Signature
    - 4 Reply format
    - 5 Receive option setting
    - 6 Incoming msg attach
    - 7 SMS settings
    - 8 Message retrieval
    - 9 Display settings
      - 1 List of messages
      - 2 Message attachment

- 2 i-mode
  - 1 iMenu
  - 2 Bookmark
  - 3 Go to location
    - 1 Enter URL
    - 2 URL history
  - 4 Screen Memo
  - 5 Message R&F
    - 1 Message Request
    - 2 Message Free
  - 6 i-mode message
  - 7 i-mode setting
    - 1 i-mode shortcuts
    - 2 Connection timeout
    - 3 Host selection
    - 4 Set certificate
    - 5 Certificate Download
    - 6 Certificate Host selection
  - 8 Display settings
    - 1 Image/Effect settings
    - 2 Display color
    - 3 i-motion settings
  - 9 Message settings
    - 1 Auto display
    - 2 Message retrieval
    - 3 Message attachment
    - 4 Incoming msg. alert
- 3 iαppli
  - 1 Software list
  - 2 i αppli settings
    - 1 Software sort
    - 2 Auto start
    - 3 Software info display
    - 4 Light settings
    - 5 Vibrate settings
    - 6 i αppli shortcut
  - 3 Display history

- 4 Phonebook & Logs
  - 1 Phonebook
  - 2 Received calls
  - 3 Redial
  - 4 Call logs settings
- 5 Multimedia
  - 1 Image
  - 2 i-motion
  - 3 Melody
  - 4 Chara-den
- 6 Accessories
  - 1 Camera
  - 2 Video Camera
  - 3 bar code reader
  - 4 Scheduler
  - 5 Notepad
  - 6 Ans. machine/Voice memo
    - 1 Ans. machine settings
    - 2 Record messages
    - 3 Record voice memo
    - 4 Voice memos
  - 7 Alarm clock
  - 8 Calculator
- 7 Data transfer
  - 1 Send Use Info
  - 2 Send all Ir data
    - 1 Phonebook
    - 2 Schedule
    - 3 Received mail
    - 4 Sent mail
    - 5 Unsent mail
    - 6 Notes
    - 7 Bookmarks
  - 3 Receive Ir data
  - 4 Receive all Ir data
  - 5 Data transfer settings
  - 6 miniSDcard
  - 7 ＩＣ card software list
  - 8 ＩＣ card Lock

- 8 Settings
  - 1 Sounds/Vibrate
    - 1 Select ring tone
    - 2 Ring volume
    - 3 Volume
    - 4 Keypad sound
    - 5 Low battery alert
    - 6 Custom silent mode
    - 7 Vibrator
    - 8 Ring alert delay
    - 9 Charge alert
  - 2 Display
    - 1 Stand-by display
    - 2 Transaction image
      - 1 Call image
      - 2 Outgoing msg. image
      - 3 Incoming msg. image
      - 4 Retrieving image
    - 3 Color sheme
    - 4 Battery icon
    - 5 Display light
    - 6 Sub-Display
      - 1 Sub-display Info
      - 2 Clock display format
    - 7 Fonts
    - 8 Select language
  - 3 Security
    - 1 All lock
    - 2 Secret mode
    - 3 PIM lock
    - 4 Keypad dial lock
    - 5 UIM
    - 6 Change security code
    - 7 Fingerprint settings
    - 8 Privacy mode settings
    - 9 Remote lock

- 8 Settings
  - 4 Info/Reset
    - 1 Call duration
    - 2 Confirm settings
    - 3 Battery level
    - 4 Reset call duration
    - 5 Reset
  - 5 Clock
    - 1 Set date and time
    - 2 Auto power ON
    - 3 Auto power OFF
    - 4 Clock display format
    - 5 Alarm auto power ON
  - 6 Send/Receive
    - 1 Incoming alert light
    - 2 Anonymous caller
    - 3 Headset switch
    - 4 Auto answer
    - 5 Reject/Accept call
    - 6 Memory reject call
    - 7 Status message
    - 8 Any key answer
    - 9 Priority comm mode
  - 7 Call
    - 1 Noise reduction
    - 2 Reconnect alarm
    - 3 On-hold tone
    - 4 Quality alarm
    - 5 Prefix dialing
    - 6 Sub address
    - 7 Close settings
  - 8 Video-phone
    - 1 Video-phone settings
    - 2 Video-phone image
    - 3 Device Settings

- 8 Settings
  - 9 Others
    - 1 Save word
    - 2 Save phrase
    - 3 Text input method
    - 4 Self mode
    - 5 NW search method
    - 6 Software Update
- 9 NW Services
  - 1 Voice mail
    - 1 Activate Voice mail
    - 2 Set Ringing Time
    - 3 Deactivate Voice mail
    - 4 Voice mail Status Request
    - 5 Play Messages
    - 6 Voice mail Settings
    - 7 Check Messages
    - 8 Tone/Vib Msg Notification
    - 9 Hide Voice mail count
  - 2 Call Waiting
    - 1 Activate Call Waiting
    - 2 Deactivate Call Waiting
    - 3 Call Waiting Status Request
  - 3 Call Forwarding
    - 1 Activate Call Forwarding
    - 2 Deactivate Call Forwarding
    - 3 Register The Forwarding Number
    - 4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy
    - 5 Call Forwarding Status Request
  - 4 Nuisance Call Barring
    - 1 Register Nuisance Caller
    - 2 Delete All Entries
    - 3 Delete Most Recent Entry
  - 5 Caller ID Notification
    - 1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification
    - 2 Caller ID Notification Status Request

- 9 NW Services
  - 6 Caller ID Request
    - 1 Activate Caller ID Request
    - 2 Deactivate Caller ID Request
    - 3 Caller ID Request Status Request
  - 7 Set Arrival Act
    - 1 Activate Arrival Act
    - 2 Deactivate Arrival Act
    - 3 Arrival Act Status Request
  - 8 Arrival Call Act
  - 9 Other Network Services
    - 1 Register USSD
    - 2 Record reply message
    - 3 Remote Control
      - 1 Activate Remote Control
      - 2 Deactivate Remote Control
      - 3 Remote Control Status Request
    - 4 English Guidance
      - 1 Guidance Setting
      - 2 Guidance Setting Status Request
    - 5 Dual Network
      - 1 Dual Network Switching
      - 2 Dual Network Status Request
    - 6 Service Dialing Number
      - 1 ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)
      - 2 ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for Inquiries)
  - 0 User information

Other operations (in stand-by with the Terminal in open state)

Function	Operation
Power ON/OFF	(PWR) for over two seconds
Self mode ON/OFF	(2 ABC) for over a second
Side-key guard ON/OFF	(MENU) for over a second
Driving mode ON/OFF	(* TONE) for over a second
i-mode menu	(i)
iαppli folder list	(1) for over a second
Received calls	(C)
Privacy mode ON/OFF	(C) for over a second (To cancel: Enter the terminal security code or authenticate fingerprint after (C) for over a second)
Redial	(R)
Silent mode ON/OFF	(# SILENT) for over a second
New start menu	(TASK)
Answer machine/ Voice Memo menu	Side key [▲]
Answer machine ON/OFF	Side key [▲] for over a second

Cutoff line

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 369 of 372

Network Service

Voice Mail Service

This service is optional (charged) service.
Application is needed to use.

- **Activating Service**
  1. MENU 9 1 1 on the stand-by display
  2. Select "Yes" → ●
  3. Select "Yes" → ●
  4. Enter desired ring time → ● → ●
- **Deactivating Service**
  1. MENU 9 1 3 on the stand-by display
  2. Select "Yes" → ● → ●
- **Hearing voice messages**
  1. MENU 9 1 5 on the stand-by display
  2. Select "Yes" → ●
  3. Follow the voice prompt

Call Waiting Service

This service is optional (charged) service.
Application is needed to use.

- **Activating/deactivating Service**
  1. MENU 9 2 on the stand-by display
  2. 1 (Activate) / 2 (Deactivate)
  3. Select "Yes" → ● → ●
- **Putting current call on hold to talk to another caller**
  ● while talking
  - Switching between the other party: ●
- **Making a call while talking**
  MENU 8 while talking → Dial the phone number → ●
  - Switching between the other party: ●
- **Finishing call**
  ● when you finish talking
  - Switching back to the other party on hold: ●

Call Forwarding Service

This service is optional (charged) service.
Application is needed to use.

- **Service ON**
  1. MENU 9 3 1 on the stand-by display
  2. Select "Yes" → ●
  3. Select "Yes" → ●
  4. Enter forwarding phone number → ●
     - Entering phone number from phonebook: MENU
  5. ● → Select "Yes" → ●
  6. Set ringing time → ● → ●
- **Service OFF**
  1. MENU 9 3 2 on the stand-by display
  2. Select "Yes" → ● → ●

Caller ID Request Service

This service is optional (free) service. No application is needed to use.

- **Service ON**
  1. MENU 9 6 on the stand-by display
  2. 1 (ON) / 2 (OFF)
  3. Select "Yes" → ● → ●

Services available

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reverse-charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charged). (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charged) 8 a.m - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time service (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather forecast (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)

Reading display

Top of the display



① : Battery level　漢 : Character input mode
② : Signal strength　圏外 : Out of service area
SELF : Self mode is set → P23
TML : Terminal link activated
: During data transfer or the like
③ : In i-mode communication (connected to i-mode site)
: In i-mode communication (during data transfer)
④ : Infrared communication in progress or the like
⑤ : Speakerphone function in operation
: USB handsfree communication in progress
⑥ : Message storing status in i-mode Center
⑦ : Received mail status
⑧ : Received MessageR status
⑨ : Received MessageF status

⑩ : i αppli stand-by display
: i αppli DX stand-by display
: i αppli/i αppliDX execution status
⑪ : Displaying SSL page or the like
⑫ : Secret mode is set
⑬ : i αppli auto start failed

Bottom of the display



① : Number of missed calls
② : Number of messages
③ : Number of new voice mail messages
④ : Number of unread mail

⑤ : Silent mode is set → P23
: Custom Silent mode is set
⑥ : Ring alert OFF
: Vibrator → P19
: Ring alert OFF and vibrator ON
⑦ : Driving mode ON → P23
⑧ : Answer Machine is set
: Record message memory is full
⑨ : USB cable connected or the like
⑩ : Displaying effective multi-cursor key
⑪ : miniSD memory card inserted
⑫ : Reading UIM
: I C card lock ON
⑬ : PIM lock ON
: Keypad dial lock ON
: Side key guard is set → P23
⑭ : Alarm clock being set
: Set alarm and Schedule being set
: Schedule being set
⑮ : Software Update pre-specified

For inquiries

For more detailed information about the F900iC Manual, contact us at the following number:

<In English>	<In Japanese>	<From general subscriber phones>
0120-005-250 (toll-free)	No prefix 151 (toll-free)	0120-800-000 (toll-free)
	Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs	Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

If you experience any problems, contact us at the following number:

<In Japanese>	<From general subscriber phones>
No prefix 113 (tool-free)	0120-800-000 (tool-free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, or PHSs.	Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

- **To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.**

Cutoff line

Samsung Ex. 1026, Page 370 of 372

About Proper Telephone Etiquette

Do not disturb people around you when using your FOMA terminal.

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in the following situation.

■ In a location where use of mobile terminals is prohibited

There are places where you cannot use a mobile terminal. Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal when:

- In an airplane or hospital

* Be aware that patients use electronic medical equipment in many areas in hospitals. Your FOMA terminal must be switched off even in lobbies or waiting rooms.

■ While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident.

* You can set Driving mode if you do not want to turn your FOMA terminal OFF while driving.

■ While in a crowded train where there may be a person who uses an implanted cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator near you

Use of the terminal could adversely affect the operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator.

■ While in public places such as a concert hall, movie theater or art museum

Using your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Match the volume of your voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone to your location

■ In a quiet location like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice and ring tones, etc. when using your FOMA terminal.

■ In town areas, while using your FOMA terminal, be sure not to block foot or vehicular traffic.

Consider privacy

Give consideration to privacy before shooting or sending images with a mobile phone with a built-in camera.

"Silent" functions designed for public use

Your FOMA terminal has a number of useful "silent" functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

- Silent Mode/Custom Silent Mode
  Eliminates all sounds your FOMA terminal makes, such as keypad sound and ring tones (Silent Mode). → P149
  Allows the user to change Silent Mode operations (Custom Silent Mode). → P151
- Driving mode
  Plays a guidance that states that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving a car, then disconnects the call. This mode ensures your safety while driving because no ring tone sounds when a call is received. → P76
- Vibrator
  Vibrates when there is an incoming call. → P152
- Answer machine
  Allows the caller to leave a message when you cannot answer the phone. → P78

In addition to the above functions, optional services such as Voice mail service and Call Forwarding service are also available. → P273, P281

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it for reference purposes.



Don't forget your mobile phone
⋯ or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Retailer NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED

100% recycled-content level

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
Trademark of American Soybean Association
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

Li-ion

To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo's sales outlets, our cooperate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.

'04.7 (Issue 1.1)
CA92002-4414